

THE WATER
OF THE
PENINSULA
1846
BY
WILLIAM
MORRIS

*The
University
of Iowa
Libraries*

XIP R5079
W3











THE WATER OF THE WONDROUS ISLES
BY WILLIAM MORRIS

THE WATER OF THE MONDROXIS ISLE & K222
THE FIRST PART OF THE NOVICE OF CAPTIVITY



CELL THE CELL was a walled cheaping town high Elterhay, which was builded in a bight of the land a little off the great highway which went from over the mountains to the sea.

THE SAID TOWN was hard on the borders of a wood, which men held to be mighty great or maybe measureless though few indeed had entered it & they that had, brought back tales wild & confused thereof.

IN THE SAID neither highway nor byway nor wood, never came chapman thence into Elterhay no man of Elterhay was so poor or so bold that he durst raise the hunt therein no outlaw durst flee thereto no man of land had

such trust in the saints that he durst build him a cell in that wood.

FOR all men deemed it more than perilous; & some said that there walked the worst of the dead other some that the Cadden-ees of the Gentiles haunted there, others again that it was the fairy rather but they full of malice and guile. But most commonly it was deemed that the devils swarmed amidst of its thickets and that wheresoever a man sought to who was once entrained by it, ever it was the Gate of Hell whereto he came And the said wood was called E-vishaw.

NEVER THELESS the cheaping town throve not ill for whatso evil things haunted E-vishaw never came they into Elterhay in such guise that men knew them, neither wotted they of any hurt that they had of the Devils of E-vishaw.

IN the said cheaping town on a day, it was market and high noon, and in the market place was much people thronging and amidst of them went a woman tall and strong of aspect of some thirty winters by seem.

ing, black haired, hook nosed and hawk eyed, not so fair to look on as masterful & proud. She led a great grey ass betwixt two panniers, wherein she laded her marketings. But now she had done her chaff, and was looking about her as if to note the folk for her disport; but when she came across a child, whether it were borne in arms or led by its kind women, or were going alone, as were some, she seemed more heedful of it, and eyed it more closely than aught else.

She strolled about till she was come to the outskirts of the throng, and there she happened on a babe of some two winters, which was crawling about on its hands & knees, with scarce a rag upon its little body. She watched it, & looked where it was going, and saw a woman sitting on a stone, with none anigh her, her face bowed over her knees as if she were weary or sorry. Unto her crept the little one, murmuring and merry, and put its arms about the woman's legs, & buried its face in the folds of her gown. She looked up there with, and showed a face which had once been full fair, but was now grown bony and haggard, though she were scarce past five & twenty years. She took the child and strained it to her

bosom, and kissed it, face and hands and nose: great cheer but ever woefully. The tall stranger stood looking down on her, and noted how evilly she was clad, & how she seemed to have nought to do with that throng of thriving cheapeners, and she smiled somewhat sourly.

Last she spake, & her voice was not so harsh as might have been looked for from her face: Dame, she said, thou seemest to be less busy than most folk here: might I crave of thee to tell an alien who has but some hour to dwell in this good town where she may find her chamber wherein to rest and eat a morsel, and be untroubled of ribalds & ill company? Said the poor wife: Short shall be my tale; I am over poor to know of hostelrys & alehouses that I may tell thee aught thereof. Said the other: Maybe some neighbour of thine would take me in for thy sake? Said the mother: What neighbours have I save me and dead, and I dying of hunger, and in this town of thrift & abundance?

The leader of the ass was silent a while, then she said: Poor woman! I begin to have pity on thee; and I tell thee that luck hath come to thee to-day.

Off the poore wife had stood up with the babe in her arms & was turning to go her way. but the alien put forth a hand to her & said. stand a while & hearken good tidings. And she put her hand to her girdlepouch, & drew thereout a goodly golden piece a noble & said. When I am sitting down in thy house thou wilt have earned this. and when I take my soles out there of there will be three more of like countenance. if I be content with thee meanwhile.

The woman looked on the gold. & tears came into her eyes. but she laughed & said. Flour & ome may I owe thee for an hour truly. and therewithal water of the well, and a mouse & meal of bread. if thou deem that worth three nobles. how may I say thee nay when they may save the life of my little one. But what else wouldst thou of me?

Little enough said the alien. so lead me straight to thine house.

So off they both of the market place. and the woman led them, the alien & the ass out of the street through the west gate of Clertway that town which looked on Eyllshaw, and so into a scattering street without the wall, the end of which

neared a corner of the wood afore said. the houses there were nought so evil of fashion. but whereas they were so nigh unto the Devil's flark, rich men might no longer away with them. and they were become warres for poore folk.

Off the townswoman laid her hand on the latch of the door that was here, and threw the door open. then she put forth her palm to the other and said. Wilt thou give me the first gold now. since rest is made sure for thee. as long as thou wilt. The ass-leader put it into her hand, and she took it and laid it on her bar by a check & then kissed both gold and child together. then she turned to the alien & said. As for the way-beast. I have nought for him. neither hay nor corn. thou wert best to leave him in the street. The stranger nodded a yea. say. and the three went in together the mother the child. and the alien.

Night small was the chamber. but there was little therein. one stool to sit. a yew chair. a little table. and a coffer. there was no fire on the hearth. nought save white ashes of small wood. but it was June. so that was of no account.

THE guest sat down in the
new chair, and the poor-
wife laid her child down
gently on the floor & came and
stood before the stranger, as
if abid'ng her bidding.

SPOKE the alien Nought
so uncomely or strait is
thy chamber & thy child,
which I see is a woman & there-
fore benke shall long abide with
thee is lovely of shape, & fair
of flesh. Now also thou shalt
have better days as I deem, &
I pray them on thine head.

SHE & SPOKE in a kind
wheeling voice, & the
poor wife's face grew
softer, & presently tears fell
down on to the table from her,
but she spake no word. The
guest now drew forth not three
nobles but four and laid them
on the table and said. Lo my
friend, the three nobles which
I beghit thee' now are they
thine but this other thou
shalt take and spend for me.
Go up into the town and buy
for me white bread of the best,
and right good flesh, or pou-
laine if it may be already cook-
ed and dight and withal the
best wine that thou mayst get,
and sweetmeats for thy baby,
& when thou comest back, we
will sit together and dine here.
And thereafter when we be
full of meat & drink, we shall
devise something more for thy

good speed.

THE woman knelt before
her weeping but might
not speak no word because
of the fulness of her heart. She
kissed the guest's hands, and
took the money & then arose
and caught up her child, and
kissed her bare flesh eagerly
many times, and then hasten-
ed out of the house and up the
street and through the gate,
and the guest sat hearkening
to the sound of her footsteps
till it died out, and there was
nought to be heard save the
far-off murmur of the market,
& the chirrup of the little one
on the floor.

THE N arose the guest &
took up the child from
the floor who kicked and
screamed & craved her mother
as her broken speech might;
but the alien spake softly to
her and said. Hush dear one,
and be good, and we will go &
find her & she gave her there-
with a sugar-plum from out
of her scrip. Then she came
out of doors & spake sweetly
to the little one. See now this
pretty way-beast. We will ride
merrily on him to find thy
mother.

THEN she laid the child
in the pannier with a
soft cushion under &
a silk cloth over her, so that
she lay there happily. Then

she took her ass & rein and went her ways over the waite toward Evilahaw; for, as ye may deem, where the houses & the street ended the beaten way ended also.

QUETLY & speedily she went and met but three men on the way; and when these saw her, and that she was making for Evilahaw, they turned their heads away, each one, & blessed themselves, and went past swiftly. Nor one sought to stay her, or held any converse with her, & no foot she heard following after her. So in scarce more than the saying of a low mass she was in amongst the trees, with her ass and her wares and her prey.

Stay she made there, but held forward at her best before the night should fall upon her. And whatsoever might be told concerning the creatures that other folk had met in Evilahaw, of her it must needs be said that therein she happened on nought worse than herself.

Chapter II. Now shall be told of the house by the Water-side




OUR days they wended the wood, & nought befell to tell of. The witch-wife (for even such was


she) fed the wiles child well and dote, and whiles carried her & spake sweetly unto her whiles also she would take her out of the pannier, and set her on the ass's back and hold her thereon heedfully; or, other-whiles, when they came upon grassy and flowery places, she would set her down on the ground & let her roam about, and pluck the flowers and the strawberries. And whose might be sorry, the child was glad, so many things new and fair as she came upon.

AT last, when the fifth day was waning, & they had been a long while wending a wood set thick with trees, it began to grow grey betwixt the distant boles, & then from grey to white, and it was as if a new world of light lay before them. Thitherward went they, and in a little, and before the sun was set, came they to the shore of a great water, and thence was no more land to be seen before them than if it had been the main sea itself, though this was a sweet water. Albeit, less than a half mile from the shore lay two eyots, as it might have been on the salt sea; but one of these sat low down on the water, & was green and well bushed, but the other, which lay east of it, and was nigher to the shore, was


Part I. of
The History of
King Henry the
Seventh.

high, rocky, and barren.

 **O**U the ending of the wood left a fair green plain betwixt it and the water, whiles more than a fur long across, whiles much less; & whiles the trees came down close to the water-side. But the place whereto they came from out the wood was of the widest, and there it was a broad sight of greenward of the fashion of the moon seven sights old, & a close hedge of thicket there was at the back of it; and the lake lay south, & the wood north. Some deal of this greenward was broken by closes of acre land, and the tall green wheat stood blossoming therein; but the most was sweet meadow, and there as now was a gailant flock of goats feeding down it; five kine withal, & a tethered bull. Through the widest of this meadow ran a clear stream winding down to the lake. & on a little knoll beside a lap of the said stream, two bow-shots from the water was a knoll whereto stood amidst of a potter's garden, a little house strongly framed of timber. Before it the steep bank of the lake broke down into a slowly shelving beach, whose honey-coloured sand thrust up a long sea amongst the grass of the mead.

 **W**ENT the witch-wife straight to the door of the said house as if she were at home, as was sooth indeed. She threw the door open, & unladed the ass of all his wares, & first of the youngling, whom she shook awake, & bore into the house, and laid safely on the floor of the chamber: nor did she wait on her wailing, but set about what was to be done to kindle fire, and milk a she-goat, & get meat upon the board. That did she, and fed both herself and the child plenteously: neither did she stint her of meat ever, from that time forward, how-ever else she dealt with her.

Chapter III. Of skin-changing.

 **N**E thing must here be told. Thomas the said lame stood forth clad amidst of the chamber the next morning the child ran up to her to greet her or what not, but straightway when she saw her close, drew aback, & stood gaping with affright: for verily she deemed this was no-wise she who had brought her last night into the fair chamber, and given bread and milk to her and put her to bed, but someone else, for this one had not dark hair, & hooked nose

and eyes hawh; bright; stark
& tall was she indeed, as that
other one, and by seeming of
the same like age: but there
came to an end all her likeness
to that night: & homely she was
one had a skin red and flow-
ing down from her head: eyes
of hazel colour: long and not
well opened: but narrow & ope
further: neck bared she was,
long-chained and thin: apparel
her skin was fine and white: but
without hand to her flat breast
ed she with a narrow-chopped

WHEN SHE laughed at the
bare terms & said that
in her old voice at least
Thou English little beast: I
know what needs thee to wit
that thou dearest me: changed
now I tell thee that I am the
one who brought thee here last
night: and fed thee: neither is
my changing: master of thee:
dinner at least: am the one who
shall keep thee from hunger
& weather: henceforward: that
is enough for thee to know: as
now: how thou hast to eat and
sleep and play & cry out: that
thou mayest the summer day &
grow in the land: I say well.

THE NEXT MORNING she led her
out into the meadow: &
gathered her to an ash
sapling which grew with the
dock: that the child might be
safe the while she went about
her work in acre and mead.

WHEN FOR that mat-
ter of changing of as-
pect, the maiden came to
her: & repeated that the witch
durst not go into the wood in
the morning: as that which she
was at home: wherefore she
had changed it for the coming
to dinner: and then: I shall
again in the night: take before
the moon.

*Chapter 11. Of the woman &
the child.*



HIS LITTLE
one who is hence-
forth called: Child:
long though the
witch called her
but within so
much as she had said: she
was indeed by any name: dwelt
there before the water & the
wood: & was now save the good
witch wife: who as afore said,
fed her well: but scarce med-
dled with her else: for a long
while: as she was loved well:
much as she had said & much in
the wood: for she had no fear
thereof: nor needed of ought
else save of the dame: & she
learned of the water & the wood
of all the creatures round a-
bout her: and the very grass &
flowers were friends to her: &
she made tale of them in her
mind: & the wild things feared
her in manner: & the fowls would
come to her hand & play with
her: and love her: & could stand
she was: stout and strong: and

Part 1. Of
the House of
Captivity

as merry as the birds on the
bush. & had she trouble for
whiles she came across in the
ugly mood of the witch-wife,
she bore it as lightly as they.



MORE the years
thus, till now she
was grown tall &
thin, & had seen
twelve winters, &
was far stronger
and handier than at first sight
she looked to be. That found
her mistress, and would not
forego the using of her deft-
ness, for indeed the maiden
knew all matters of wood and
field full well, and somewhat
of the water also (though no
boat had she ever seen there),
for she learned herself swim-
ming, as the ducks do belike.



LET her mistress
would learn her swim-
ing, & hard was the les-
son, for with twiggen rods &
switches was she learned, and
was somewhat stubborn with
this woman, whom she deemed
loved her not; and, however it
were, there began to grow in her
an inkling that all was not well
with the dame, and nowsoever
she might fear her, she trusted
her not, nor worshipped her;
otherwise she had learned her
lesson speedily for she was
not slack nor a sluggard, and
hated not the toil, even when it
pained and wearied her, but a-

gainst the anger & malice she
hardened her heart.

IT IS TO BE said, that
though there she dwelt
alone with the witch-wife,
she had somehow got to know
that they two were not alone in
the world & she knew of male
and female, and young and old.
Thereof doubtless the witch
herself had learned her would
she, would she not; for though
she were mostly few-spoken,
yet whiles the tongue of her
would loosen, and she would
tell Birdalene tales of men &
women, & kings and warriors
and thralls, and the folk of the
world beyond them, if it were
but to scare the child. Yea,
and when she rated Birdalene,
or girded at her, words would
come forth which the maiden
stared up and by learning two
and two together gat wisdom
howso it were. Moreover, she
was of the race of Adam, & her
heart conceived of diverse mat-
ters from her mother's milk &
her father's blood & her heart
and her mind grew up along
with her body. Herein also was
she wise, to wit, now to give
wrath the go-by, so that she oft
found the wood a better home
than the house, for now she
knew that the witch-wife would
enter it never; wherefore she
loved it much, and haunted it
daily if she might.

IN MIDST all this she liv-
ed in contentment; the
earth was her friend, and
solaced her when she had suf-
fered aught; withal she was
soon grown hardy as well as
strong; & evil she could thole,
nor let it burden her with mis-
ery.

Chapter V. Of Birdalone, and
how she is grown into Maiden-
hood. *¶*

AFTER the years &
the years stretched
such days as
these and now is
Birdalone grown
a dear maiden of
seventeen summers; & yet was
her life not unhappy; though
the mirth of her childhood was
somewhat chastened in her, &
she walked the earth soberly
& measurely, as though deep
thoughts were ever in her head;
though, forsooth, it is not all
so sure that her serious face
& solemn eyes were but a part
of the beauty which was grow-
ing with the coming forth of
childhood into youth & maid-
enhood. *¶* But this at least
is sure, that about this time
those forebodings which had
shown her that she had no call
to love & honour her mistress
took clearer shape, & became a
burden on her, which she might
never wholly shake off. For this
she saw, that she was not her

own but a chattel and a tool of
one who not only used her as
a thrall in the passing day but
had it in her mind to make of
her a thing accursed like I, her-
self, and to bait the trap with
her for the taking of the sons
of Adam. forsooth she saw,
though dimly, that her mis-
tress was indeed wicked, and
that in the bonds of that wick-
edness was she bound.

SHE THOUGHT moreover,
had she noted now this
long while, that once
and again, it might be once ev-
ery two moons, the witchwife
would arise in the dead of night
and go forth from the house,
and be away for a day, or two or
three, or whiles more, and come
back again weary and fordone;
but never said she any word to
Birdalone hereof. *¶* Yet oft
when she arose to go this er-
rand, before she left the cham-
ber would she come to Birda-
lone's truckle-bed, & stand over
her to note if she were asleep
or not; and ever at such times
did Birdalone feign slumber
amidst of sickening dread. *¶*
forsooth in these latter days
it whiles entered the maiden's
head that when the dame was
gone she would rise & follow
her and see whither she went,
and what she did; but terror
constrained her that she went
not.

Part I.
the house of
C...




NOW from amidst all these imaginings arose a hope in her that she might one day escape from her thralldom & whiles when she was lonely & safe in the wood, to this hope she yielded herself; but thereof came such tumult of her soul for joy of the hope, that she might not master her passion; the earth would seem to rise beneath her, & the woods to whirl about before her eyes, so that she might not keep her feet, but would sink adown to earth, and lie there weeping. Then moost oft would come the cold fit after the hot, and the terror would take her that someday the witch would surprise the joy of that hope in her eyes, & would know what it meant, or that some light word might betray her; and therein came imaginings of what would then befall her, nor were that hard to picture, & it would come before her over and over again till she became weary & worn out therewith.

BUT though they abode ever with her, these troubling thoughts pricked not so oft at the heart, but were as the dull ache of little import that comes after pain overcome: for in sooth busy & toilsome days did she wear,

which irked her in nowise, since it eased her of the torment of those hopes & fears aforesaid, and brought her sound sleep and sweet awaking. The hne & the goats must she milk, and plough and sow and reap the acre/land according to the seasons, and lead the beasts to the woodland pastures when their own were flooded or burned; she must gather the fruits of the orchard, and the hazel nuts up the woodlands, & beat the walnut trees in September. She must make the butter & the cheese, grind the wheat in the quern, make & bake the bread, and in all ways earn her livelihood hard enough. More over, the bowman's craft had she learned, and at the dame's bidding must fare alone into the wood now & again to slay big deer and little, and win venison: but neither did that irk her at all, for rest & peace were in the woods for her.

BUT IT IS, that as she wended thicket or glade or wood/lawn, she would at whiles grow timorous, and tread light and heedfully, lest rustling leaves or crackling stick should arouse some strange creature in human shape, devil, or god now damned, or woman of the fairy. But if such were there, either they were wise and would



not be seen, or kind and had no will to scare the simple maidens; or else maybe there were none such in those days. Anyhow, nought evil came to her out of Evilehaw.

Chapter VI. Herein is told of Birdalone's raiment.

In h and long in Birdalone the sweet, with legs that come forth bare & browned from under her scant grey coat and scantier smock beneath, which was all her raiment save when the time was bitter, and then, forsooth, it was a cloak of goat-skin that clad her attire. For the dame heeded little the clothing of her; nor did Birdalone give so much heed thereto that she cared to risk the anger of her mistress by asking her for aught.

On a day of this same spring, when the witch-wife was of sweeter temper than her wont was, and the day was very warm and kindly, though it was but one of the last of february days, Birdalone, blushing and shame-faced, craved timidly some more womanly attire. But the dame turned gruffly on her and said: 'Tush, child! what needeth it? here be no men to behold thee. I shall see to it, that when due

time comes thou shalt be well-tressed & sleeked to the very utmost. But know thou: thou art a handy wench; take the deer-skin that hangs up yonder and make thee brogues for thy feet, if so thou wilt.

So did Birdalone, and shaped the skin to her feet; but as she was sewing them a fancy came into her head; for she had just come across some threads of silk of divers colours; so she took them and her shoon & her needle up into the wood & there sat down happily under a great spreading oak which much she haunted, and fell to broidering the kindly deer-skin. And she got to be long about it, & came back to it the next day and the next, and many days, when so her servitude would suffer it, and yet the shoon were scarce done.

On a morning the dame looked on her feet as she moved about the chamber, and cried out at her: 'What art thou barefoot as an hen yet? Hast thou spoilt the good deer-skin and art yet outshoonless?' 'Nay, our lady, said Birdalone, but the shoon are not altogether done.' 'Show them to me, said the dame.

BIRDALONE WENT to her little collar to fetch them. & brought

111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000



them somewhat timorously, for she knew not how her mistress would take her working on them so long, if perchance she would blame her, or it might be chastise her, for even in those days the witch/wife's hand was whiles raised against her. But now when the dame took the shoes and looked on them, & saw how there were oak/leaves done into them, and flowers, and coneyes, and squirrels, she but smiled somewhat grimly on Birdalone, and said: Well, belike thou art a fool to waste thy time & mine in such toys: & to give thee thy due would be to give thee stripes. But thou doest herein after the nature of earthly women, to adorn thy body, whatsoever else is toward. And well is that, since I would have thee a woman so soon as may be; and I will help thy mind for finery, since thou art so deft with thy needle.

THE RE WITCH she went to the big coffer & drew forth thence a piece of fine green cloth, and another of fine linen, & said to Birdalone: This mayest thou take, and make thee a gown thereof and a new smock, and make them if thou wilt as gay as thy new shoon are gotten to be, & here is wherewithal. And therewith she gave her two handfuls of silken threads & gold,

& said. Now I suppose that I must do the more part of thy work, while thou art making thee these gaudy garments. But maybe someone may be coming this way ere long, who will deem the bird the finer for her fine feathers. Now depart from me; for I would both work for thee and me, and ponder weighty matters.

SHE was glad now but Birdalone; she grew red with new pleasure, & knelt down and kissed the witch's hand. & then went her ways to the wood with her precious lading, and wrought there under her oak/tree day after day, and all days, either there, or in the house when the weather was foul. That was in the middle of March, when all birds were singing, and the young leaves showing on the hawthorns, so that there were pale green clouds, as it were, betwixt the great grey boles of oak and sweet/chestnut; and by the lake the meadow/saffron new/thrust up was opening its blossom; & March wore and April, and still she was at work happily when now it was later May, and the hare/bells were in full bloom down the bent before her.

IN this while the witch had meddled little with Birdalone, and had bid-

den her to no work afield or in the stead which was an unweary gowne but had done all her self. Yet was she few nights with her and would oft behold her gloomly. And one evening when Birdalene came in from the wood, the witch came close up to her and stared her in the face and said suddenly: Is it in thine heart to flee away from me and leave me?

SHARP pang of fear shot through Birdalene's heart at that word and she turned very red and then pale to the lips, but stammered out: No, lady, it is not in mine heart. The dame looked grimly on her and said: If thou try it & fail, thou shalt rue it once only, to wit, life-long; and thou canst but fail. She was silent a while, and then spake in a milder voice: Be content here a while with me, and thereafter thou shalt be more content, and that be-fore long.

SHE said no more at that time; but her word clave to Birdalene's heart, and for some time thereafter she was sorely oppressed with a burden of fear, and knew not how to hold herself before the witch-wife. But the days wore, and nought betid, & the maiden's heart grew lighter, & still she wrought on at her gown &

her smock & it was well nigh done. She had bordered the said gown with roses and lilies and a tall tree springing up from amidmost the hem of the skirt and a hart on either side thereof, face to face of each other. And the smock she had sewed daintily at the hem and the bodice with fair knots & buds. It was now past the middle of June hot and bright weather.

On a day she went to the wood and sat down under her oak tree & it was far & far out of sight of any one standing in the meadow by the lake; and in the wood Birdalene looked to see nought at all save the rabbits and squirrels, who were, forsooth, familiar enough with her, and fearless, so that they would come to her hand and sport with her when she hailed them. Wherefore, as the day was exceeding hot, she put off from her her simpleraiment, that she might feel all the pleasure of the cool shade & what air was stirring and the kindness of the greenward upon her very body. So she sat sewing, covered but by a lap of the green gown which her needle was painting.

Part I. Of
the House of
Captivity

AT as she sat there in-
tent on her work, and her
head bent over it, and it
was now at the point of high
noon, she heard as if some crea-
ture were going anigh to her:
she heeded it not, deeming that
it would be but some wander-
ing hind. But even therewith
she heard one say her name in a
soft voice, & she leapt up trem-
bling, deeming at first that it
would be the witch come to
fetch her: but yet more scared
she was, when she saw stand-
ing before her the shape of a
young woman as naked as her-
self, save that she had an oak-
wreath round about her loins.

THE new-comer, who was
now close to her, smiled
on her, and said in a kind
and sweet voice: fear nought,
Birdalone, for I deem thou wilt
find me a friend. & it is not un-
like that thou wilt need one ere
long. And furthermore, I will
say it, said she smiling, that
since I am not afraid of thee,
thou needest not be afraid of
me. Said Birdalone, she also
smiling: True it is that thou
art nought fearsome to look
on. The new-comer laughed
outright, and said: Hre we not
well met then in the wildwood?
and we both as two children
whom the earth loveth. So play
we at a game. At what game?
said Birdalone. Spake she

of the oak-wreath: This; thou
shalt tell me what I am like in
thine eyes first, because thou
wert afraid of me; & then when
thou art done, I will tell thee
what thou seemest to me.

QUOTH Birdalone for
me that will be hard, for
I have nought to liken
thee to, whereas save this sight
of thee I have seen nought save
her that dwelleth in the House
by the Water, & whom I serve.
Nay, said the other, then will
I begin, & tell thee first what-
like thou art, so that thou wilt
know the better how to frame
thy word concerning me. But
tell me, hast thou ever seen thy
self in a mirror? What thing
is that? said Birdalone. It
is a polished round of steel or
some other white metal, said
the wood-maiden, which giveth
back in all truth the image of
whatso cometh before it.

TH Birdalone & reddew
ed therewith. We have at
home a broad latten dish,
which it is my work, amongst
other things, to brighten and
keep bright; yet may I not make
it so bright that I may see much
of mine image therein; and yet.
What wouldst thou? said
the wood-woman. Said Bird-
alone: I shall tell thee presen-
ty when thy part of the play is
done.

LADIED THE new-
comer, and said: It is
well now as I see thy
mirror. Thus it is with thee
thou standest before me a tall
& slim maiden, somewhat thin,
as befitte th thy seventeen sum-
mers; where thy flesh is bare of
wont, as thy throat and thine
arms & thy legs from the mid-
dle down, it is tanned a beau-
teous colour, but otherwhere it
is even as fair a white, whole-
some & clean, & as if the gold-
en sunlight, which fulfilleth the
promise of the earth, were play-
ing therein. Fairer and round-
er shall be thine arms and thy
shoulders when thou hast seen
five more summers, yet scarce
more lovesome, so strong and
fine as now they are. Low are
thy breasts, as is meet for so
young a maiden, yet is there no
lack in them; nor ever shall they
be fairer than now they are. In
goodly fashion siteth thine head
upon thy shoulders, upheld by
a long and most wellwrought
neck, that the sun hath tanned
as afore said. The hair of thee
is simple brown, yet some-
what more golden than dark;
& ah! now thou lettest it loose
it waveth softly past thy fair
smooth forehead & on to thy
shoulders, and is not stayed
by thy girdlestead, but hideth
nought of thy knees, and thy
legs hapely thin, & thy strong

and close wrought sholes and
feet which are with thee as full
of thine heart and thy soul and
as wise & deft as be thy wrists
and thine hands, and their very
fellows. Now as to thy face:
under that smooth forehead
is thy nose, which is of mea-
sure, neither small nor great,
straight, and lovely carven at
the nostrils: thine eyes are as
grey as a hawk's, but kind and
otricious, and nothing fierce nor
obifting. Nay now thou lettest
thine eyelids fall, it is as fair
with thy face as if they were
open, so smooth and simple
are they & with their long full
lashes. But well are thine eyes
set in thine head, wide apart
well opened, and so as none
shall say thou mayst not look
in the face of them. Thy cheeks
shall one day be a snare for the
unwary, yet are they not fully
rounded, as some would have
them, but not I, for most piti-
ful kind are they forsooth. De-
licate & clear made is the little
trench that goeth from thy
nose to thy lips, and sweet it
is, and there is more might in
it than in sweet words spoken.
Thy lips, they are of the finest
fashion, yet rather thin than
full; and some would not have
it so; but I would, whereas I
see therein a sign of thy val-
lancy and friendliness. Surely
he who did thy carven chin had

Captivity

Part I. Of
the House of
Captivity

a mind to a master/work & did
no less. Great was the deft-
ness of thine Imaginer, and he
would have all folk that see
thee wonder at thy deep think-
ing and thy carefulness & thy
kindness. Ah maiden! is it so
that thy thoughts are ever
deep and solemn? Yet at least
I know it of thee that they be
hate and true and sweet.

Thy friend when thou
hast a mirror, some of
all this shalt thou see,
but not all; & when thou hast a
lover some deal wilt thou hear,
but not all. But now thy she-
friend may tell it thee all, if she
have eyes to see it, as have I,
whereas no man could say so
much of thee before the mere
love should overtake him, and
turn his speech into the folly
of love and the madness of
desire. So now I have played
the play, and told thee of thee;
tell me now of me, and play thy
play.

FOR a while stood Bird-
stone silent, blushing
& confused but while
casting shy glances at her own
body, what she might see of it.
At last she spake: fair friend,
I would do thy will, but I am
not deft of speech; for I speak
but little, save with the fowl
and wild things, and they may
not learn me the speech of man.
Yet I will say that I wonder to

hear thee call me fair and beau-
teous; for my dame tells me
that never, nor sayeth aught
of my aspect save in her anger,
and then it is: Rag! and bag!
of bones! and when wilt thou
be a woman, thou! ankest thou?

The new-comer laughed
well-favouredly hereat, & put
forth a hand, and stroked her
friend's cheek. Birdstone look-
ed piteous kind on her & said:
But now I must needs believe
thy words, thou who art so
kind to me, and withal thyself
so beautiful. And I will tell
thee that it fills my heart with
joy to know that I am fair like
to thee. for this moreover I
will tell thee, that I have seen
nought in field or woodland
that is as lovely to me as thou
art; nay, not the fritillary nod-
ding at our brook's mouth, nor
the willow boughs waving on
Green Eyot; nor the wild-cat
sporting on the little wood-
lawn, when she saw me not;
nor the white doe rising up
from the grass to look to her
fawn; nor aught that moves &
grows. Yet there is another
thing which I must tell thee, to
wit, that what thou hast said
about the fashion of any part
of me, that same, setting aside
thy lovely words, which make
the tears come into the eyes of
me, would I say of thee. Look
thou! I take thine hair & lay the

treas amongst mine, and thou
mayst not tell which is which,
and amidst the soft waves
of it thy forehead is nesting
smooth as thou saidst of mine
hawk grey and wide apart are
thine eyes and deep thought
and all tenderness is in them,
as of me thou sayest fine is
thy nose and of due measure,
and thy cheeks a little hollow,
and somewhat thin thy lovely
lips & thy round chin so goodly
carven, as it might not be
better done. And of thy body
else I will say as thou sayest
of mine, though I deem these
hands have done more work
than thine. But see thou! thy
leg and mine as they stand to-
gether, and thine arm as if it
were of my body. Slim & slen-
der thou art or it may be link,
and I deem our dame would
call thee also bag of bones.
Now is this strange. Who art
thou? Art thou my very own
sister? I would thou wert.

SHE then to Birdalone
that image of her and
said, smiling kindly on
her. As to our likeness, thou
hast it now, so alike are we as
if we were cast in one mould.
But thy sister of blood I am
not nay, I will tell thee at once
that I am not of the children
of Adam. As to what I am that
is a long story and I may not
tell it as now, but thou mayst

call me Nabundia, as I call thee
Birdalone. Now it is true that
to everyone I show not myself
in this fair shape of thee but
be not aghast therat or deem
me like unto thy mistress here:
in for as now I am, so ever shall
I be unto thee.

QUOT Birdalone look-
ing on her anxiously.
Yea & I shall see thee
again shall I not else should
I grieve and wish that I had
never seen thee at all. Yea,
forsooth said Nabundia for I
myself were most fain to see
thee oft. But now must thou
presently get thee back home,
for evil as now is the mood of
thy mistress, & she is rueing
the gift of the green gown, &
hath in her mind to seek occa-
sion to chastise thee.

NOW was Birdalone half
weeping as she did on
her raiment while her
friend looked on her kindly.
She said presently Nabundia,
thou seest I am hard bestead,
give me some good rede there-
to.

GOD will I said the wood-
wife. When thou goest
home to the house be
glad of countenance & jovous
that thy gown is nigh done &
therewith be exceeding wary.
for I deem it most like that
she will ask thee what thou
hast seen in the wood, and

then if thou fatter of thy face
change then she will have an
inking of what hath befallen
to wit, that thou hast seen
someone; and then will she be
minded to question thy shus.
But if thou keep countenance
valiantly, then presently will
her doubt run off her, and she
will cease grudging, and will
grow mild with thee & meddle
not. This is the first rede, and
is for to day, and now for the
second, which is for days yet
unborn. Thou hast in thy mind
to flee away from her; & even so
shalt thou do one day, though
it may be by way of Weeping
Cross; for she is sly and wise
and grim though sooth it is
that she hateth thee not utterly.
Now thou must note that no
wise she hindereth thee from
faring in this wood, and that is
because she wotteth, as I do,
that by this way there is no
outgoing for thee. Therefore
look thou to it that it is by
the way of the water that thou
shalt fare to the land of men-
folk. Belike this may seem
marvellous to thee; but so it
is; and belike I may tell thee
more hereof when time serv-
eth. Now cometh the last word
of my rede. May be if thou come
often to the wood, we shall
whiles happen on each other;
but if thou have occasion for
me, & wouldst see me at once,

come hither, and make fire, &
burn a hair of my head therein,
and I will be with thee: here is
for thee a tress of mine hair,
now thou art clad, thou mayst
take a knife from thy pouch &
shear it from off me.

EVEN so did Birdalone,
and set the tress in her
pouch; & therewith they
kissed & embraced each other,
and Birdalone went her ways
home to the house, but Habun-
dia went back into the wood
as she had come.

**Chapter VIII. Of Birdalone
and the Witch-wife.**

IC went with Birdalone
as Habundia had fore-
told for she came home
to the house glad of
her semblance floured and
right-foot so that she
was lovely and graceful
beyond her wont. The dame
looked on her doubtfully and
grimly a while, and then she
said: What ails thee, my ser-
vant, that thou lookest so
masterful? Nought ails me,
lady, said Birdalone, save that
I am gay because of the sum-
mer season, & chiefly because
of thy kindness and thy gift,
and that I have well-nigh done
my work thereon, & that soon
now I shall feel these dainty
things beating about my an-
kles. And she held up and
spread abroad the skirt with

her two hands, & it was indeed
goodly to look on.

THE witch/wife snorted
scornfully & scowled on
her, and said. Thine an-
kles forsooth! Bag/o'/bones!
Thou wisp' forsooth, thou art
in love with thy looks, though
thou knowest not what like a
fair woman is. forsooth, I be-
gin to think that thou wilt ne-
er grow into a woman at all,
but wilt abide a skinny'elf thy
life long. Belike I did myself
wrong to suffer thee to waste
these three or four months of
thy thrall's work, since for
nought but thrall's work shalt
thou ever be meet.


BIRDLONE hung her
head adown & mused,
but smiled a little, and
swayed her body gently, as a
willowbough is swayed when
a light air arises in the morn-
ing. But the witch stood so
scowling on her, & with so sour
a look, that Birdalone, glancing
at her, found her heart sink so
with her that she durst not
countenance; yet she lost it
not.

THEN SAID the witch
sharply: Wert thou in
the wood to/day? **Y**ea, lady, said the maiden.
Then said the dame fierce-
ly: And what awest thou?
Quoth Birdalone, looking up
with an innocent face some-

what scared Lady I saw a new
one of the big trees crossing
a glade. And thus without
bow and arrow or woodknife.
I warrant me, said the witch.
Thou shalt be whipped, to keep
thee in mind that thy life is
mine and not thine. Nay, nay,
I pray thee be not wroth' said
the maid. he was a long way
down the glade, and would not
have followed me if he had
seen me: there was no perill
therein. Said the witch/wife:
Didst thou see aught else? **Y**ea, said Birdalone and was
weeping somewhat now; which
forsooth was not hard for her
to do, overwrought as she was
betwixt hope and fear: yea, I
saw my white doe and her fawn,
and they passed close by me;
and two herons flew over my
head toward the water; and,
But the witch turned sharply
& said: Thak! hast thou seen
a woman to/day in the wood?
A woman? said Birdalone,
and what woman, my lady, said
Birdalone. Hath any woman
come to the house, and passed
forth into the wood?

THE dame looked on her
carefully, and remember-
ed how she had faltered
and changed countenance that
other day, when she had charg-
ed her with being minded to
flee; and now she saw her with
wondering face, and in no wise

first time
the second
last time



confused or afraid of guilt, as it seemed: so she believed her tale, and being the more at ease thereby, her wealth ran off her, and now up she altogether pleasantly to Birdalove, and said: Now I have had my good at thee my servant, I must tell thee that in sooth it is not all for nothing that thou hast had these months of rest: for verily thou hast grown more of a woman thereby, and hast sleekened & rounded much. Albeit, the haycock will wait no longer for us, and the day after tomorrow we must fall to on it. But when that is done, thou shalt be free to do thy green gown, or what thou wilt, till wheat harvest is toward; and thereafter we shall see to it. Or what sayest thou?

BIRDALONE wondered somewhat at this so gracious word, but not much: for in her heart now was some guile born to meet the witch's guile; so she knelt down & took the dame's hands and kissed them, and said: I say nought, lady, save that I thank thee over and over again that thou art become so good to me; & that I will full merrily work for thee in the hay-field, or at whatsover else thou wilt.

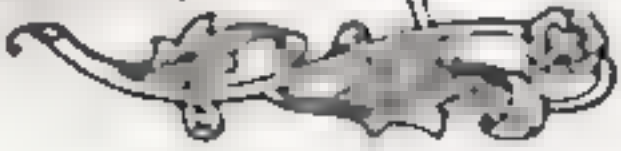
AND indeed she was so light-hearted that she had so escaped from the

hand of the witch for that time, & above all, that she had gotten a friend so kind and dear as the wood-woman, that her heart went out even toward her mistress, so that she went nigh to loving her.

Chapter IX. Of Birdalove's
common ?

AL L fair was the morning when Birdalove arose betimes before the sun was up, and she thought she would make of this a holiday before the swink afield began again, since the witch was grown good toward her. So she did on her fair shoes, & her new raiment, though the green gown was not fully done, and said to herself that she would consider what she would do with her holiday when she was amidst of her bathing.

SHE went down to the water-side, and when she was standing knee-deep in the little sandy bight afore-said, she looked over to Green Eyot, and was minded to swim over thither, as oft she did. And it was a windless dawn after a hot night, & a light mist lay upon the face of the water, and above it rose the greenery of the eyot.



SHE pushed off into the deep & swam strongly through the still water, and the sun rose while she was on the way, & by then she had laid a hand on the willow twigs of the eyot, was sending a long beam across the waters; and her wet shoulders rose up into the path of it and were turned into ruddy gold. She hoisted herself up, & climbing the low bank, was standing amongst the meadow-sweet, and dripping on to its fragrance. Then she turned about to the green plain and the house and the hedge of woodland beyond, & sighed, and said softly: A pity of it, to leave it! If it were no better elsewhere, and not so fair?

WHEN SHE turned inward to the eyot, which had done her nought but good, and which she loved; & she unbound her hair, and let it fall till the ends of the tresses mingled with the heads of the meadow-sweet, & thereafter walked quietly up into the grassy middle of the isle.

SHE was wont to go to a knoll there where the grass was fine, & flowery at this time with white clover and dog violet, and lie down under the shade of a big thorn with a much-twisted bole: but to-day some thought came a-

cross her, & she turned before she came to the thorn, & went straight over the eyot (which was but a furlong over at that place) and down to the southward, looking shore thereof. There she let herself softly down into the water & thrust off without more ado, & swam on and on till she had gone a long way. Then she communed with herself, & found that she was thinking: If I might only swim all the water and be free.

ND still she swam on: & now a light wind had been drawn up from the west, and was driving a little ripple athwart the lake, & she swam the swifter for it awhile, but then turned over on her back & floated southward still. Till on a sudden, as she lay looking up toward the far-away blue sky, and she so little and low on the face of the waters, and the lake so deep beneath her, & the wind coming ever fresher from the west, and the ripple rising higher against her, a terror fell upon her, and she longed for the green earth and its well-wrought little blossoms & leaves and grass; then she turned over again & swam straight for the eyot, which now was but a little green heap far away before her.

Part I. Of
the House of
Captivity

WHEN she was ere she
made land there, and
the sun was high in
the heavens when she came, all
spent & weary, to the shadow
of the hawthorn-tree; and she
cast herself down there & fell
asleep straightway. forsooth
her swim was about as much
as she had might for.

WHEN SHE awoke it
lacked but an hour of
noontide, & she felt
the life in her and was happy.
but had no will to rise up for a
while; for it was a joy to her to
turn her head this way & that
to the dear and dainty flowers,
that made the wide, grey, emp-
ty lake seem so far away, and
no more to be dealt with than
the very sky itself.

Last she arose, and
when she had plucked
and eaten some hand-
fuls of the strawberries which
grew plenteously on the sweet
ground of the eyot, she went
down to the landward-looking
shore, and took the water, and
swam slowly across the warm
ripple till she came once more
to the strand and her raiment.
She clad herself, and set her
hand to her pouch and drew
forth bread, and sat eating it
on the bank above the smooth
sand. Then she looked around,
and stood up with her face to-
ward the house, to see if the

dame would call to her. But she
saw the witch come out of the
porch and stand there looking
under the sharp of her hand to-
ward her, & thereafter she went
back again into the house with-
out giving any sign. Wherefore
Birdalone deemed that she had
leave that day, and that she
might take yet more holiday;
so she stepped lightly down
from her place of vantage, turn-
ed her face toward the east, &
went quietly along the very lip
of the water.

Chapter XL Birdalone comes
on new tidings.

WHEN she had cov-
ered up the house
from her, for on
that eastern end,
both a tongue of
the wood-land
shored out west into the mead-
ow, &, withal, the whole body
of the wood there drew down
to the water, and presently cut
off all the greensward save a
narrow strip along by the lake,
off the narrowest whereof lay
the rocky eyot aforesaid, nigh-
er unto the shore than lay Green
Eyot.

Never had Birdalone
gone so far east as to
be over against Rock
Eyot. In her childish days the
witch had let her know that
she might go where she would,
but therewith had told her a

tail of a huge serpent which dwelt in the dark wood over against Rock Eyot, whose wont it was to lap his folds round and round living things that went there, and devour them; and many an evil dream had that evil serpent brought to Birdalone. In after days belike she scarce trowed in the tale, yet the terror of it abode with her. Moreover the wild-wood toward that side, as it drew toward the water, was dark and dreary & forbidding, running into black thickets standing amidst quagmires, all unlike to the sweet, clean upland ridges, oak begrown and green-swarded, of the parts which lay toward the north, & which she mostly haunted.

BUT this summer day, which was so bright & hot, Birdalone deemed she might harden her heart to try the adventure; & she had a mind to enter the wood thereby, and win her way up into the oakland whereas she had met Nabundia, and perchance she might happen on her; for she would not dare to summon her so soon after their first meeting. And if she met her, there would be the holiday worthily brought to an end!

SHE went Birdalone, and was soon at the narrowest of the green-

sward, and had the wood black on her left hand, for the trees of it were mostly alder. But when she was come just over against Rock Eyot, she found a straight creek or inlet of the water across her way; and the said creek ran right up into the alder thicket, and, indeed, was much overhung by huge ancient alders gnarled, riven, mossy, & falling low over the water. But close on the mouth of the creek, on Birdalone's side thereof, lay a thing floating on the dull water, which she knew not how to call a boat, for such had she never seen, nor heard of, but which was indeed a boat, oarless and sailless.

SHE looked on it all about, and wondered; yet she saw at once that it was for wending the water, & she thought, might she but have a long pole, she might push it about the shallow parts of the lake, & belike take much fish. She tried to shove it somewhat toward the lake, but with her little might could make nothing of the work; for the craft was heavy, like a barge, if there were nothing else that withstood her.

BUT this new thing she hung a long while, wondering that she had never heard thereof, or been set to toil therewith. She not-

ed that it was mostly pale grey of hue, as if it had been bleached by sun and water, but at the stem and stern were smears of darker colour, as though some one had been trying the tints of staining there.

WILL so much did this new matter take up all her mind, that she thought no more of going up into the wood; but though she had fain abided there long to see what ever might be seen, she deemed it would go ill with her did the witch happen on her there; wherefore she turned about, and went back the way she had come, going very slowly & pondering the tidings. And ever she called to mind what Nabundia had said to her, that it was by water she must flee, & wondered if she had sent her this thing that she might escape therein; so different as her going would be thereby to swimming the lake with her wet body. Then again she thought, that before she might let herself hope this, it were best, if she might, to find out from the witch what was the thing, and if she knew thereof. Yet at last she called to mind how little patient of questions was her mistress, and that if she were unheedful she might come to raise an evil storm about her. Wherefore she took this rede

at the last, that she would keep all hidden in her own breast till she should see Nabundia again; & meanwhile she might steal down thither from time to time to see if the thing still abode there; which she might the easier do by swimming if she chose her time heedfully, & go thither from Rock Eyot, which now & again she visited.

Chapter XL. Of Birdalone's guilt and the chastisement thereof.

WHEN she was come back to the sandy night and the sun was westerling; and she looked up toward the house and saw that it was the time of their evening meal, for the blue smoke of the cooking fire was going up into the air. So she went thither speedily, and entered gay of seeming. The witch looked on her doubtfully, but presently fell to speaking with her graciously as yesterday, and Birdalone was glad and easy of mind, & went about the serving of her; for always she ate after the dame; and the mistress asked her of many matters concerning the house, and the gathering of stuff.

SO came the talk on the fishing of the brook that ran before their door, &

how the trouts therein were but little, & not seldom none at all: and even therewith came these words into Birdalone's mouth, she scarce knew how: My lady, why do we not fish the lake, whereas there be shoal places betwixt us and the eyots where lie many & great fish, as I have seen when I have been swimming thereover? And now in that same creek whereas the serpent used to lurk when I was little, we have a thing come, which is made to swim on the water; & I could I have a long pole to shove withal.

BUT no time she had to make an end, ere the witchwife sprang up & turned on her with a snarl as of an evil dog, & her face changed horribly: her teeth showed grinning, her eyes goggled in her head, her brow was all to-furrowed, & her hands clenched like iron springs.

BIRDALONE shuddered back from her and cringed in mere terror, but had no might to cry out. The witch hauled her up by the hair, and dragged her head back so that her throat lay bare before her all along. Then drew the witch a sharp knife from her girdle, and raised her hand over her, growling & snarling like a wolf. But suddenly she dropped the knife, her hand

fell to her side, and she fell in a heap on the floor & lay there hushed.

BIRDALONE stood gazing on her, & trembling in every limb: too confused was she to think or do aught, though some image of flight through the open door passed before her: but her feet seemed of lead, & as in an evil dream, she had no might to move her limbs, & the minutes went by as she stood there half dead with fear.

BUT last, (and betlike it was no long while) the witchwife came to herself again, & sat up on the floor, and looked all about the chamber, and when her eyes fell upon Birdalone, she said in a weak voice, yet joyfully: Hah! thou art there still, my good servant! Then she said: A sickness fell upon me suddenly, as whiles it is wont; but now am I myself again; and presently I have a word for thee.

THEREWITH she rose up slowly, Birdalone helping her, and sat in her big chair silent awhile, and then she spake: My servant, thou hast for the more part served me well: but this time thou hast done ill, whereas thou hast been spying on my ways; whereof may come heavy trouble but if we look to it.

Well is it for thee that thou hast none unto whom thou mightest babble; for then must I needs have slain thee here and now. But for this first time I pardon thee, & thou hast escaped the wrath.

Her voice was soft and wheedling; but for Birdalone the terror had entered into her soul, and yet abode with her.

THE witch-wife sat awhile, and then arose and went about the chamber, and came to a certain aumbry and opened it, and drew forth a little flasket of lead and a golden cup scored over with strange signs, & laid them on the board beside her chair, wherein she now sat down again, and spake once more, still in the same soft and wheedling voice: Yet, my servant, thy guilt would be required of me, if I let this pass as if to day were the same as yesterday; yea, & of thee also would it be required; therefore it is a part of the pardon that thou be corrected: and the correction must be terrible to thee, that thou mayst remember never again to thrust thyself into the jaws of death. And what may I do to correct thee? It shall be in a strange way, such as thou hast never dreamed of. Yet the anguish thereof shall go to thine heart's root; but

this must thou needs bear for my good & thine, so that both we may live and be merry hereafter. Go now, fill this cup with water from the spring & come back with it. Birdalone took the cup with a sinking heart, & filled it and brought it back, & stood before the witch more dead than alive.

WHEN the witch-wife took up the flasket and pulled out the stopple and betook it to Birdalone, and said Drink of this now, a little sip no more. And the maiden did so, and the liquor was no sooner down her gullet than the witch-wife and the chamber, and all things about her, became somewhat dim to her; but yet not so much so as that she could not see them. But when she stretched out her arm she could see it not at all, nor her limbs nor any other part of her which her eyes might fall upon. Then would she have uttered a lamentable wail, but the voice was sealed up in her and no sound came from her voice. Then she heard the witch-wife how she said (and yet she heard it as if her voice came from afar) Nay, thou canst not speak, & thou canst not see thyself, nor may any other, save me & I but dimly. But this is but part of what I must lay upon thee; for next

I must give thee a new shape, & that both thyself and all other may see. But, before I do that, I must speak a word to thee, which thy new shape would not suffer the sense thereof to reach to thine heart. Hearken!

Chapter XII. The words of the Witch-wife to Birdalene.

WHEN thou comest to thyself (for it is not my will that thou shouldst never have thine own shape again), doubtless the first thing which thou shalt do with thy new-gained voice & thy new-gained wit shall be to curse me, and curse me again. Do as thou wilt herein; but I charge thee, do or beyme not, for that shall bring thee to thy bane. For if thou do not my bidding, & if thou pry into my matters, and lay bare that which I will have hidden, then will it be imputed unto thee for guilt, and will I, will I not, I must be avenged on thee even to slaying: & then is undone all the toil and pain I have had in rearing thee into a dext and lovely maiden. Deem thou, then, this present anguish kind to thee, to keep thee that thou come not to nought.

NOW since I have begun speaking, I will go on; for little heretofore have

I spoken to thee what was in mine heart. Well I wot that thou thinkest of me but as of an evil dream, whereof none can aught but long to awake from it. Yet I would have thee look to this at least; that I took thee from poverty and pinching, & have reared thee as faithfully as ever mother did to child, clemming thee never, smiting thee not so oft, and but seldom cruelly. Moreover, I have suffered thee to go whereso thou wouldst, and have compelled thee to toil for nought but what was needful for our two livelihoods. And I have not stayed thy swimnings in the lake, nor thy wanderings in the wood, & thou hast learned bowshot there, till thou art now a past-master in the craft; and, moreover, thou art swift-foot as the best of the deer, & mayest over-run any one of them whom thou wilt.

SOOTHLY a merry life hast thou had as a child, and merry now would be thy life, save for thine hatred of me. Into a lovely lily-lane hast thou grown. That I tell thee now, though my wont has been to gird at thee for the fashion of thy body; that was but the word of the mistress to the thrall. And now what awaiteth thee? for thou mayst say: I am lonely here, & there

Part I. of
the History of
Captivity.

is no man to look on me. Of what avail, therefore, is my goodliness and shapeliness? Child, I answer thee that the time is coming when thou shalt see here a many of the fairest of men, and then shalt thou be rather rose than lily, and fully come to womanhood; and all those shall love and worship thee, and thou mayest gladden whom thou wilt, & whom thou wilt mayest sadden; & no lack forever shalt thou have of the sweetness of love, or the glory of dominion.

THINK of it then! All this is for thee if thou dwell here quietly with me, doing my will till thy womanhood hath blossomed. Wherefore I beseech and pray thee put out of thy mind the thought of fleeing from me, for if thou try it, one of two things shall be: either I shall bring thee back and slay thee, or make thee live in misery of torment; or else thou wilt escape, & then what will it be? Dost thou know how it shall go with thee, coming poor & nameless, an outcast, into the world of men? Lust shalt thou draw unto thee, but scarce love. I say an outcast shalt thou be, without worship or dominion; thy body shall be a prey to ribalde, and when the fine flower thereof hath faded, thou shalt find that the

words of thy lovers were but mockery. That no man shall love thee, & no woman aid thee. Then shall Eld come to thee & find thee at home with Hell; and Death shall come & mock thee for thy life cast away for nought, for nought. This is my word to thee: & now I have nought to do to thee save to change thee thy skin, & therein must thou do as thou canst, but it shall be no ugly or evil shape at least. But another time may, be I shall not be so kind as to give thee a new shape, but shall let thee wander about seen by none but me. Then she took the cup and took water in the hollow of her hand and cast it into Birdalone's face, & muttered words withal; & presently she saw herself indeed, that she was become a milk/white hind, and she heard and saw again, but not as she, the maiden, was wont to hear and see; for both her hearing & seeing & her thought was of a beast and not of a maiden.

SAYED the witch/wife: It is done now, till I give thee grace again; and now be off into the field, but if thou stray more than half a bowshot from the brook, it shall be the worse for thee. And now the day was done and night was come.

Chapter XIII Birdalone meet
eth the blood-woman again

IT was fifteen days there
after that Birdalone a-
woke lying in her bed on
a bright morning as if
all this had been but a
dream. But the witch-
wife was standing over
her and crying out: Thou art
late, sluggard, bed, this fair wea-
ther day, & the grass all spoil-
ing for lack of the scythe. Off
and down to the meadow with
thee.

BIRDALONE waited
not for more words,
but sprang out of bed,
& had her work-a-day raiment
on in a twinkling and stayed
but to wash her in a pool of the
brook, & then was amidst the
tall grass with the swathe fall-
ing before her. As she worked
she thought, and could scarce
tell whether joy at her present
deliverance, or terror of the
witch-wife were the greatest.
Sore was her longing to go see
her friend in the wood, but the
hayell lasted more than a week,
& when that was done, wheth-
er it were of set purpose or no,
the dame forgot her other pro-
mise to give Birdalone more
holiday, and kept her close to
her work about meadow and
acre. Otherwise her mistress
nowise mishandled or threat-
ened her, though she had gone

back to the surliness & railing
which was her wont. At last, on
a morning when the dame had
bidden her to nought of work,
Birdalone took her bow in her
hand and cast her quiver on her
back, and went her ways into
the wood, and forgot not the
tress of Habundia's hair, but
she had no need to use it, for
when she was come to the Oak
of Crest straightway came Ha-
bundia forth from the thicket,
and now so like to Birdalone
that it was a wonder, for as her
friend she bare bow and quiver,
and green gown trussed up till
her knees were naked.

So they kissed and em-
braced, and Birdalone
wept upon her friend's
bosom, but was ashamed of
the words which would have
told her of her case. Then Ha-
bundia set her down upon the
greensward, and sat down be-
side her, and caressed her and
soothed her; then she smiled
on Birdalone, & said: Thy tale
is partly told without words,
and I would weep for thee if I
might shed tears. But thou
mayest tell me wherefore thou
didst suffer this. Though for-
sooth I have an inkling there-
of. Hast thou happened on the
witch's ferry?


GIVEN so it was, sister,
quoth Birdalone. And
therewith she plucked

Part I of
the Name of
Captivity

up heart, & told her all the tale of the vanishing of her body and the skin-changing. And Nabundia answered Well then, there is this to be said, that sooner or later this must have happened, for thereby lieth thy road of escape; wherefore it is better sooner than later. But tell me again: was she fierce & rough in words with thee? for what she said to thee thou hast not yet told me. Said Birdalone: In her first fury, when she was like to have slain me, she had no words, nought but wolfish cries. But thereafter she spake unto me strangely, yet neither fiercely nor roughly; nay, it seemed to me as if almost she loved me. And more than almost she besought me rather than commanded me not to flee from her. And wert thou beguiled by her soft speech? said Nabundia. No-wise to cast aside my hope of escape, nay, not even in that hour, said Birdalone; but amidst all the confusion and terror somewhat was I moved to compassion on her.

SHAKE Nabundia, looking anxiously on her: Dost thou deem that thou art somewhat cowed by what she hath done to thee? Said Birdalone, & flushed very red: Oh no, no! Nought save death or bonds shall come

betwixt me & my utmost striving for escape. That is better than well, said Nabundia: but again, canst thou have patience a little, and be wary and wise the while? So meseemeth, said the maiden. Said Nabundia: Again it is well. Now is the summer beginning to wane, & by my rede thou shalt not try the flight until May is come again and well-nigh worn into June; for thou wilt be bigger then, little sister, & tidings are waxing that shall get matters ready for thy departure: moreover, thou must yet learn what thou hast to do meanwhile, and thereof shall I tell thee somewhat as now. For that boat, the thing which thou didst find, and for which thou didst suffer, is called the Sending Boat, and therein thy mistress fareth time and again, I deem to seek to some other of her kind, but I know not unto whom, or whereto. Hast thou noted of her that whiles she goeth away privily by night & cloud? Yea, verily, said Birdalone, and this is one of the things which heretofore hath made me most afraid. Said Nabundia: Well now, that she wendeth somewhat in this ferry I wot; but as I wot not whither, so also I know not what she doth with the Sending Boat to make it obey her;



whereas, though I know all things of the wood, I know but little of the lake. Wherefore, though there be peril to thee therein, follow her twice or thrice when she riseth up for this faring, & note closely what is her manner of dealing with the said Sending Boat, so that thou mayest do in like wise. Wilt thou risk the smart & the skin-changing or even if it were the stroke of the knife, to gather this wisdom? And thereafter thou shalt come hither and tell me how thou hast sped. With a good heart will I, dear sister, said Birdalone.

WHEN Nabundia kissed her and said. It is a joy to me to see thee so valiant, but herein may I help thee somewhat; here is a gold finger-ring as thou' fashionest as a serpent holding his tail in his mouth; whenso thou goest on this quest, set thou this same ring on the middle finger of thy left hand, and say thou above thy breath at least:

To left and right,
Before, behind,
Of me be sight
As of the wind!

And nought then shall be seen of thee even by one who standeth close beside. But wear not the ring openly save at such times, or let the witch have

sight thereof ever, or she will know that thou hast met me. Dost thou understand, & canst thou remember?

LAUGHED Birdalone, and took the ring and set it on her finger, and spake aloud even as Nabundia had given her the words. Then quoth Nabundia, laughing: Now have I lost my friend and sister, for thou art gone, Birdalone. Take off the ring, sweetling, & get thee to thine hunting, for if thou come home empty-handed there will be flyting awaiting thee, or worse.

SO Birdalone took off the ring & came back to sight again laughing: then the wood-woman kissed her and turned her heels to her, & was gone; but Birdalone stringed her bow, and got to her woodcraft, & presently had a brace of hares, wherewith she went back home to the dame; who indeed, girded at her for her sloth, and her little catch in so long a while; but there it ended.

Chapter XIV Of Birdalone's hunting.

NOW were the days wearing toward wheat-harvest, & nought befel to tell of, save that on a morn the witch-wife called Birdalone to her, & said: Now is little to be

Part I Of
the House of
Captivity



done till the wheat is ready for the hook, & thy days are idle or what is that word that fell from thee that other day, that there be good swims for fish about the eyots? Canst thou swim across bearing thine angle, & back again therewith, and thy catch withal? ¶ Yea, certes, said Birdalone gaily; with one hand I may swim gallantly, or with my legs alone, if I stir mine arms ever so little. I will go straightway if thou wilt, lady; but give me a length of twine so that I may tie my catch about my middle when I swim back again.


THEREWITH she went forth lightly to fetch her angle, which was in a shed without; but just as she took it in her hand, a sudden thought came to her, so wary as she was grown. She undid the bosom of her gown, and took forth her serpent-ring; for she bore it next to her skin, made fast to the bosom of her smock; but now she hid it carefully in the thickest of her brow-hair, which was very thick and soft. Altho the tress of Nabundia's hair she bore ever mingled with her own.

SOONER had she done it, but she was glad; for she heard the dame calling her, who, when she came to the house-door, spake & said:

Now shall I fare with thee down to the water, and look to thy garments lest they be fouled by some straying beast. And therewith she looked curiously on Birdalone, and knit her brows when she saw that the maiden changed countenance in nowise.

DOWN to the water went they, and the witch sat down close to where Birdalone should take the water, and watched her do off her raiment, and eyed her keenly when she was bare, but said nought. Birdalone turned her head as she stood knee-deep, & said: How long shall I abide, lady, if I have luck? ¶ As long as thou wilt, said the dame: most like I shall be gone by then thou comest back, even if thou be away no long while.

TELL Birdalone to swim ming then, & when she was more than half over, the witch, stirring no more than need was, got hold of her raiment, which was but the old grey coat over a smock, & ransacked it, but found nought, as well ye may wot. And when she had done, she sat down again in heavy mood as it seemed, & watched Birdalone swimming, and when she beheld her body come forth out of the water, and pass out of sight amongst the flowers of the



eyot, she arose and went her way home.

13 **IRDALONE** looked through the willow-boughs, and saw her turn away, then she fared to her fishing with a smile & soon had pienteous catch from under the willow-boughs. Then, whereas the day was very calm and fair & the dame had given her holiday, she wandered about the eyot, and moost in a little wood of berry-trees, as quicken and white-beam and dog-wood, and sported with the birds, who feared her not but came & sat on her shoulders and crept about her feet. She went also and stood a while on the southern shore, and looked on the wide water dim in the offing under the hot-weather haze and longed to be gone beyond it. Then she turned away & to the other shore, and gat her fish & strung them on the string and made them fast to her middle, and so took the water back again to the yellow strand, where now was no one awaiting her. But before she did on her garments, she looked on them, and saw that they lay not as she had left them, whereby she knew well that the witch-wife had handled them.

I **MIDST** all this the day was wearing to an end & again she saw the smoke of the cooking-fire going up into the air from the chimney of the house & she smiled ruefully, thinking that the witch might yet find an occasion for ransacking her raiment. But she plucked up heart, & came home with her catch, and the dame met her with a glum face, & neither praised her nor blamed her but took the fish silently. Such ending had that day.

CHAPTER XV **THE NEW YEAR**

A **FTE R** this she went once and again fishing on to Green Eyot by the bidding of the dame, who went not again to the shore with her. These times she had half a mind to go see the bending Boar, but durst not, lest the thing itself might have life enough to tell of her.

A **ND** now was come the time of wheat-harvest, & **IRDALONE** must wear her days awinking in the acre-land, clad but in smock and shoes & the toil was hard and browned her skin & hardened her hands but it irked her not, for the witch let her work all alone, and it was holiday unto the maiden if her mistress were

THE END OF THE FIRST PART



not anigh, despite those words which had somewhat touched her heart that other day.

BUT when wheat getting was done, there was again rest for her body, & swimming withal and fishing from the eyot by the witch's leave. And again by her own leave she went to seek Nabundia in the wood, and spent a happy hour with her, and came back with a fawn which she had shot, and so but barely saved her skin from the twig; however, Then yet again she went into the wood on the witch's errand as well as her own, and was paid by her friend's sweet converse, and by nought else save the grudging girding of her mistress.

BUT on a night when September was well in, and the sky was moonless & overcast, somewhat before midnight the dame came and hung over Birdalone as she lay abed, and watched to see if she waked; forsooth the witch's coming had waked her; but even so she was wary, and lay still, nor changed her breathing. So the witch turned away, but even therewith Birdalone made a shift to get a glimpse of her, and this she saw thereby, that the semblance of her was changed, & that she bore the self-same skin wherewith

she had come to Citterhay, and which she had worn twice or thrice afterwards when she had an errand thither.

THE WITCH now glided swiftly to the door, and out into the night. Birdalone lay still a little, lest she should fall into a trap, and then arose very quietly and did on her smock, which lay ever under her pillow with the ring sewn thereto again, & so went out adoores also, and deemed she saw the witch some way on ahead; but it was nothing for her light feet to overtake her. So she stayed to take the ring from her smock, and set it on her finger; then in a low voice she said:

To left and right,
Before, behind,
Of me be sight
As of the wind!

Then boldly she sped on, and was soon close on the heels of the witch, who made her way to the edge of the lake, & then turned east, and went even as Birdalone had gone when she came across the Bending Boat.

SO fared the witch/wife straight to the creek-side, & Birdalone must needs stick close to her, or she had known nought, so black was the night amongst the alder-boughs. But the witch-

wife fumbled about a while when she was stayed by the creek, & presently drew somewhat from under her cloak, & the maiden saw that she was about striking flint upon steel, & quaked somewhat, lest her charm had played her false. Presently the tinder quickened, and the dame had lighted a lantern, which she held up, peering all about; and full she looked on the place whereas was Birdalone, and made no show of seeing her, though well-nigh the maiden looked for it to see her drop the lantern and spring on her.

WHEN the witch, holding the lantern aloft, steps over the gunwale of the boat, and sits down on the thwart; and it was a near thing but that Birdalone followed her into the boat, but she feared the getting forth again, so she but hung over it as close as she might. Then she saw the witch draw out of her girdle that sharp little knife which Birdalone had seen raised against her own throat; & then the witch bared her arm, and pricked it till the blood sprang from that barren white skin; thereat she stood up, and went to the bows of the craft and hung over them, and drew her arm to and fro over the stem to bloody it; and went thereafter

d 2

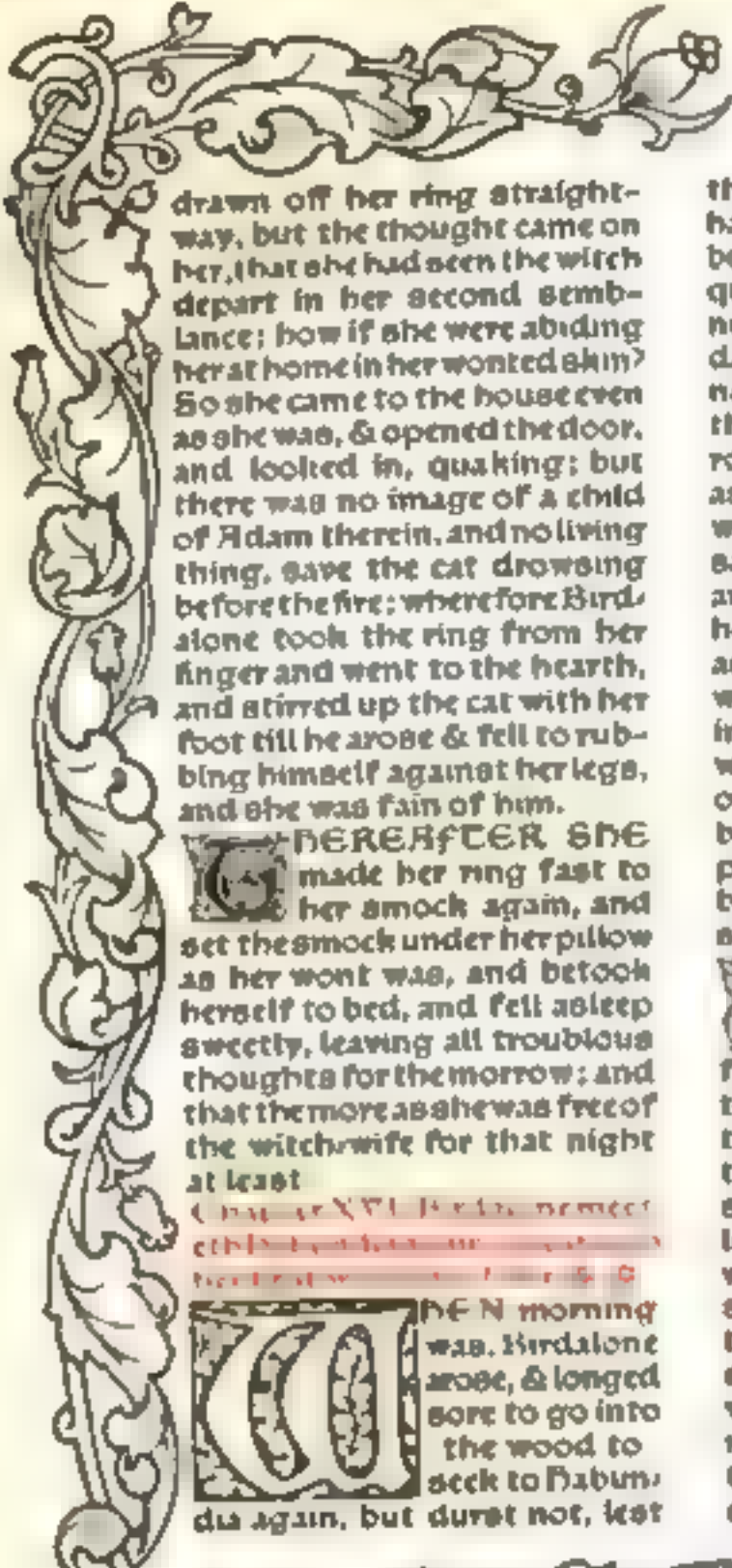
to the stern, and took blood into her right hand and passed it over the place of the steering (for there was no rudder), and came back and sat down on the thwart again; & so far as Birdalone might see, busied herself in staunching the little wound on her arm. Then deemed Birdalone that she knew what manner of punt was that which had made the rusty smears which she had seen on the boat by daylight.

BUT now as the witch sat there, a harsh voice began to stir in her throat, & then words came out of her, and she sang in a crow's croak

The red raven/wine now
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;
Then wake and awake
And the wonted way take!
The way of the Wender
Forth over the flood,
For the will of the Sender
Is blent with the blood.

WHEREWITHAL began the boat to stir, and anon it glided forth out of the creek into the waters of the lake, and the light of the lantern died, & it was but a minute ere Birdalone lost all sight of it. She abode a little longer, lest perchance boat and witch might come back on her hands, and then turned & went swiftly back again. She would have

35



drawn off her ring straight-
way, but the thought came on
her, that she had seen the witch
depart in her second semb-
lance; how if she were abiding
her at home in her wonted skin?
So she came to the house even
as she was, & opened the door,
and looked in, quaking; but
there was no image of a child
of Adam therein, and no living
thing, save the cat drowsing
before the fire; wherefore Bird-
alone took the ring from her
finger and went to the hearth,
and stirred up the cat with her
foot till he awoke & fell to rub-
bing himself against her legs,
and she was fain of him.

THEREAFTER SHE
made her ring fast to
her smock again, and
set the smock under her pillow
as her wont was, and betook
herself to bed, and fell asleep
sweetly, leaving all troublous
thoughts for the morrow; and
that the more as she was free of
the witch-wife for that night
at least.

*Chapter XVI. Birdalone meeteth
Habundia in the wood.*

THE NEXT morning
was, Birdalone
arose, & longed
sore to go into
the wood to
seek to Habun-
dia again, but durst not, lest

the witch-wife should come to
hand again earlier than might
be looked for. So she abode
quiet and did what was toward
near about the house. All that
day the witch came not back,
nor the next; but the morrow
thereafter, when Birdalone a-
rose, she found the wonted
aspect of her mistress in the
wonted place, who, when she
saw the maiden, greeted her,
and was somewhat blithe with
her; and Birdalone would have
asked her leave to go to the
wood, but she trusted little
in her unwonted soft mood;
which yet lasted so long that
on the third day she herself
bade Birdalone go take her
pleasure in the wood, and bear
back with her what of venison
she might.

FORTHWITH went
Birdalone as glad as
might be, and met her
friend at the Oak of Cryot, &
told her closely how all had be-
rid; and Habundia said: Here,
then, thou hast learned how to
sail the lake. But hast thou
learned enough to try the ad-
venture & not to fail? Even
so I deem, said Birdalone, but
this I would say, that me deem-
eth it better that I follow the
witch down to the boat one
more time at least; for this first
time it was dark; and moreover
shall I not be sure of the spell


if I hear it said oftener, lest it be not ever the same words? What sayest thou? she said: Thou art right herein, & since the adventure may not be tried till next June is at hand, there is time enough and to spare. And now for this hour that is we need talk no more of it. Only, my sweet, I beseech thee be wary; and above all suffer not the witch/wife to set eye or hand on the ring. Truly mine heart oft aches sorely for thy peril; for therein the image of thee abideth rather as of my daughter than my friend. Yea, now thou laughest, but kindly, so that the sound of thy laughter is as sweet music. But know that though thou art but a young maiden, and I in all wise like unto thee of aspect, yet have I dwelt many and many a year upon the earth, and much wisdom have learned. Trowest thou me?

YEA, yea, said Birdalone, with all my heart. Then she hung her head awhile and kept silence, & thereafter looked up and spake: I would ask thee a thing & crave somewhat of thee, as if thou wert verily my mother; wilt thou grant it me? Yea, surely, child, said Habundia. Said Birdalone: This it is then, that thou wilt learn me of thy wisdom. Habundia smiled full

kindly on her, and said: This of all things I would have had thee ask, and this day and now shall we begin to open the book of the earth before thee, for therein is mine heritage & my dominion. Sit by me, child, & hearken!

SO the maiden sat down by her likeness under the oak, and began to learn her lesson, forsooth forgotten is the wisdom, though the tale of its learning abideth, wherefore nought may we tell thereof.

WHEN it was done, Birdalone kissed her wood-mother & said: This is now the best day of my life, this and the day when first I saw thee. I will come hither now many times before the day of my departure. Yea, but, sweet child, said Habundia, beware of the witch & her cruelty; I fear me she shall yet be grim toward thee. So will I be wary, said Birdalone, but I will venture some little peril of pain but if thou forbid me, mother. And I pray thee by thy love to forbid me not. And this I pray thee the more, because after one of these grim times then mostly doth she meddle the less with me for a while, wherefore I shall be the freer to come hither. Habundia kissed her and embraced



her, and said Valiant art thou
for a young maiden. my child,
and I would not refrain thee
more than a father would re-
frain his young son from the
strokes of the tilt-yard. But I
pray thee to forget not my love,
and my sorrow for thy grief.

THE WITCH they sun-
dered, & it was drawing
toward evening. Bird-
alone sought catch, & brought
home venison to the dame, who
was yet blithe with her, and
spake that evening as she eyed
her: I cannot tell how it is, but
thou seemest changed unto
me, and lookest more towards
thy womanhood than even yes-
terday. I mean the face of thee,
for wert thou stripped, lean en-
ough I should see thee, doubt-
less. But now look to it, I be-
seech thee, to be both deft and
obedient, so that I may be as
kind to thee as I would be, and
kinder than I have been here-
tofore.


**Chapter XVII. The passing
of the Year into Winter.**

MORE the days
now, till on a
night of Oc-
tober, toward
the end there-
of, the witch
went a night-tide to the Bend-
ing Boat, & Birdalone follow-
ed her as ever. This time the
night was wild and windy, but

the moon was high aloft and
big, and all cloud save a few
flecks was blown from off the
heavens: so that the night was
as light as could be; and even
at the tree-hung creek it was
easy to see all that was done.
And so it was that the witch
did & spake in all wise as she
did before.

ANOTHER time, when
November was well nigh
out, the dame arose for
her late-faring; but this night
the snow lay deep betwixt
house and water, and Bird-
alone thought that it would
scarce do to follow. forsooth
she knew not whether her feet
would the less leave their print
in the snow because they were
not to be seen. When she
asked Rabundia thereof, she
laughed and said: Once more
thou hast been wise, my child,
for though it had been no
harder to put this night into
thy ring, that whose wore it
should not touch the ground,
yet it hath not been done.

IT MUST be told, that
in this while Birdalone
went oft to the Tryst-
ing Tree, and called on her
mother (as now she called her)
to come to her, and ever more
and more of wisdom she won
thereby. Though the witch
was oft surly with her, and
spared not her girding, yet,




the needful work done, she meddled little with her. But on a day she straightly banned her the wood, and Birdalone went notwithstanding, and when she was there with the woodmother nought she told her thereof, but was blithe and merry beyond her wont. She came back home thereafter empty handed, & stepped into the chamber proudly and with bright eyes & flushed cheeks, though she looked for nought save chaastisement; yea, it might be even the skin/ changing forsooth the witch was sitting crouched in her chair with her hands on the elbows & her head thrust forward, like a wild beast at point to spring; but when her eye fell on Birdalone, she faltered and drew back into herself again, and muttered somewhat unheard but to Birdalone spake nought of good or bad.

NOW THIS winter/ tide upon them, when there was nought to do in field and acre, and but a little in the byre. In years bygone, and even in the last one the witch had not spared Birdalone toil any the more, but had made errands for her amidst the snow and biting winds, or over the lake when it was laid with ice. But now she bade her to nought save what she had

a will to whereby she lost but little, whereas Birdalone was well willing to strive against wind & weather & the roughness of the winter earth, and overcome if she might, so that all were well done that had to be done about the stead.

SILL did the witch give her hard words and rail at her for the most part, but from the teeth outward only, & because she was wont thereto. Inwardly indeed she began to fear Birdalone, and deemed that she would one day have the mantery & this led her into fierce and restless moods; so that she would sit staring at the maiden's beauty handling her knife withal, and scarce able to forbear her. And in such a mood she once made occasion to chastise her as her wont had been erst, & looked to see Birdalone rebel against her; but it fell out otherwise, for Birdalone submitted herself to her meekly and with a cheerful countenance. And this also was a terror to the witch, who deemed, as indeed it was, that the purpose was growing in her thrall. So from that time she meddled with her no more. All this while, as may be thought, Birdalone went yet oftener to the Oak of Tryst, despite frost and snow and wind, and gat much lore of

Part I of
The House of
Lamentation



her wood-mother, and learned wisdom abundantly. And her days were happy.

Chapter XVIII. Of spring tide and the Mind of Bird alone.

NOW was the winter gone and the spring-tide come again, and with the blossoming of the earth blossomed Birdalone also. Nought sweeter of flesh might she be than erst, but there was now a new majesty grown into her beauty: her limbs were rounded, her body fulfilled, her skin sleeked and whitened; and if any mother's son had beheld her feet as they trod the meadow besprinkled with saffron and daffodil, ill had it gone with him were he gainsaid the kisses of them, though for the kissing had he fared the worse belike.

IN THE spring-tide, amidst of April, she followed the witch-wife down to the Sinking Boat for the third time; & there went everything as erst, and she deemed now that the lesson was well learned, and that she was well-nigh as wise as the witch herself therein.

BUT the day after she went about somewhat pensive, as though a

troublesome thought were on her; & when, three days thereafter, she met the wood-mother, she spake to her even as they parted, & said: Mother, much wisdom hast thou learned me, and now this at the last withal, that hitherto there has been shame in my life; & now fain were I to be done with it. A fair child, said Nabundia, little is the shame though this woman hath had the upper hand of thee & hath used thee cruelly: how mightest thou, a child, strive with her? But now I see and know that there is an end of that; that she feareth thee now, and will never again raise a hand against thee save thou fall wholly into her power; as thou shalt not, my child. Be comforted then for what is gone by! Nay, mother, said Birdalone, it is not that which troubleth me: for, as thou sayest, what else might I do? But thy wisdom which thou hast set in my heart hath learned me that for these last months I have been meeting guile with guile and lies with lies. And now will I do so no more, lest I become a guiltful woman, with nought good in me save the fairness of my body. Wherefore hearken, sweet mother! What is done, is done; but when it cometh to the day, which is speed-



ity drawing nigh, that I must part from thee, it may be for a long while, then will I not fare to the Sending Boat by night and cloud & with hidden head, but will walk thither in broad day, and let that befall which must befall.

CHANGED THEN Rabbundia's face and became haggard and woe-ful, and she cried out: O if I could but weep, as ye children of Adam! O my grief and sorrow! Child, child! then will be-tide that falling into her hands which I spake of e'en now; and then shall this wretch, this servant of evil, assuredly slay thee there & then, or will keep thee to torment thee till thy life be but a slow death. Nay, nay, do as I should do, and fare with hidden head, and my ring on thy finger. Or else, O child, how will thou hurt me!

BIRDALONE wept; but presently she fell to caressing the mother's hand, & said. This is thy doing, wherein thou hast made me wise. Yet fear not; for I deem that the witch-wife will not slay me, whereas she look-eth to have some gain of me; moreover, in the evil of her heart is mingled some love toward me, whereof, as erst I told thee, I have a morsel of compassion. Mother, she will

not slay me: and I say that she shall not torment me, for I will compel her to slay me else. It is my mind that she will let me go. Said the mother: Yea, may happen, yet but as a bird with a string to its leg. If it be so, said Bird-alone, then let my luck prevail over her guile, as well it may be since I have known thee, O wise mother!

THE wood-wife hung her head & spake nought for a while; then she said: I see that thou wilt have it so, and that there is something in thine heart which we, who are not children of Adam, may not understand; yet once wert thou more like unto us. Now all I may say is, that thou must rule in this matter, and that I am sad.

WHEN she looked down again & presently rais-ed a brighter face, and said. Belike all shall be better than I thought. Then she kissed Birdalone and they parted for that time.

Chapter XIX. They bid fare-
well. Birdalone and the Wood-
wife.



NOW APRIL was gone, and May was come with the thorn a-blos-soming & there was Birdalone

**Part I Of
the House of
Captivity**



waxing still in loveliness. And now the witch had left all girdling at her even, and spake to her but little, save when she needs must. But to Birdalone it seemed that she watched her exceeding closely.

BIRDALONE went oft to the wood, & learned yet more of lore: but of the matter of the Departure, how it was to be gone about they spake no more, and great was the love betwixt them.

T last when May was worn nigh the June came Birdalone to the Oak of Cryet, and found the wood-mother there; & when they had talked awhile, but ever from the teeth out, spake Habundia: Though thou be now the wiser of us two maybe, yet have I wisdom to wot that this is the hour of our sundering & that to-morrow thou wilt try the adventure of the Sending Boat: is it not so? Yea, mother, said Birdalone: I bid thee farewell now: woe is me therefore! Said Habundia: And thou wilt deliver thyself into the hands of the witch, wilt thou, as thou saidst that other day? Quoth Birdalone: I see not wisdom, dear mother, if I trust in my goodhap? Alas, said the mother, it may be so when all is said, But O my sad heart! and how I fear for thee!

MY mother, my mother! said Birdalone, that I should make the days grievous unto thee! and thou who hast made my days so joyous! But now canst thou not say of thy wisdom that we shall meet again?

IN the wood/woman sat down, and let her head fall over her knees, and was silent a long while; then she rose up and stood before Birdalone, and said: Yea, we shall meet again, howsoever it maybe. Let us depart with that sweet word in the air between us. Yet first thou shalt give me a tress of thine hair, as I did to thee when first we met: for by means of it may I know to-morrow how thou hast sped.

YEN so did Birdalone, and this was the end of their talk, save broken words of lamentation as they said farewell. And therewith for that while they sundered.

Chapter XX. Of Birdalone &

BIRDALONE woke up in the morning & arose and clad herself and she saw not the witch-wife in the chamber, though her bed looked as if it had been slept in. Birdalone accounted little thereof, whereas the dame

would oft go on one errand or another much betimes in the morning. Yet was she somewhat glad, for she was nowise wishful for a wrangle with her. Withal, despite her valiancy, as may well be thought, she was all a-flutter with hopes & fears, and must needs refrain her body from overmuch quaking and restlessness if she might.

NOW she mingled the tress of the wood-mother's hair with her own hair, but deemed it nought perilous to leave the ring yet sewn to her smock: she set some deal of bread & flesh in her scrip, lest her voyage should be long, and then all simply stepped over the threshold of the house of her Captivity.

SHE went straight to the strand as fore said, seeing nought of the witch-wife by the way; and when she came there, was about to turn straightway to her left hand down to the creek, when it came into her mind that she would first swim over to Green Eyot for this last of times. For the eyot indeed she loved, & deemed it her own, since never had her evil dream, the witch, set foot thereon. Moreover, she said to herself that the cool lake would allay the fever of her blood, and make her flesh firmer and less timorous for

the adventure. And again, that if the witch should see her from afar as she could scarce fail to do, she would deem the maiden was about her wonted morning swimming, & would be the less like to spy on her.

NOW, when she had let her garments slip from off her on to the sand close to the water's edge, she stood a while, with her feet scarce covered by the little ripple of the bight, to be a token of safety to her mistress. To say sooth, now it was come so nigh to the deed, she shrank aback a little, and was fain to dally with the time, and, if it might be, thrust something of no import betwixt her and the terror of the last moment.

NOW she took the water, & rowed strongly with her lovely limbs till she came to the eyot, and there she went aland, and visited every place which had been kind to her; and kissed the trees and flowers that had solaced her, and once more drew the birds and rabbits to sport with her; till suddenly it came into her head that the time was wearing overfast. Then she ran down to the water and plunged in, and swam over to the strand as fast as she might, & came land there, thinking of nothing less than what had befallen.

OR lo! when she looked around for her raiment and her scrip, it was nowhere to be seen; straightway then it came into her mind, as in one flash, that this was the witch's work; that she had divined this deed of the flight, and had watched her, & taken the occasion of her nakedness and absence that she might draw her back to the House of Captivity. And this the more as the precious ring was sewn to Birdalone's smock, and the witch would have found it there when she handled the raiment.

BIRDALONE wasted no time in seeking for the lost; she looked down on to the smooth sand, and saw there footprints which were not her own, & all those went straight back home to the house. Then she turned, & for one moment of time looked up toward the house, and saw plainly the witch come out a-doors, & the sun flashed from something bright in her hand.

SHE indeed she made no stay, but set off running at her swiftest along the water-side toward the creek & the Sending Boat. As is afore-said she was as fleet-foot as a deer, so but in a little space of time she had come to the creek, and leapt into the boat, panting & breathless. She turned

and looked hastily along the path her feet had just worn, & deemed she saw a fluttering and flashing coming along it, but some way off; yet was not sure, for her eyes were dizzy with the swiftness of her flight and the hot sun & the hurry of her heart. Then she looked about a moment confusedly, for she called to mind that in her nakedness she had neither knife, nor scissors, nor bodkin to let her blood withal. But even therewith close to hand she saw hanging down a stem of half-dead briar-rose with big thorns upon it; she hastily tore off a length thereof and scratched her left arm till the blood flowed, & stepped lightly first to stem and then to stem & beameared them therewith. Then she sat down on the thwart and cried aloud.

The red raven/wine now
Hast thou drunk, stem & bow,
Then wake and awake
And the wonted way take!
The way of the Glender
Forth over the flood,
For the will of the Sender
is blent with the blood.

SHE had she time to wonder if the boat would obey her spell ere it began to stir beneath her, & then glided out into the lake & took its way over the summer ripple,

going betwixt Green Eyot and the mainland, as if to weather the western nees of the eyot: & it went not a stone cast from the shore of the said mainland.

NITHER to meet it now cometh the witch, running along the bank, her skirts flying wild about her, & a heavy short sword gleaming in her hand. Her furious running she stayed over against the boat, & cried out in a voice broken for lack of breath:

Back over the flood
To the house by the wood!
Back unto thy rest
In the alder nest!
For the blood of the Sender
Lies warm on thy bow,
And the heart of the Wender
Is weary as now.

BUT she saw that the Sending Boat heeded her words nothing, whereas it was not her blood that had awakened it, but Birdalone's. Then cried out the witch: O child, child! say the spell and come back to me! to me, who have reared thee and loved thee and hoped in thee! O come back!

But how should Birda-

Here ends the first Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the House of Captivity. And now begins the Second Part, which is called Of the Wondrous Isles. ♀♀

lone heed her prayer? She saw the sax, & withal had her heart forgotten, her flesh might well remember. She sat still, nor so much as turned her head toward the witch-wife.

WHEN CHME wild yelling words from the witch's mouth, and she cried: Go then, naked and outcast! Go then, naked fool! & come back hither after thou hast been under the hands of the pitiless! Ah, it had been better for thee had I slain thee! And there with she whirled the sax over her head & cast it at Birdalone. But now had the boat turned its head toward the nees of Green Eyot and was swiftly departing, so that Birdalone but half heard the last words of the witch-wife, and the sax fell flashing into the water far astern.

THEN the witch stood tossing her arms and screaming, wordless; but no more of her saw Birdalone, for the boat came round about the nees of Green Eyot, and there lay the Great Water under the summer heavens all wide and landless before her. And it was now noon of day.




SGLIDED BIRDLONE over the lake & was come forth from the House of Captivity; it might well be that she was but swimming unto death; naked as she was, fireless, foodless, and helpless, at the mercy of mere sorcery. Yet she called to mind the word of the wood-mother that they should meet again and took heart thereby; & she was glad in that she had had her will & shaken off the rule & the aldom of the witch. Much she thought of the wood-mother and loved her & wondered had she yet thought into & seen her welfare by the burning of a hair of that tress of hers; & therewith she looked on that tress of Habundia's hair and kissed it.

ALL day the Sinking Boat sped on, and she saw no land

& nought to tell of. It was but wave and sky and the familiar fowl of the lake as coot and mallard & heron, and now and then a swift wood-dove going her ways from shore to shore; two gerfalcons she saw also, an osprey, & a great ern on his errand high up aloft.

BIRDLONE waked in her loneliness till the day was spent & some what worn of the night; then she fell asleep for weariness; but so it was that before dusk she had deemed that a blue cloud lay before her in the off- and which moved not

SHE slept the short night through, and was awakened by the boat striking against something and when her eyes opened she saw that she was come land & that the sun was just risen. She stood up, & for the first minute wondered where she was, and she beheld her nakedness & knew not what it meant; then she loosened her hair and shook its abundance all about her, & thereafter she turned her eyes on this new land and saw that it was fair and goodly. The flowery grass came down to the very water and first was a fair meadow-land beset with white and red flowers, thence a row of vineyard and with



ard and garden; and, looking down on all, was a great White House, carven and glorious. A little airof wind had awakened with the sunrise, and bore the garden sweetness down to her; & warm it was after the chill of the wide water. No other land could she see when she looked lakeward thence.

SHE stepped ashore, & stood ankle-deep in the sweet grass, & looked about her for a while, and saw no shape of man astir. She was yet weary, and stiff with abiding so long amongst the hard ribs of the boat, so she laid herself down on the grass, and its softness so laced her; and presently she fell asleep again.

Chapter II. Birdalone falleth in with new friends.

WHEN SHE next awoke, the sun was not yet high, and the morning young, yet she stood upon her feet much refreshed by that short slumber. She turned toward the hill & the gay house, & saw one coming over the meadow to her, a woman to wit, in a shining golden gown, and as she drew nigh Birdalone could see that she was young & fair, tall, white-skinned and hazel-eyed, with long red hair dancing all about her as she trip-

ped lightly & merrily over the greenward.

NOW SHE comes up to Birdalone with wonder in her eyes, and greets her kindly, & asked her of her name, and Birdalone told it all simply; & the new-comer said: What errand hast thou hither, that thou art come thus naked and alone in this ill-omened ferry? Birdalone trembled at her words, though she spake kindly to her, and she said. It is a long story, but fate drave me thereto, and misery, and I knew not whither I was bound. But is there no welcome for me in this lovely land? I lack not destness wholly; & I will be a servant of servants, and ask no better if it must be so. Said the new-comer: Unto that mayst thou come; but sore will be thy servitude. I fear me thy welcome here may be but evil. Said Birdalone: Wilt thou not tell me how so? Quoth that lady: We know thy ferry here, that it is the craft wherein cometh hither now & again the sister of our lady the Queen, into whose realm thou art now come, and who liveth up in the white palace yonder, & whom we serve. And meseems thou wilt not have come hither by her leave, or thou wouldst be in other guise than this; so that belike

Part II. Of
the (Queen)
from (Lester)

thou wilt be the runaway of
thymistress. Wherefore I fear
that thou wilt be sent back
to thy said mistress after a
while, and that that while will
be grievous to thee, body and
soul.

BIRDALONE'S heart
sank, and she was pale
and trembling; but she
said: O dear lady, might I then
depart as I have come hither,
without the wotting of this
Queen? after thou hast given
me a morsel of bread, for I am
hungry. Said the gold-clad
one, looking on her pitifully:
Nay, maiden, I cannot choose
but bring thee before our mis-
tress, whereas most like she
hath already seen thee from a-
bove there, for she is far sight-
ed beyond the wont of folk who
be more manlike. But as for the
bread, see thou! I have brought
a manchet in my pouch, and
cheese withal, as I came hur-
rying; for I thought, she will be
hungry. And she reached the
victual out to her. And Bird-
alone took it & kissed the gold-
en lady's hands, & she might
not refrain her tears, but wept
as she ate.

WHEN WHILE the gol-
den lady spake unto
her & said: Neverthe-
less, thou poormaiden, some-
what may be done for thine
helping, and I will presently

speake to my sisters thereon,
who are, both of them, wiser
than I. Sisters by blood are
we not, but by love and fel-
lowship. And I doubt not but
that as we go up into the house
we shall happen upon them in
the garden. But now I look up-
on thee, how fair a woman art
thou!

THOU art kind & friend-
ly, said Birdalone, smil-
ing amidst of her tears;
might I know by what name to
call so dear a woman? Thou
shalt call me Hurta, said the
other; and my next sister is
Viridis, & the third Atra; for
that is according to the hues of
our raiment, and other names
we have not now. And lo! here
cometh Viridis over the mea-
dow.

BIRDALONE looked, &
saw a woman coming
toward them clad all in
green, with a roserweath on
her head. And she drew nigh,
and greeted Birdalone kindly,
and she also was a very beau-
teous woman; not great of
body, whereas Hurta was tall
and big-made, though excel-
lently shapen. Light brown &
goodly waved of hair was Viri-
dis, her eyes brown, and rather
long than great; her lips full
and ruddy, her cheeks soft &
sweet & smooth, and as rosy,
tinted pearl; her hands small

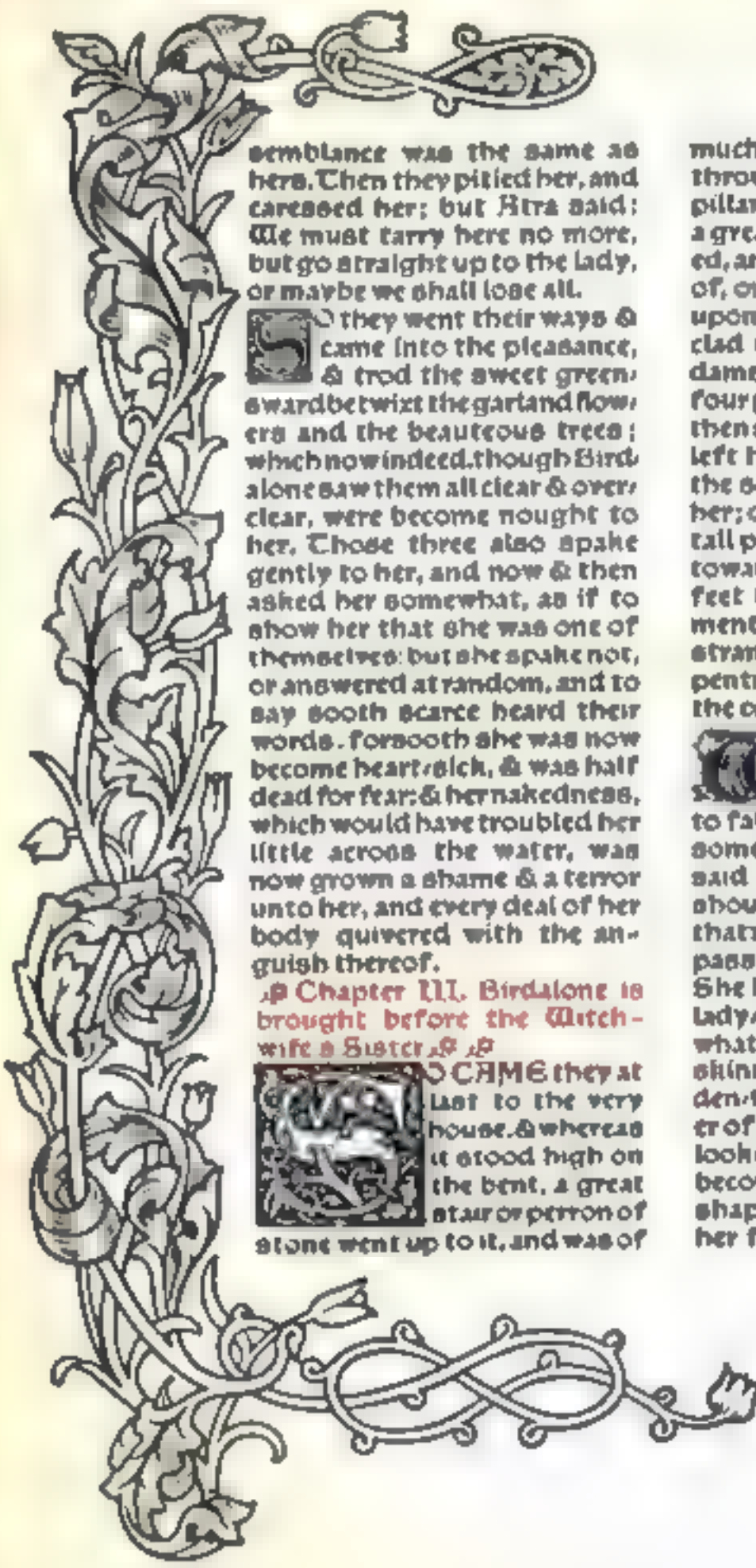
and delicate of fashion; her whole body soft/shapen as an egg; a kind, wheedling look her face bore.

WHEN she had looked a while on Birdalone, she kissed her, and said: I would thou wert happier, for thou art beauteous, and all but the evil must love thee. Therewith she drew a cake from her pouch, and said: Eat somewhat, for thou wilt be hungry; and let us go meet our other sister, who is wiser than we.

SO THEY went, all three of them, and came from off the meadow on to the garden/slopes, and at the entry thereof was come Htra to meet them; she was clad all in black, a tall, slim woman, with the grace of the willow/bough in the wind, with dark plentiful hair & grey hawk/eyes; her skin privet/white, with but little red in her cheeks. She also greeted Birdalone kindly, but sadly withal. She gave her strawberries to eat laid on a big hale/blade; and she said: Sisters, here are we hidden by the trees, and cannot be seen from the house: therefore we may sit here for a minute or two, while we talk together as to what may perchance be done for the helping of this unhappy maiden, who is so fair and

lovely, & hath strayed into so ugly a trap. Then she said to Birdalone: Thou must know, poor wanderer, that this Queen, our mistress, who is sister to the Witch Under the Wood, is big and strong, well-made, & white-skinned, so that she deems herself a Queen of all beauty: keen-eyed is she to see a fly where others would see nought smaller than a coney; fine-eared withal, wise in wizardry; not altogether dull-witted, though she be proud, and cruellier than the cruellest. But herein she faileth, that her memory is of the shortest for matters of the passing hour, albeit she remembers her spells & witch/songs over well. But other matters will scarce abide in her head for four and twenty hours. Wherefore, sisters, if we may keep this maiden out of her sight (after she hath seen her and given doom upon her) till the dead of to-morrow night, we may perchance do some good for her; and it is in my mind that then she may do good for us also.

WHEN they rejoiced in this word of Htra the wise; & Htra prayed Birdalone to tell them somewhat more of her story; and she told them much; but, why so it were, she said nought concerning the wood-wife, whose outward



semblance was the same as hers. Then they pitied her, and caressed her; but Htra said: We must tarry here no more, but go straight up to the lady, or maybe we shall lose all.

So they went their ways & came into the pleasance, & trod the sweet green sward betwixt the garland flowers and the beauteous trees; which now indeed, though Birdalone saw them all clear & overclear, were become nought to her. Those three also spake gently to her, and now & then asked her somewhat, as if to show her that she was one of themselves: but she spake not, or answered at random, and to say sooth scarce heard their words. Forsooth she was now become heart-sick, & was half dead for fear: & her nakedness, which would have troubled her little across the water, was now grown a shame & a terror unto her, and every deal of her body quivered with the anguish thereof.

Chapter III. Birdalone is brought before the Witch-wife & Sister.

CAME they at last to the very house. & whereas it stood high on the bent, a great stair or perron of stone went up to it, and was of

much majesty. They went through the porch, which was pillared and lovely, & came into a great hall most nobly builded, and at the other end thereof, on a golden throne raised upon a dais, sat a big woman clad in red scarlet. The three damais led Birdalone to some four paces of the great lady, & then stood away from her, and left her standing there alone, the scarlet-clad woman before her; on the right & the left the tall pillars going up gleaming toward the roof, and about her feet the dark polished pavement, with the wallowing of strange beasts and great serpents and dragons all done on the coal-blue ground.

WHEN she was so left alone, at first she tottered, and went nigh to falling; but then came back some little heart to her, as she said to herself that now she should verily die once for all, & that no long while would be the passing from life into death. She looked up and beheld the lady/witch, that she was somewhat like to her sister, white-skinned and of plenteous golden-hair as was she, but younger of aspect, and nowise so ill-looking as that other had now become: for somewhat well-shapen of body she was; but her face forbidding; her low-

er lip thrust out, her cheeks raggy and drooping, her eyes little more than half open; to be short, a face both proud, foolish, and cruel; terrible indeed, sitting in judgment in that place on a shrinking naked creature.

NOW SHE spake; and if there were no majesty or solemnity in the voice, there was ugly glee and malice therein; but she said to those damgels: Is this the woman that my keen eyes beheld come a land from my sister's Sending Boat e'en now? Aurea knelt on one knee, and said Yea, so please you, my lady.

THEN said the witch No thou! Wilt thou plead some errand hither from my sister? Hast thou deem me so witless as not to know that if she had sent thee hither thou wouldst not have come in this plight? Nay, I know; thou hast stolen thyself from her: thou art a thief, and as a thief shalt thou be dealt with.

SAKE Birdalone in a clear voice: No errand do I feign from thy sister, lady: when I could bear my life there no longer, I took occasion to flee from her: this is all the tale. Yet once and again it hath been in my mind that it was thy sister who stole me

from them that loved me.


IF thou art bold; thou art over bold, thou naked wretch, to bandy words with me. What heed I thy tale now thou art under my hand? Her voice was cold rather than fierce, yet was there the poison of malice therein. But Birdalone spake: If I be bold, lady, it is because I see that I have come into the House of Death. The dying may well be bold.

THE House of Death cried the stupid lady; and wilt thou call my noble house the House of Death? Now art thou no longer bold, stripped thrall, but impudent.

CORN rose into Birdalone's heart at this word, but she refrained her, & spake: I meant that I have stirred the wrath in thee, and that thou wilt slay me therefor; and that it availeth not to crave mercy of thee.

THOU OF THE Lady Thou art a fool, thrall, said she; if a sparrow fled hither from my sister, I should not wring its neck, but keep it for her. So shall I do with thee. I shall not slay thee, and so destroy my sister's chattel: nor shall I spoil thee, & spoil her possession. I shall send thee back unto her, the stolen thrall in the stolen boat, when

Part II. Of
the Wondrous Isles



I have learned thee a lesson here. forsooth it was for that cause meseemeth that she let thee slip through her fingers, for she is wise enough to have stayed thee from this holiday had she willed it. But she is tenderhearted, and kind, and soft, & might well deem that if thy chastisement were done to her hand here, it were better done than by her mercy. Now, thrall, I have spoken enough to thee, or more than enough: get thee back out of earshot!

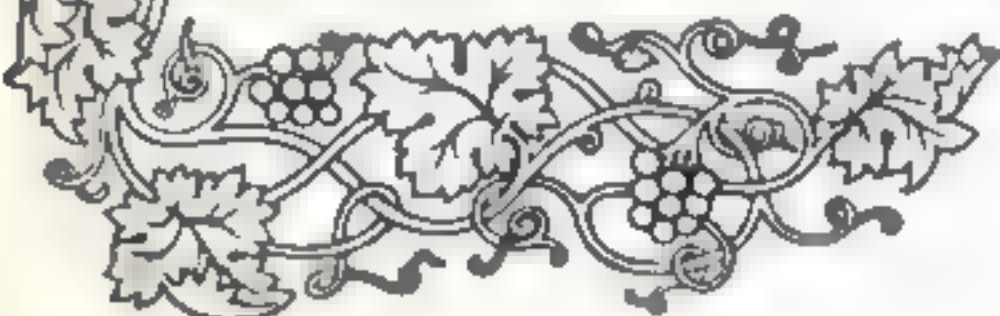
Chapter IV. Of the Witch's Dream in the Wailing Tower

BIRDALONE did as she was bidden & the witch called unto her Atra, who came & stood humbly on the footpace beside her, and held converse with her mistress a while. Then she went backward from her a little, and then came to Birdalone and in a somewhat harsh voice bade her come with her. Birdalone followed her quaking, & they came out of the hall and into a long passage which led to a wide stair winding round a newel, and all was builded exceeding fair, had Birdalone's heart suffered her eyes to see it; but her flesh was weak, and quaked before the torment to come, so that her knees well


nigh failed her.

NOW Atra lays a hand kindly on her shoulder and stays her, and says: Now meseems the walls of the Wailing Tower, forsooth high, have no ears to hear, and we may talk together. Wottest thou why I have brought thee hither? Said Birdalone in a faint voice: Hast thou been bidden to whip me? And if I had been so bidden, dear maiden, said Atra laughing, nowise would I do it. Hold up thine heart for all hath gone well so far, and now meseems betwixt us three we shall save thee.

BIRDALONE'S spirit came back to her at that word, and she put her hands to her face & fell as weeping. But Atra was kind to her and made much of her; and she kissed her and wiped her tears, and Birdalone smiled again amidst her sobbings, & she thanked Atra; who said to her: first of all I must tell thee that I am taking thee to prison by the witch's bidding. Yea, said Birdalone, & what is prison? Said Atra: A prison is a grim place where poor folk who have done that which pleaseth not rich folk are shut up, that they may be grieved & tormented by not being able to fare abroad, or go where they would; and by suffering whatsoever their



masters may lay upon them, as darkness, and cold, & hunger, and stripes. Somewhat so, or worse, our lady would have it for thee; but so would not we. Therefore for thee shall this prison be a place where thou shalt be safe till we may bring thee forth when the night hath worn towards its ending. For she will have forgotten thee by to-morrow; & this she knoweth; wherefore just now, when thou stoodest out of earshot, she was bidding me, amongst other matters, to bring thee before her to-morrow morning, & tell her the tale of thee, that she might call it to mind then what she had will to this morning.

 **A**. said Birdalone, but will she not remember that she hath given thee a charge concerning me? But little thereof, said Htra, and with a few words I may easily confuse her memory so that speech thereon will fall her. Keep up thine heart, sweetling; but let us up this stair now forthwith, for I were fain to have thee hid away in this prison, & then will I down to her and tell her that thou art lying therein in all misery & terror, lest it come into her head to send for thee ere her memory is grown dim.



A. **G**HIN did Birdalone take heart, and they hastened a long way up the stair, till Htra stayed at last at a door all done with iron, endlong and overthwart. Then she took a leash of keys from her girdle, one big & two little, and set the big one in the lock and turned it, and shoved the heavy door & entered there; by a chamber four-square and vaulted, and the vault was upheld by a pillar of red marble, wherein, somewhat higher than a man's head, were set stanchions of latten, that could be clasped and unclasped. This chamber was in a way goodly, but yet grim to look on; for the walls were all of black ashlar stone close-jointed, and the floor black also, but of marble polished so wholly that it was as dark water, & gave back the image of Birdalone's dear feet and legs as she went thereon. The windows were not small, and the chamber was light in every corner because of them, but they were so high up under the vaulting that none might see thereout aught save the heavens. There was nought in the chamber save a narrow bench of oak and three stools of the same, a great & stately carven chair dight with cushions of purple and gold, & in one corner a big oaken coffer.

NOW spake Atra: This is
our lady's prison, and I
fear me we cannot make
it soft for thee, dear stranger.
Yea, I must tell thee (and she
reddened therewith) that it is
part of my charge to set thee
in irons. Birdalone smiled
on her, and was over weary to
ask what that meant, though
she knew not. But Atra went
to the big coffer and opened it
and thrust in her hands, and
there was a jangling therewith,
and when she turned about to
Birdalone again she had iron
chains in her hands, and she
said: This shameth me, dear
friend; yet if thou wouldst wear
them it might be well, for she
may have a mind to go visit her
prison, & if she find thee there
unshackled she shall be wroth,
and oftentimes her wrath hath a
whip in its hand. And these are
the lightest that I might find.

BIRDLONE smiled a-
gain, and spake not, for
she was very weary, &
Atra did the irons on her wrists
and her ankles; and said there-
after: Yet bear in mind that it
is a friend that hath the key of
these things. And now I will
go away for a little, but I shall
be on thine errands; for first
I shall tell the mistress that
thou art lying here shackled &
in all wanhope, and next, by
the will and command of her, I

am to see that thou be well fed
& nourished to-day that thou
mayst be the stronger for to-
morrow. Now if I may give thee
rede, it is that thou forbear to
open the coffer yonder; for ug-
ly things shalt thou find there,
and that may dishearten thee
again.

THERewith she kiss-
ed her kindly on the cheek
and went her ways, & the
great key turned in the lock be-
hind her.

THERE then was Bird-
alone left to herself; &
she was over weary e-
ven to weep; true it is that she
made a step or two towards the
coffer, but refrained her, and
took two of the pillows from
the great chair and turned a-
side into the other corner, her
chains jingling as she went. There
she laid herself down,
and nestled into the very wall-
nook, & presently fell asleep,
and slumbered dreamlessly &
sweetly a long while.

Chapter V. They feast in the
Mistress's Prison.

BIRDLONE
was awakened by
the sound of the
key in the lock, &
the door opened,
& there was Atra
bearing dishes and platters,
and behind her Viridis with the
like gear, & beakers & a flagon

to boot, and both they were smiling and merry.

BIRDALONE'S heart leapt up to meet them, and in especial was she gladdened by the coming of Viridis, who had seemed to be the kindest of them all.

VIRIDIS spake: Now is come the meat for the dearsister, & it is time, for surely thou art famished, and it is now long past high noon. Doo off her irons, Htra, Said Htra: Maybeit were well to let the fetters abide on her ankles, lest the mistress should come; but for the wrists, reach out thine hands, wayfarer. So did Birdalone, & Htra laid her things on the ground, and unlocked the hand-shackles, and did them off: and meanwhile Viridis spread forth the banquet, partly on the floor, & partly on that ill-omened coffer. Then she went up to Birdalone and kissed her, and said: Now shalt thou sit in our lady's throne, & we shall serve thee, & thou shalt deem thee a great one.

NOW WOULD they have, and Birdalone laid her nakedness on the purple cushions, & then they fell all three to the feast. The victual was both plenteous & dainty, of venison and fowl, & cream and fruits and sweet-

meats, & good wine they had withal: never had Birdalone feasted in like manner, and the heart came back unto her, and her cheeks grew rosy and her eyes glittered. But she said: How if your lady were to come upon us here, and we so merry?

Said Htra: Out of the chair must thou when thou hearest the key in the lock, and then is all well, and she would have nought against us, for she herself bade us, and me in especial, to keep thee company here, and talk with thee: and Hura also would have been here, but that she is serving the lady as now.

Hath she then some pity on me, said Birdalone, that she hath bidden thee do by me what is most to my pleasure?

LIGHED VIRIDIS thereat, and Htra said: She hath no pity, nor ever shall have; but so hard of heart is she, that she may not deem that we could love thee, a stranger, and unhappy, who can serve us in nowise: so she feareth not the abatement of thy grief from any compassion of us. Rather she hath sent us, and me in especial, not to comfort thee, but to grieve thee by words; for she biddeth me tell thee fair tales, forsooth, of what to-morrow shall be to thee, and the day after; and of how she shall begin on

the Mon-

part of
the
of

thee, and what shall follow the beginning & what thou mayest look for after that for by all this she deemeth to lower thy pride & abate thy valour, and to make every moment of to-day a terror to thy flesh and thy soul, so that thereby thou mayest thole the bitterness twice over. Such is her pity for thee. And yet belike this cruelty hath saved thee for but for that she had not refrained her from thee to-day & to-morrow thou shalt be far away from her.

FERNVILLE, said Viridis in her soft sweet voice, none of all these things will we talk over with thee, but things comfortable and kind; and we will tell each to each of our story. Will we not, Atra? Yes, verily, said she.

BIRDLONE looked up on them and said: Wondrous is your compassion & loving-kindness unto me, & scarce do I know how to bear the burden thereof. But tell me one thing truly; will ye not suffer in my place when this witch cometh to know that ye have stolen me away from her?

NAY, said Atra, I have told thee that by to-morrow she will have altogether, or at least almost, forgotten

thee and thy coming hither. Moreover, she is foreseeing & hath come to know that if she raise a hand against any of us three, it will lead her to her bane, save it be for heavy guilt clearly proven against us. Forsooth, in the earlier days of our captivity such a guilt we fell into, & did not wholly escape, as Viridis can bear me witness. But we are now grown wiser, and know our mistress better, and will give her no such joy.

VIRIDIS cast her eyes down at those words and Atra's smile, and turned red and then pale, and Birdalone looked on her wondering what ailed her; then she said: Do ye sisters work in the field & the garden? I mean at milking the kine & the goats, and digging the earth, & sowing and reaping, and the like. Nay, said Atra; either our mistress, or someone else who is of marvellous might, hath so ordained, that here everything waxeth of itself without tillage, or sowing or reaping, or any kind of tending; and whatso we need of other matters the mistress taketh it for us from out of her Wonder-coffer, or suffereth us to take it for ourselves. For thou must know that this land is one of the Isles of the Lake, and is called the Isle of Increase Un-

sought.

WHERESEEMETH them, said Birdalone, were the mistresse of you to gainsay you the gifts of the wonder/coffer, ye were undone. Yea, verily, said Atra; then would be but the fruits of the earth and the wild creatures for our avail, & these, we have not learned how to turn them into dinner and supper. And they all laughed thereat; but Birdalone said: See ye then how I was right to offer myself unto you as a servant, for in all matters of the house and the byre and the field have I skill. But since ye would not or could not have me, I wonder not that ye be ill at ease here, & long to be gone, for as plentifulous and lovely as the isle is, & though ye live here without present mishandling or pinning, for, sooth to say, ye have over you a tyrant and a fool.

VIRIDIS answered: Yet is there something else, dear friend, that whets our longing to depart. Tell her thereof, Atra.

ATRA smiled and said: Simple it is: there are they who long for us and for whom we long, and we would be together. Said Birdalone: Be these kinsfolk of yours, as fathers, mothers, sisters, brothers, or the like?

REDDENED Viridis again: but Atra spake, and she also blushed somewhat, though she smiled: Those whom we love, and who love us, be not queans, but caries; neither be they of our blood, but aliens, till love overcometh them & causeth them to long to be of one flesh with us; & their longing is beyond measure, and they desire our bodies, which they deem far fairer than belike they be. And they would bed us, and beget children on us. And all this we let them do with a good will, because we love them for their might, and their truth, and the hotness of their love toward us.

LOOKED UP Viridis thereat, and her eyes gleamed amidst the flushing of her cheeks, & she said: Sister, sister! even in such wise, & no other, as they desire us do we desire them; it is no mere good will toward them from us, but longing & hot love.

MUST Atra blush no less than Viridis; yet she but said: I have told thee hereof, Birdalone, because I deem that thou hast lived simply & without the sight of men; but it is what all know in the world of the sons of Adam. Said Birdalone: Thou sayest

Part II. Of
the Mon-
drous Isles

sooth concerning me. Yet about this love have I learned somewhat even ere to day, and now, as ye speak & I, meseems the love of it comes pouring in on me and fills my heart with its sweetness. And O, to have such love from any, and with such love to be loved withall!

O HER sister, said little Viridis, fear not; such as thou shalt not fail of the love of some man whom thou must needs love. Is it not so, sister Atra? Said Atra: Yea; such love shall come unto her as surely as death.

THEN they were silent now a little, and it was as if some sweet incense had been burned within the chamber. for Birdalone, the colour came and went in her cheeks, her flesh quaked, her heart beat quick, and she was oppressed by the sweetness of longing. More daintily she moved her limbs, and laid foot to foot & felt the sleekness of her sides; and tender she was of her body as of that which should one day be so sorely loved.

WHEN she spake timidly to the others, & said: Each one of you then has a man who loves her, and longs for her and for none else? So it is, said Viridis. How sweet that shall be! said Birdalone: and now all the more I wonder

that ye could trouble yourselves over me, or think of me once; and the kinder I think it of you

SHEID ATTRA smiling on her: Nay, now must the cat be out of the bag, & I must tell thee that thou art to think of us as chapmen who with our kindness would buy something of thee, to wit, that thou wouldst do an errand for us to those three lovers of ours. Surely, said Birdalone, it were a little payment to set against your saving of my life and my soul; and had I to go barefoot over red gleeds I would do it. And yet, if I may go hence to your lovers, why not all three of you along with me?

SHEID ATTRA for this reason; thy ferry, the Sinking Boat, wherein ye came hither, is even somewhat akin to thy mistress and ours; and the mistress here hath banned it against bearing us; and now, were we so much as to touch it, such sore turmoil would arise, and such hideous noise as if earth and heaven were falling together; and the lady would be on us straightway, and we should be undone; and, as thou shalt hear presently, this hath been proved. But thou, thou art free of the said ferry. forsooth I wot not why thy mistress banned it not against

thee maybe because she deemed not that thou wouldst dare to use it or even go anigh it.

IRIDHLONE considered, & thought that even so it was; that the witch deemed that she would not dare use the Sending Boat, nor know how to, even if she came upon it, and that if she did so find it, she would sicken her of the road thereto. So now she told her friends the whole tale thereof more closely than she had afore, save again what pertained to Nabundis; withal she told every word of what her mistress had said to her at that time when she changed her into a hind. And Viridis heard & wondered, and pitied her. But Atra sat somewhat downcast a while. Then she said: However this may be, we will send thee forth to-morrow in the dawn, & take the risk of what may befall thereafter; and thou shalt bear a token for each of those three that love us, for we deem that they have not forgotten aught, but are still seeking us.

IRIDHLONE said: Whatsoever ye bid me, that will I do, and deem me your debtor still. But now I pray you, pleasure a poor captive somewhat more. Wherein? said they both; we be all ready thereto. Said the maiden:

Would ye do so much as to tell me the tale of how ye came hither, & then how it hath been with you from your first coming until now? With a good will, said Atra; hearken!

Chapter VI. Atra tells of how they three came unto the Isle of Increase Unsought.

WE were born and bred in the land that lies south-west along this Great Water, & we waxed happily, & became fellows when we were yet but children and thus grew up dear friends into maidenhood and womanhood. We were wooed by many men, but our hearts turned to none of them save unto three, who were goodly kind, and valiant; and thou mayst call them the Golden Knight, who is Aurea's man; the Green Knight, who is man of Viridis; and my man, the Black Squire. But in this was unhap that because of certain feuds which had endured from old time, this love was perilous unto them and us; so that we lived in doubt and unrest.

SOME a day, now three years ago, when the King of the whole land brought his folk into our lakeside country, and there held a court and amote in a fair great

Part II. Of
the Mon-
droun Isles



meadow anigh to the water. But even as the mote was hal-
lowed, and the Peace of God
proclaimed at the blast of the
war/horn, came we three woe-
ful ladies clad in black & knelt
before the lord king, & prayed
him hearken us. And he deem-
ed that we were fair, so he had
compassion on us, and raised
us up, and bade us speak.

We told our tale, how
that strife and wounds
and death stood betwixt
us and love; and we wept, & be-
wailed it, that our love must be
slain because men were wroth
with each other & not with us.

THE KING looked on us
kindly, & said: Who be the
swains for whom these
lovely damscels make such a
piece of work? So we nam-
ed them, & said that they were
there in the mote; and the king
knew them for valiant men who
had done him good service; &
he cried out their names, and
bade them stand forth out of
the throng. So forth they
stood, the Golden Knight, the
Green Knight, and the Black
Squire (and he also was now
a knight); but now were they
all three clad in black, and they
were unarmed, save for their
swords girt to their sides, with-
out which no man amongst us
may come to the mote, be he ba-
ron or earl or duke, or the very

lord king himself.

The king looked upon us
and them, & laughed and
said: fair ladies, ye have
got me by the nose, so needs
must my body follow. Do ye
three knights, whom I know for
valiant men and true, take each
his love by the hand, and let
the wedding be to-morrow.
Who then were joyful but us?
But even at the word the king
spake arose great turmoil in
the mote, for they smote the
feud and contention awake, &
men thronged forward against
each other, and swords were
drawn & brandished. But the
king arose in his place & spake
long & deftly, & waxed exceed-
ing wroth, while none heeded
him nor hearkened. And there
stood our three men, who laid
no hand to hit but abode heart-
whole by seeming amid the tur-
mult. And lovely they were to
look on. At last the wise men
and old barons went between,
& by fair words appeased the
trouble, & the mote grew hush-
ed. Then spake the king What
is this, my thanes? I had deem-
ed that my foemen were far a-
way, and that ye that here are
were all friends unto me & un-
to each other. But now must
we try another rede. There-
with he turned unto our men
and said: Ye champions, are ye
so much in love with Love that

ye will fight for him? They
all yeasaid that, and then the
king said: Then do I declare
that these three will hold the
field against all comers from
matins till highnoon, and that
he who vanquisheth any one of
them shall have his lady & wed
her if he will, & if he will, shall
ransom her. And this field shall
be foughten after two months'
frist in these fair meadows,
when I return from the outer-
most marches of the south,
whereto I am now wending. But
when the battle is done, then
let all men bow to the judg-
ment of God, whether he be
well content or not, & this on
peril of life and limb. And now
let there be deep peace between
all men meanwhile; and if any
break the peace, be he high or
low, rich or unrich, churl or
earl, I swear it by the souls of
my fathers that he shall lose
nought save his life therefor.

In these words was there
a rumour of yeasay, & all
men were content, save
we three poor maidens, into
whose hearts had now enter-
ed fear of loss and death.

Our kindreds on both
sides were glad & proud,
and they were not so bit-
ter against us as they had been;
they put hand to pouch, & let
rear for us a fair pavilion of
painted timber, all hung with

silk and pictured clothe & Bar-
racen tapestry, by the very lake
side, and gay boats gaily be-
dight lay off the said pavilion
for our pleasure; and when all
was done, it yet lacked a half
month of the day of battle, &
thither were we brought in tri-
umph by the kindreds on a fair
day of May, & there was not a
sword or a spear amongst the
whole company, and peaceful
and merry was all by seeming.
But we were not suffered to
meet our lovers all this while,
from the time when the mote
was.

On a day came a mes-
senger on the spur, and
did us to wit that the king
would be with us on the mor-
row, and that the day after, the
fateful field should be fought-
en. Then, though the coming
of this day had been so long-
ed for by us, yet now it was at
hand it cast us into all unrest
and trouble, so that we scarce
knew whether to go, or stand,
or sit, or what to do with our
bodies. Our folk, and all other
men withal, were so busy mak-
ing ready for the morrow of to-
morrow, that they left us alone
to wear through the day as we
might.

It was afternoon, &
the day hot & hazy, and
we stood on the very lip
of the land weaned with hope

and fear, and striving to keep good countenance to each other, and there came a boat unto the shore gaily painted and gilded, & bedight with silken cloths and cushions; and the steerer thereof was a woman, not young, by seeming of fifty winters; red-haired she was, thin-lipped and narrow-eyed, flat-breasted & strait-hipped; an ungoodly woman, though her skin was white & smooth as for her age. Hast thou ever seen such an one, guest?

Said Birdalone, smiling: forsooth that have I: for such an one is my mistress to behold. **W**ELL, said Htra, this dame stretched out her hands to us, and said: Will not the pretty ladies, the dear ladies, who have nought on hand this afternoon, come into my boat and look on the face of the water, so calm and fair as it is, & let their lovely hands go over the gunwale and play with the ripple, and so beguile this heavy time for a two hours; & then give a little gift of a piece or two of silver to a poor carline, who loveth all fair ladies and bright warriors, and who needeth a little livelihood?

When the woman seemed nought lovely unto us, & to me forsooth she seemed hateful; but we looked

on each other, and we found that we were utterly weary of going up & down on the meadow, & lying about in the pavilion, and it seemed as if this would give us a little rest; withal we saw not that the woman could do us any hurt, whereas we were three, and strong enough as women go; nor were we mariners so evil but that we might sail or steer a boat at a pinch. So we stepped into the boat straightway, and the woman sat aft and paddled deftly with the steering oar, and we glided away from the land.

SOON we were come so far that we could but just see our pavilion through the haze, which had somewhat thickened, and we said to the woman that she should go about and make for the shore, and that then we would go to and fro a while along by our stead. She nodded yeasay, and began by seeming to dight the craft for return. But therewith the haze was grown suddenly into a low cloud, which came down upon us from the south-west in the arms of a cold breeze, that grew stronger every minute, so no wonder it was though the steerer might not keep head to wind; & then who was afraid and ashamed save ourselves?

WHEN the woman said, & there seemed to be a mock in her voice: Ill luck, pretty ladies! Now is there nought for it but to drive, if we would not drown. But be-like this duskiness will clear presently, and then at least we shall know whither we be going; & we may either turn back, or seek some other shelter, for I know the lake well, I know, I know.

WERE too terror-stricken to speak, for we felt that still the wind grew stronger, & the lake began to rise into waves, and the craft to wallow; but well-nigh therewith was the dusk and the mist gone; the sky was bright blue overhead, and the westering sun shone cloudless; but on no land it shone, or on aught save the blue waters & the white wave-crests.

WHEN wept Aurea, and this Viridis here, but as to me, I grew wroth & cried out to the steerer: Accursed carline! thou hast betrayed us; never now may we get back to our pavilion till the fight is foughten, and our lovers will deem that we have forsaken them, & we are shamed for ever. Well, well, said the carline, what remedy save patience for the winds & waves? And she laughed mocking-

ly. Quoth I: There is this remedy that we three arise & lay hands on thee, & cast thee outboard, save thou straightway turn the boat's head and back to the main. forsooth I doubt not but that as thou hast raised this foul wind against us, thou canst raise a fair wind for us.

LISTEN to the lovely lady! quoth the carline, how she deemeth me to be none other than the great God himself, to hold the winds in the hollow of my hand, and still the waves with a word! What! am I wrought somewhat after his image, kind ladies? And she grinned horribly therewith. Then she said again: As to thy remedy, sweetling, meseemeth it nought, for how shall ye sail this stormy water when your captain is gone, & ye but holiday sailors belike?

WHEN she spake, a great wave came up from the windward, and brake over us, and half filled the craft, and lifted her bows up towering, and then down we went into the trough; & I sat cowed and quaking, and spake never another word.

NOW began the sun to sink, and the wind abated, and the sea went down, but the boat sped on

as swift as ever over the landless waters.

WHEN the sun was down, and dusk was at hand, & the carline spake, and drew a bright gleaming sax from under her raiment: Damis, I warn you that now it were best that ye obey me in all things; for though ye be three and I one, yet whereas I have here an edge/friend, I may take the life of any one of you, or of all three, as simply as I could cut a lamb's throat. Moreover it will serve you better in the house whereto ye are wending, that I make a good tale of you rather than a bad. For the mistress of that house is of all might; & I must say it of her, though she is my very sister, yet she is not so sweet/tempered & kind of heart as I am, but somewhat rough and unyielding of mood, so that it is best to please her. Wherefore, markens. I rede you be sage.

OUR unhappy hearts were now so sunken in wanhope, that we had no word wherewith to answer her, and she spake: Now obey ye my bidding and eat & drink, that ye may come hale & sound to your journey's end, for I would not give starvelings to my dear sister. Therewith she brought forth victual for us, & that nought evil, of flesh

and bread, and cheese & cakes, and good wine withal; and we were hunger/weary as well as sorrow/weary; and hunger did at that moment overcome sorrow, so we ate and drank, and, would we, would we not, something of heart came back to us thereby. Then again spake the carline: Now my will is that ye sleep; and ye have cushions & cloths enough to dight you a fair bed; and this bidding is easy for you to obey, forsooth, so weary were we with sorrow, & our hunger was now quenched, that we laid us down and slept at once, and forgot our troubles.

WHEN we awoke it was after the first dawn, and we were come a-land even where thou didst this morning, guest. And thou mayst deem it wondrous, but so it was, that close to where our boat took land lay the ferry which brought thee hither.

WHEN the carline bade us get ashore, and we did so, and found the land wondrous fair, little as that so liced us then. But she said unto us: Hearken I now are ye come home, and long shall ye dwell here, for never shall ye depart hence save by the will of my sister & me, wherefore, once more, I rede you be good, for it will be better for you. Go

forth now unto yonder house.
 & on the way ye shall meet the
 Queen of this land, and ye have
 nought to do but to say to her
 that ye are the Gift: and then
 shall she see to your matter.

HEREWITH she gat
 into her own craft, the
 Sending Boat, & there
 in did the deed and spake the
 words ye wot of, and was gone
 north away: & when we turned
 to seek for our boat where
 in we had come hither, it was
 gone.

WE STOOD miserably
 for a while on the lip
 of the Land, and then
 I said that we might as well go
 meet our fate as die there of
 grief and hunger. So we went,
 and came into those fair gar-
 dens, and as we went slowly up
 toward the house came on us a
 woman clad in red scarlet and
 grandly dight. A big woman
 she was, and like to her that
 beguiled us, but far younger
 and fairer of favour, foolish &
 proud of visage. She stared on
 us, and seemed half afraid of
 us at first, but asked us what
 we were, and I answered that
 we were the Gift. The Gift?
 said she, what meaneth that?
 Will ye obey me in all things?
 If ye gainsay it, ye will perish,
 unless ye can eat grass; for
 on this isle everything cometh
 from my hand.

fj

WHAT might we do?
 We all knelt down be-
 fore her, & swore to

do her will. Then she said,
 after she had stared on us a-
 while Now I know ye are they
 of whom my sister spake, that
 she would fetch me a gift of a
 leash of damels for my ser-
 vice. Now I take the Gift and
 thank her good heart. But if ye
 would do my will, then....
 But she broke off here & star-
 ed at us a long while, and then
 she said: Now I know; she bade
 me treat you well, and hold my
 hand from you, or evil would
 come of it, belike at last my
 bane. So go ye home to the
 house, and I will give you meat
 and drink, and show you my
 stores & the Wonder-coffer,
 & ye shall serve me in honour.

VEN so did we; and we
 ate and drank & rested,
 and nought we lacked,
 save leave to depart home to our
 lovers, & some mistress better
 than this stupid & proud lump
 of flesh. But the next morning
 when we came before the Lady,
 she knew nought of what we
 were; and again we had to tell
 her that we were the Gift, and
 again she glared at us baleful-
 ly, and again she called to mind
 her sister and her rede concern-
 ing us. And this went on for
 many days, till at last she got
 to know what we were, and she

63

Part II. Of
 the Won-
 drous Isles

Part II. Of
the Mon-
drous Isles

followed her sister's rede in that she never mishandled us, though we could see that it irked her to forbear, nor did she speak to us more roughly than her fool's wont was; & we had in our hands all that was need- ed for our sustenance, & lived easily enough.

WHEN our coming hither be- tid three years ago, and a month thereafter comes thy witch hither in her ferry, & she greeted us when we met, and asked us, grinning, had she not been kind to win us such good days? Yea, and over kind, said she, ye would deem me, knew ye what would have betid you save for my good word. Forsooth we deemed it no kind deed to steal us from our lov- ers; but we kept good tongues in our heads, for thralls must needs kiss the rod.

SHE went away in two days, but came again many times thereafter, till we won the secret of the Sending Boat, and her spell therewith; but we knew not that was banned against us. Wherefore on a day in the grey of the morning, when we had been on this isle somewhat less than a year, we went down

to it and stepped in, and red- dened stem and stern and said the spell-words. But straight- way arose an hideous braying and clatter, and thunder came therewith, & trembling of the earth, & the waters of the lake arose in huge waves; nor might we move from our seats in the boat till the two witches came running down to us, and haled us out ashore, and had us up into the house, and into this very prison-chamber, wherein we are now sitting so merry. And here we bore what was laid upon us, whereof, dear guest, we shall tell thee nought. But thus came of it, that never there- after durst we try the adven- ture of the Sending Boat, but have lived on in lazy sorrow & shameful ease, till thou, dear guest & sister, wert sent hith- er by heaven for our helping.

WHAT became of the king's court, and the ha- zelled field of our cham- pions, we wot not, or whether they be yet alive we cannot tell thee; but if they be alive, it is to them that we would have thee do our errand, and thereof will we tell thee closely tomorrow. And so, sweetling, an end of my tale.

CHAP. VII. The three from
the forest of the
witches.

BIRDALONE thanked Atra much for her tale, & strange it was to her to hear of such new things and the deeds of folk; but the dealing of the witches with those three was familiar to her and was of her world.

NOW they talked merrily till there came a footstep to the door & one without knocked. Viridis paled thereat, and a pang of fear smote Birdalone, & she swiftly got from out the chair and sat down on a stool; but when Atra opened, it was but Aurea come from her service to bid Atra take her place. So she went, & again was there pleasant converse betwixt Aurea & the other twain; & certain matters did Aurea tell Birdalone which had been left untold by Atra. And chiefly, when Birdalone asked if any other folk had come into the isle while they dwelt there, she said yea; once had come a knight with a lady, his love, fleeing from war and mishap, and these had the witch overcome by wizardry, and destroyed them miserably; & that again another had strayed thither, & him also the

witch undid, because he would not do her will & lie in her bed. Withal had come drifting there a young damsel, a castaway of the winds and waves, her the witch kept as a thrall, & after a while took to mishandling her so sorely, that at last, what for shame and what for weariness of life, she cast herself into the water & was drowned. None of these folk might the damsel help so as to do them any good, though they tried it, and went nigh to suffer therefor themselves.

UN TILL the day wore, and in a while Atra came back, & Viridis must serve. At last the dusk and the dark was come. Then said Atra: Now must we twain begone to wait upon our lady, as the wont is: & that is now for our good hap, for if we be with her all three, and especially, to say sooth, if I be with her, we may well keep her from visiting thee here, since belike she shall yet dimly remember that thou art in her prison. Therefore thou must forgive it if I shackle thy wrists again. And now if thou wilt follow my rede, thou shalt try to sleep some deal, & it were well if thou might'st sleep till we come for thee in the grey dawn.

THEREWITH they left her there, & she nestled in the corner once

Part I. The
three
drifted

more, and there did verily fall asleep and slept till the key in the lock and the opening door awakened her, and Hira came stealing soft-footed into the prison. Eager she was & panting, and she kneeled before Birdstone and unlocked her leg-shackles, and then stood up and did the like by the iron on her wrists. Then she said Look up, dear friend, to the prison windows and behold the dawn beginning to break on the day of thy deliverance, & ours maybe. But come now at once and again wilt thou pardon me, that we clothe thee not here for thy journey? for from our own bodies must we clothe thee & if by any hap our lady were to see any one of us more or less unclad, it might draw her on to see what was to ward, & we might yet be found out for our undoing.

THE REVEL she took her hand, & led her forth of the prison, and locked the door behind her, and then downstairs they went, & out a door by a little wicket at the stair-end. The dawn drew on apace now, and Birdstone saw at once the other twain lurking in the wall-nook hard by. No word was spoken between them, and with noiseless feet they went forth into the orchard, where the blackbirds and

thrushes were beginning their first morning song, & ere they came out on to the meadow the full choir of them was singing.

THEY were all clear of the orchard trees the three dainty kept hand alone between them closely so that her white body should not be seen if the lady were awake and looking forth. Thus they brought her to where a few thorn-bushes made a cover for them close to the water's edge, some twenty yards from the bending boat. There they stood together, & Hira said Now, dear guest, and dearest messenger, it is our matter to clothe thee from our very bodies, and do thou, Viridia begin.

THEY came forward blushing as her wont was, and took off her green gown and laid it on the grass, then she set her hand to her smock, and did it off, & stood naked, knee set to knee, and swaying like the willow branch and then was seen all the dainty fashion of her body, and how lovely of hue & sweet

of flesh she was.

WHEN she said: Dear sister Birdalone, here is my smock, which I lend thee, but as to my love, I give it thee therewith; therefore grudge it not, though thou give me back the linen, for happy will be the day to me when I have it again; for now none may do it on me save the Green Knight, my own love. Therewith she gave her the smock, & kissed her, and Birdalone did it on, and felt the valianter & mightier when she had a garment upon her.

WHEN Aurea did off her golden gown, & stood in smock alone, so that her naked arms shone more precious than the golden sleeves that had covered them. And she spake: Birdalone, dearmessenger, take now my golden gown, and send it back to me when thou hast found the man unto whom it is due; and think meanwhile that, when thou wearest it, thou wearest my love, & that when thou pullest it off, thou art clad with my love instead of it.

SO Birdalone did on the gown, and became to look on as the daintiest of the queens of the earth; and she turned her head about to look on her gold-clad flanks, and wondered.

WHEREAFTER Atrahknit up her skirts into her girdle, and then did off her shoon, so that her slim feet shone like pearls on the green grass; & she said: Birdalone, sweet friend I wilt thou be my messenger to bear these shoon to my Black Squire, and meanwhile put my love for thee under thy feet, to speed thee and to bear thee up? Wherefore be good to me.

BIRDALONE then shod herself, and though pity it were to hide her feet from the eyes of Earth, yet felt she the stouter-hearted thereby, and her cheeks flushed and her eyes brightened.

WHEREAFTER Aurea gave her withal a golden collar for the neck, and Viridia a girdle of silver well-wrought, and Atrah a gold finger-ring set with a sapphire stone; and all these she did on her; but yet she knew that they were tokens to be delivered to the three lovers according as was due.


WHEN she spake Atrah: Lo, sister, we pray thee to bear these lendings on thy body in such wise that when thou comest to the mainland they may be seen by knights seeking adventures, and that thou mayst answer to any who may challenge thee thereof, &

say that thou bearest this raiment and these jewels from Hurea and Viridis and Htra to Baudoin the Golden Knight, and to Hugh the Green Knight, & to Arthur the Black Squire. And if thou deem that thou hast found these, then shall they tell thee a token, such as we shall tell thee, that they be truly these & none other; and thereafter, when thou art made sure, they shall take of thee the raiment, the gems, & the Sending Boat, & come hither if they may. And God look to thee! But as for the token to be told aforesaid, we have determined that each of us shall tell thee privily what question thou shalt ask for her, & what answer thou must look for.

WHEN she had done speaking, each came up to Birdalone and spake something into her ear amidst blushes enough forsooth. And what they said will be seen hereafter. Then again said Htra: Now by this errand shall we be well paid for the care we have had of thee. It may be, forsooth, that thou shalt not find our speech-friends, for they may be dead, or they may deem us untrue, and may have forsaken us & their land, and in any such case thou art free of our errand; but whatsoever may betide us, God speed thee!

WHEN Viridis drew forth a basket from under a bush, and said: We know not how long thy voyage may be, but some little provision for the way we may at least give thee: now wilt thou bear this aboard thyself, for we dare not touch thy craft, nay, nor come nigh it, no one of us. And she set down the basket and cast her arms about her, & kissed her and wept over her; and the other twain, they also kissed her lovingly. Birdalone wept even as Viridis, and said: May ye do well, who have been so kind to me; but now am I both so glad and so sorry, that the voice of me will not make due words for me. O farewell!

WHEN WITH she took up her basket, & turned and went speedily to the Sending Boat; & they beheld her how she stepped aboard and bared her arm, and drew blood from it with the pin of her girdle-buckle, and therewith reddened stem and stern; and a pang of fear smote into their hearts lest their lady had banned it for Birdalone as for them. But Birdalone sat down on the thwart, and turned her face south, and spake: The red raven/wine now hast thou drunk, stern & bow; Awake then, awake! And the southward way take:



The way of the Blunder
forth over the flood,
for the will of the Sender
is blent with the blood.

A cloud barred the gate-
way of the sun as she
spoke; no wave rose up
on the bosom of the lake; no
clatter nor tumult was there,
but the Sending Boat stirred,
and then shot out swiftly into
the wide water; and the sun a-
rose as they looked, & his path
of light flashed on Birdalone's
golden gown for a moment, &
then it grew grey again, and
presently she was gone from
before their eyes.

So they turned up into
the orchard: & now was
Viridis of good cheer,
and Hurea no less; but Atra
lagged behind, & as she went,
some passion took her, she
knew not wherefore; her bo-
som swelled, her shoulders
heaved therewith, & she wept.
*Chapter LX. Now Birdalone
came to the Isle of the Young
and the Old.*

A L went well
with the lake
when she had
left the Isle of
Increase (in-
sought, much
as it had on her first voyage,
save that now she was both
clad & victualled, & her heart,
if yet it harboured fear, was ab-

so full of new & strange hope
and oft, even as she sat there
amidst the waste of waters,
she wondered what new long-
ing this was which wrought so
sweet a pain in her, that it made
her cheeks burn, and her eyes
dim, & her hands and her limbs
restless. And then would she
set her mind to her friends &
their errand, and would hope
and pray for them: but again
would she fall to picture to her-
self what manner of men they
were who were so sore longed
for by those three beautiful
women; and she deemed that
since they were thus desired,
they must be fairer even than
her friends of the isle; and a-
gain the nameless longing o-
vertook her, and held her till it
weaned her into sleep.

WHEN she awoke again
the boat had stayed,
and she was come a-
land; but the dawn was not yet
come, & the night was moon-
less, yet was there light en-
ough to see, from the water &
the stars, that the bows of the
boat were lying safe on a little
sandy beach. So she stepped
out & looked around, & deem-
ed she could see great trees be-
fore her, & imagined also dark
masses of she knew not what.
So she walked warily up the
sandy strand till she came on to
soft grass, & smelled the scent

*Part 1 of
the Mon-
ster on Lake*



Part II. Of
the Mon-
drous Tales

of the clover as her foot/soles crushed it. There she sat down, and presently lay along & went to sleep.

AFTER a while she awoke, and felt happy and well at ease, and had no will to move: the sun was shining brightly, but had not been up long: the song of birds was all about her, but amidst it she deemed she heard some speech of man, though it were not like to what she had heard in her life before. So she raised herself on her elbow, & looked up and saw a new thing, and sat up now, and beheld and wondered.

FURTHER stood before her, gazing wide-eyed on her, two little children, some three winters of age, a man and a woman as it seemed. The man/child with light & fine white/golden hair, falling straight down & square over his brow, & blue/grey eyes which were both kind & merry, and shyly seeking as it were, plump and rosy he was, sturdy and stout/limbed. No less fair was the woman; her hair golden/brown, as soft it is with children who grow up dark-haired, and curling in fair little rings all over her head; her eyes were big and dark grey; she was thinner than the lad, and somewhat taller.

THESSE two babes had between them a milk-white she/goat, & had been playing with her, and now she turned her head to this & that one of them, bleating, as if to crave more of the game; but they had no eyes for her, but stood staring with might and main on the new/come & her shining golden gown.

BIRDALONE laughed with joy when she saw the little ones, & a dim memory of the days of Catterhay passed before her: she stretched out a hand to them, and spake softly and caressingly, & the little lad came forward smiling, & took her hand, and made as if he would help her up for courtesy's sake. She laughed on him and arose and when she stood up, tall & golden, he seemed somewhat afraid of so big a creature, but stood his ground valiantly. Then she stooped down to him & kissed him and he nuzzled her not but seemed rather glad when it was over; but when Birdalone went to the little maid, & kissed her, the child clung to her as if she were her mother, & babbled to her.

WHEN comes the lad to her, & takes her hand, & would draw her away, and speaks to her in his prattle, and she understood him

to mean that she should come with him to see the father. So she went, wondering what should next betide. & the little maiden went on the other side of her, holding by a fold of her skirt. Forsooth the goat followed bleating, not well pleased to be forgotten.

NOW had Birdalone time to look about her, though the two babes fell to prattling with her in their way, and she thought it sweet to look down on the two little faces that looked up to her so pleased and merry.

SHE was in a grassy plain, somewhat over rough & broken to be called a meadow, & not enough bestimbered to be called a wood; it rose up a little & slowly as they left the water, but scarce so much as one might call it a hill. Straight before her on the way that they were going went up into the air great masses of grey stone builded by man's hand, but looking, even from this way off, ragged and ruinous. It may well be thought that Birdalone wondered what things might lie betwixt the trees and the towers.

NOW as they went they came on other goats, who seemed tame, and these joined them to their fellow, and suffered the young-

lings to play with them. Moreover there were rabbits great plenty scuttling in and out of the brakes & thorough ground upon the way, and the younglings beheld them, and the little lad said, after his fashion: Why do the rabbits run away from us, and the goats follow us? Now, sooth to say, Birdalone scarce knew why, & had no word ready for the child; but she said at last: Mayhappen they will come to me; so it was once when I dwelt away from here. Shall I go fetch thee one?

The little ones ye said that, though somewhat shyly and doubtfully. Then said Birdalone: Doye, sweetlings, abide me here, and go not away.

They nodded their heads therat, & Birdalone kilted her skirts & went her ways to some broken bushed ground, where was a many rabbits playing about; but she went not out of eyer shot of the babes. Before she was well nigh to the little beasts, she fell to talking to them in a low sweet voice, as had been her wont when she was little: & when they heard it, those who had not scuttled away at first glance of her, fell to creeping little short creeps one to the other, as their manner is when they be alone together & merry; & they suffered her to come quite amongst

Part II. Of
the Children
dressed in

them, and crept about her feet while she stood, still talking unto them. Then she stooped down and took up one in her arms and caressed it, and then laid him down and took up another, and so with three or four of them; and she fell to pushing them, & rolling them over with her foot; then she turned a little away from them toward the children, and then a little more, & the rabbits fell to following her, and she turned & took up one in her arms, and went straight on toward the children, but turning and talking to the rabbits now and again.

AS to the babes, she saw the goats, of whom were now a dozen, or thereabouts, standing together in a kind of ring, & the little ones going from one to the other playing with them happily. But presently the lad turned and saw her coming with her tail of little beasts, and he cried out a great Oh! and ran toward her straightway, and the maiden after him; and he held out his arms to have the rabbit she bore, & she gave it to him smiling, and said: Lo now! here be pretty playmates; but look to it that ye be soft and kind with them, for they are but feeble people. So the younglings fell to sporting with their new

friends, and for a little forgot both goats and golden lady; but the goats drew nigh, and stood about them bleating, nor durst they run at the rabbits to butt them, because of Birdalone and the little ones.

HERE then stood the slim maiden, tall and gleaming above her little flock; & her heart was full of mirth and rest, & the fear was all forgotten. But as she looked up toward the grey walls, lo, new tidings to hand! for she saw an old man with a long white beard slowly coming toward them: she started not, but abode his coming quietly, and as he drew nigh she could see of him that he was big & stark, & old as he was, not yet bowed with his many years. He stood looking on this Queen and her court silently a while, and then he spake: Such a sight I looked not to see on this Isle of the Young & the Old. She said: But meseemeth it is full meet that these younglings should sport with the creatures. He smiled and said: Such a voice I looked not to hear on the Isle of the Young and the Old.

BIRDALONE became somewhat troubled, & said: Am I welcome here? for if I be not, I will pray thy leave to depart. He said: Thou art as welcome as the very

spring, my child; and if thou have a mind to abide here, who shall naysay thee? for surely thou art young; nay, in regard to me thou art scarce older than babes. All blessings be with thee. But though thou art true & kind, as is clear to be seen by thy playing with these children & the landward beasts in peace and love, yet it may be so that thou hast brought hither somewhat less than peace. And he smiled upon her strangely.

SHE looked somewhat scared at his last words, and said: But how so? If I might I would bear nought but peace & happiness to any place. The old carle laughed outright now, and said: How so, dear child? because ladies so sweet and lovesome as thou be sent by love, and love rendeth apart that which was joined together.

SHE wondered at his word, and was bewildered by it, but she held her peace; & he said: Now we may talk here of later on; but the matter to hand now is the quenching of thine hunger; for I will not ask thee whereby thou camest, since by water thou needs must have come. Wherefore now I bid thee to our house, & these little ones shall go with us, & the three of these horned folk whom we are wont to tether a-

midst the wrack and ruin of what once was fair; the rest have our leave to depart, and these nibblers also; for we have a potherb garden by our house, & are fain to keep the increase of the same for ourselves. Birdalone laughed, and shook her skirts at the coney, and they all scuttled away after the manner of their kind. Thereat the little lad looked downcast and well-nigh tearful, but the maid stamped her foot, and roared well-favouredly.

BIRDALONE DID her best to solace her, and plucked a bough from a hawthorn bush far above the little ones' reach whereto was yet some belated blossom, & gave it to her and stilled her. But the old man picked out his milch-goats from the flock (whereof was the white), and drove them before him, while the two babes went on still beside Birdalone, the little carle holding her hand and playing with the fingers thereof, the maiden sometimes hanging on to her gown, sometimes going loose and sporting about beside her.

SO came they to where the ground became smoother, and there was a fair piece of greensward in a nook made by those great walls and towers, which sheltered it from

Part II. Of
the Ill-fated
dreadful

the north. The said walls seem-
ed to be the remnant of what
had once been a great house &
castle and up aloft. where was
now no stair to come at them,
were chimneys & hearths here
and there, and windows with
fair seats in them, and arched
doors and carved pillars, and
many things beautiful; but
now was all ruined and broken,
and the house was roofless &
floorless: withal it was over-
grown with ash-trees & quick-
en-beam, & other berry-trees
and key-trees, which had many
years ago seeded in the rent
walls, & now grew there great
& flourishing. But in the inner-
most nook of this mighty rem-
nant, & using for its lowly walls
two sides of the ancient ash-
lar ones, stood a cot builded
not over trimly of small wood,
and now much overgrown with
rubes & woodbine. In front of
it was a piece of garden ground,
wherein waxed potherbs, and
a little deal of wheat; & therein
was a goodly row of bee-shops:
and all without it was the plea-
sant greenward aforesaid,
wherein stood three great an-
cient oaks, and divers thorns,
which also were ancient after
their kind.

THE elder led his guest
into the cot, which had
but simple plenishing
of stools and benches, and a

table unartful, and then went
to tether his goats in the ruin-
ed hall of the house, and the
children must needs with him,
though Birdalone had been
glad of one of them at least;
but there was no nay, but that
they must go see their dear
white goat in her stall. Howso-
ever all three came back again
presently, the old carle with a
courteous word in his mouth,
and he took Birdalone's hand,
and kissed it and bade her wel-
come to his house, as though
he had been a great lord at
home in his own castle. There-
with must the little ones also
kiss her hand & be courteous;
& Birdalone suffered it, laugh-
ing, and then caught them up
in her arms, and clipped and
kissed them well-favouredly;
wherewith belike they were not
over-well pleased, though the
boy endured it kindly. There-
after the elder set forth his ban-
quet, which was simple enough:
upland cheer of cream & honey,
and rough bread; but sweet it
was to Birdalone to eat it with
good welcome, & the courtesy
of the old man.

WHEN THEY were
done, they went out-
a-doors, & Birdalone
& the old man laid them down
under an oak-tree, and the
children sported about anigh
them. Then spake Birdalone:

Old man, thou hast been kind unto me; but now wouldest thou tell me about thee, what thou art, and what are these walls about us here? Said he: I doubt if I may do so, this day at least. But belike thou shalt abide with us, and then some day the word may come into my mouth. She held her peace, & into her mind it came that it would be sweet to dwell there, and watch those fair children waxing, and the lad growing up & loving her; yea, even she fell to telling up the years which would make him a man, and tried to see herself, how she would look, when the years were worn thereto. Then she reddened at the untold thought, & looked down and was silent. But the elder looked on her anxiously, and said: It will be no such hard life for thee, for I have still some work in me, & thou mayst do something in spite of thy slender and delicate fashion. She laughed merrily & said: Forsooth, good sire, I might do somewhat more than something: for I am deft in all such work as here ye need; so fear not but I should earn my livelihood and that with joy. Merry days shall we have then, said he.

SHE therewith her eye caught the gleam of her golden sleeve, and she thought of Aurtia, & her heart smote her for her errand; then she laid her hand on her girdle & called to mind little Viridia, and the glitter of the ring on her finger brought the image of Atra before her; then she rose up & said: Thou art kind, father, but I may not; I have an errand; this day must I depart from thee. He said: Thou hast broken my heart, if I were not so old, I would weep. And he hung adown his head.

SHE stood before him abashed, as if she had done him a wrong. At last he looked up and said: Must it be to-day? Wilt thou not abide with us night long, and go thy ways in the early morning?

OLD SHE scarce knew how to gainsay him, so wretched as the old carle looked; so it came to this, that she yea said the abiding till to-morrow. Then suddenly he became gay and merry, & he kissed her hand, and fell to much speaking, telling tales of little import concerning his earlier days. But when she asked him again of how he came there, & what meant the great ruined house, then he became

droop leden

foolish & wandering, & might scarce answer her; whereas otherwise he was a well-spoken old carle of many words, and those of the grandest.

WHEN changed his mood again, and he fell to bewailing her departure, & how that henceforth he should have none to speak to him with understanding. Then she smiled on him and said: But yonder babes will grow up; month by month they will be better fellows unto thee. Fair child, he said, thou dost not know. My days to come are but few, so that I should see but little of their waxing in any case. But furthermore, wax they will not; such as they be now, such shall they be till I at least see the last of them and the earth.

BIRDALONE wondered at this word, and the place seemed changed to her, yea, was grown somewhat dreary, but she said to the carle: And thou, dost thou change in any wise, since these change not? He laughed somewhat grimly, & said: The old that be here change from old to dead; how could I change to better? Yea, the first thing I had to do here was to bury an old man. Quoth she: And were there any children here then? Yea, said he; these same, or I can see no difference in them.

Said Birdalone: And how long ago is that? And how camest thou hither? His face became foolish, and he gibbered rather than spake: No, I wot not; no, no, no, not a whit, a whit. But presently after was he himself again, & telling her a tale of a great lady of the earl's folk, a baron's dame, and how dear he was unto her. He lay yet on the grass, and she stood before him, & presently he put forth a hand to her gown, hem & drew her to him thereby, and fell to caressing her feet & Birdalone was ashamed thereat, and a little angry. He was nought abashed, but sat up and said: Well, since thou must needs depart to-morrow, be we merry to-day. And I pray thee talk much with me, fair child, for sweet and sweet is thy voice to hearken. Then he arose and said: Now will I fetch thee somewhat to kee the joy of us both. And he turned therewith and went into the house.

BIRDALONE stood there, and was now perplexed & downhearted: for now the look of the elder scarce liked her, and the children began to seem to her as images, or at the best not more to her than the rabbits or the goats, and she rued her word that she would abide there the

night through. for she said to herself: I fear some trap or guile: is the witch behind this also? for the old man is yet stark, & though he be foolish at whiles, yet may wizardry have learned him some guile.


WHEN that cometh out the carle again, bearing a little keg and a mazer roughly wrought; & he came to Birdalone, & sat down, & bade her sit by him, and said to her: Maybe I shall hear more of thy sweet voice when thy sweet lips have been in the cup.

Therewith he poured forth into the mazer, and handed it to Birdalone & lo' it was clear and good mead. She sipped thereof daintily, and, to say sooth, was well pleased therewith, and it stirred the heart in her. But then she gave back the cup to the elder, and would no more of it. As for him, he drank what was left in the cup, looking over the rim thereof meanwhile; & then filled himself another, and another, and yet more. But whereas it might have been looked for that his tongue should be loosened by the good mead into foolishness and gibbering, he became rather few-spoken, and more courteous & stately even than he had been at the first. But in the end, forsooth, he was forgetting Birdalone, what she

was, and he fell a talking always with much pomp & state, as if to barons and earls, and great ladies; till suddenly his head fell back, he turned over on his face, & all wit was gone from him.

WHEN first, then, Birdalone was afraid that he was dead, or nigh unto death, and she knelt down and raised his head, & fetched water and cast it over his face. But when she saw that he was breathing not so ill, & that the colour was little changed in his lips and cheeks, she knew that it was but the might of the mead that had overcome him. Wherefore she laid him so that he was easy, and then stood up and looked about her, & saw the children playing together a little way off, and nought else nigh her, save the birds in the brake, or flying on their errands eagerly from place to place. Then, as it were, without her will being told them, her limbs & her feet turned her about to the shore where lay the Sinking Boat, & she went speedily but quietly thitherward, her heart beating quick, for fear lest something should yet stay her, and her eyes glancing from brake to bush, as if she looked to see some enemy, old or new, come out thence.

Part II. C.
The 4th. n.
From 1. 300.



Now her will was clear enough to her feet, and they brought her down to the water's edge and the long strand, past which the wide water lay windless and gleaming in the hot afternoon. Then lightly she stepped aboard, & awoke the Sending Boat with blood-offering, and it obeyed her, and sped swiftly on the way to the southward.

THE SENDING BOAT

BIRDALONE
awoke the next morning while the boat was yet speeding over the water, & the sun was up, but she was hard on the land, which was low and green, like a meadow exceeding fair on the bottom of the water, and many goodly trees were sprinkled about the green land. But from amidst the trees, no great way from the water's edge, rose a great house, white and fair, as if it were new builded, and all glorious with pinnacles, & tabernacles set with jewels.

PRESENTLY THE boat's bows ran into the reed & rush at the brim of the water, & Birdalone stepped ashore without more ado, and the scent of the meadow sweet amongst which she

landed brought back unto her the image of Green Eyot that while ago.

NOW now when she was ashore the dread took hold of her again, & her knees trembled under her, so that she might scarce stand, so fearful was she of walking into some trap; especially when she beheld that goodly house, lest therein awaited her some proud & cruel lady, and no kind damocles to deliver her.

SHE looked about her, & saw in all the fair meadow neither man nor woman, nor draught-beast nor milch-beast, nought but the little creatures of the brake and the neat grass which were but as the blossoms thereof, and the birds running in the herb-age or singing amidst the tree-boughs.

THEN she thought that she must needs go forward, or belike her errand would not speed; that the Sending Boat might not obey her, unless she saw through the adventure to the end; so she went on toward the house quaking.

SOON was she at the porch of the white palace, & had seen no man nor heard any voice of men; much she marvelled, despite her dread, at the beauty of the said house,



and the newness thereof; for it was as one flower arisen out of the earth, and every part of it made the beauty of the other parts more excellent; & so new it was, that it would have seemed as if the masons thereof had but struck their scaffold yesterday, save that under the very feet of the walls the sweet garden flowers grew all uncrushed.

NOW comes Birdalone through the porch unto the screens of the great hall and she stopped a little to recover her breath, that she might be the quieter and calmer amongst the great folk & mighty whom she looked to find therein. So she gathered heart; but one thing daunted her, to wit, that she heard no sound come from that great & goodly hall, so that she doubted if it were perchance left desert by them who had been its lords.

SHE raised her hand to the door of the screen, and it opened easily before her, and she entered, and there indeed she saw new tidings. For the boards end long & overthwart were set, and thereat were sitting a many folk, & their hands were reached out to knife and to dish, and to platter & cup; but such a hush there was within, that the song of the garden birds without

sounded to her as loud as they were the voices of the children of Adam.

NOW she saw that all that company, from the great folk on the dais down to those who stood about the hall to do the service, were women, one & all; not one carle might she see from where she stood: lovely were they many of them, & none less than comely; their cheeks were bright, and their eyes gleamed, and their hair flowed down fair of fashion. And she stood, and durst not move a long while, but expected when someone would speak a word, & all should turn their heads toward the new-comer. But none moved nor spake. And the fear increased in her amidst that hush, and weighed so heavy on her heart, that at last she might endure it no longer, but fell swooning to the floor.

WHEN she came to herself, and the swoon-dreams had left her, she saw by the changing of the sun through the hall-windows that she had lain there long, more nearly two hours than one; & at first she covered her face with her hands as she crouched there, that she might not see the sight of the silent hall. For yet was it as hushed as before. Then slowly she a-

rose, and the sound of her raiment and her stirring feet was loud in her ears. But when she was upright on her feet, she hardened her heart, and went forth into the hall, and no less was her wonder than erst, for when she came close to those ladies as they sat at table, and her raiment brushed the raiment of the serving-women as she passed by, then saw she how no breath came from any of these, and that they neither spake nor moved, because they were dead.

First then, she thought to flee away at once, but again she had mind of her errand, and so went up the hall, & so forth on to the dais; and there again, close by the high table, she saw new tidings. For there was set a bier, covered with gold and pall, & on it was laid a tall man, a king belted & crowned & beside the said bier, by the head of the king knelt a queen of exceeding goodly body, clad all in raiment of pearl and bawdekin, and her hands were clasped together, and her mouth was drawn, and her brow knit with the anguish of her grief. But athwart the king's breast lay a naked sword all bloody, and this Birdalene noted, that whereas the lady was of skin & hue as if she were alive, the king was yellow as

wax, & his cheeks were shrunk, & his eyes had been closed by the wakers of the dead.

LONG Birdalene looked and wondered; & now if her fear were less, her sorrow was more for all that folk sitting there dead in their ancient state and pomp. And was not the thought clean out of her head, that yet they might awake and challenge her, and that she might be made one of that silent company. Althath she felt her head beginning to fail her, & she feared that she might swoon again & never waken more, but lie for ever beside that image of the dead king.

So then she refrained her both of fear and sorrow, & walked speedily down the hall, looking neither to the right nor left: and she came forth into the pleasance, but stayed there nought, so nigh it seemed to that hushed company. Thence came she forth into the open meadow, and sweet and dear seemed its hot sunshine and noisy birds and rustling leaves. Nevertheless, so great was the tumult of her spirits, that once more she grew faint, and felt that she might scarce go further. So she dragged herself into the shade of a thorn-tree, & let her body sink unto the ground, & lay there long unwitting.

Chapter XL. And now she comes to the Isle of the Kings.

WHEN Birdalone came to herself it was drawing toward the glooming, & she rose up hastily, & went down to the Sending Boat, for she would not for aught abide the night in that fearful isle, lest the flock of the hall should come alive and walk in the dusk & the dark. She stepped aboard lightly, and yielded her blood to the pride of that ferry, and it awoke and bore her forth, & she went through the night till she fell asleep.

WHEN SHE awoke it was broad day & the sun just arising, and lo! before her, some half mile off, an isle rugged and rocky, and going up steep from the shore; & then, held as it were by the fangs of the rocks and pikes of the higher land, was a castle, white, high, and hugely builded, though, because of the rock-land belike, it spread not much abroad. Like to the lovely house of yesterday, it seemed new-builded; and, little as Birdalone knew of such matters, her heart told her that this new house was fashioned for battle.

SHE was downcast when she saw the isle so rugged and forbidding but when the boat came aland in a stony bight, whence the ground went up somewhat steeply toward the heights, she went ashore straightway, and toiled up toward the white battlement. Presently she found herself in a strait and rugged path between two walls of rock, so that she lost sight of the castle a while, till she came out on to a level place which looked down from aloft on to the blue water, but all over against her close at hand were the great towers and walls. She was worn by the rough road, and over helpless she felt her, and all too little to deal with that huge morsel of the world; & her valiancy gave way, & her trust in her errand. She sat down on a stone and wept abundantly.

AFTER a while she was amended, & she looked up & saw the huge hold, and said: Yea, but if it were less by the half than it is, it would still be big enough to cow me. Yet she stood not up. Then she put forth a foot of her, and said aloud: Sorely hath this rough road tried Htra's shoon and their goodly window-work; if they are to be known I must be speedy on my journey or go barefoot.

AS she spoke she stood up, and the sound of her own voice frightened her, though nought noiseless was the place; for the wind was there, and beat to and fro the castle and the rock, & ran baffled into every corner of that market-place of nothing forin that garth was neither knight nor squire nor sergeant; no spear-head glittered from the wall, no gleam of helm showed from the war/swales; no porter was at the gate; the draw-bridge over the deep ghyll was down the portcullis was up & the great door cast wide open.

BIRDALONE steeled her heart and went forward swiftly, and over the bridge, & entered the base court, and came without more ado to the door of the great hall, & opened it easily as with the door of yesterday looking to find another show like unto that one; & even so it fell out.

IN BOOTH the hall was nought light and lovely, and gay with gold and bright colours, as that other, but beset with huge round pillars that bore aloft a wide vault of stone, & of stone were the tables, and the hallings that hung on the wall were terrible pictures of battle & death, and the fall of cities, and towers a-tumbling & houses a-flaming.

NONE the less there also were the shapes of folk that moved not nor spake, though not so thronged was that hall as the other one; and it seemed as if men were sitting there at a council rather than a feast. Close by Birdalone's right hand as she entered were standing in a row along the screen big men, at arms all weaponed, and their faces hidden by their sallets; & down below the dais on either side of the high table was again a throng of all-armed men, and at the high table itself, and looking down the hall, sat three crowned kings, each with his drawn sword lying across his knees, & three long-boary wise men stood before them at the nether side of the board.

BIRDALONE looked on it all, striving with her fear; but yet more there was, for she deemed that needs must she go through the hall up to the dais, lest the bending float deny its obedience. Up toward the dais she went then, passing by weaponed men who sat as if abiding the council's end at the endlong tables. And now, though no shape of man there spake or breathed, yet sound lacked not; for within the hall went the wind as without, & beat about from wall to wall, and drove

clang and clash from the weapons hung up, and wailed the wrens, & fared moaning in the nooks, & hummed in the vault above.

GONE she up to the date then, and stood beside one of the wise men, & looked on the kings, & saw the mightiness which had been in them, & quaked before them. Then she turned from them and looked down to the floor, & lo! there, just below the date, lay a woman on a golden bier; exceeding fair had she been, with long yellow hair streaming down from her head; but now waxen white she was, with ashen lips and sunken cheeks. Clad was she in raiment of purple and pall, but the bosom of her was bared on one side, & therein was the road whereby the steel had fared which had been her bane.

NOW when Birdalone had gazed thereon a while, she deemed that if she tarried there long amidst those fierce men by the dead woman, she should lose her wit full soon, so sore the fear held back, beset her now. Wherefore she turned and went hastily down the hall, and out-a-doors, & over the bridge, and ran fleet-foot down the rocky way whereby she had come, till she could run no further, and

lay down under a great stone breathless & fardone: yet her heart upheld her and suffered her not to swoon, belike because she had given her limbs such hard work to do.

HERE SHE lay awake & troubled for an hour or more, and then she fell asleep, and slept till the day was worn toward sunset, & nought meddled with her. She arose and went to her ship somewhat downhearted, wondering how many such terrors should befall her; nay, whether the Sending Boat would so lead her that henceforth she should happen on no children of Adam but such as were dead images of the living. Had all the world died since she left the Isle of the Young and the

NOWSOEVER, she had thought to do save to board her ferry, & content its greedy soul with her blood, & drive it with the spell-words. And thereafter, when it was speeding on, and the twilight dusking apace, she looked aback, & seemed to see the far-off woodland in the northern ort, and the oak-clad ridge, where she had met her wood-mother; and then it was as if Nabundia were saying to her: Meet again we shall. And there with straightway became life

sweeter unto her.

DEEPENED THEN the dusk, and became night, and she floated on through it, and was asleep alone on the bosom of the water.

*Chapter XII Of Birdalones
how she came into the land of
Nowhither.*

LONG before sunrise, in the very morn/dusk, she awoke and found that her ferry had taken land again.

Little might she see what the said land was like; so she sat patiently and abode the day in the boat; but when day was come, little more was to see than erst. For flat was the isle, & scarce raised above the wash of the leeward ripple on a fair day; nor was it either timbered or bushed or grassed, and, so far as Birdalone might see, no one foot of it differed in aught from another. Nonetheless she deemed that she was bound to go ashore and seek out the adventure, or spoil her errand else.

QUIT OF the boat she stepped then, & found the earth all paved of a middling gravel, and nought at all growing there, not even the smallest of herbs; and she stooped down and searched

the gravel, and found neither worm nor beetle therein, nay nor any one of the sharp and slimy creatures which are wont in such ground.

LITTLE further she went, and yet a little further, & no change there was in the land; and yet she went on & found nothing; & she wended her ways southward by the sun, and the day was windless.

AT last she had gone a long way, & had no sight of water south of the isle, nor had she seen any hill, nay, not so much as an antheap, whence she might look further around; and it seemed to her that she might go on for ever, and reach the heart of Nowhither at last. Wherefore she thought she would turn back and depart this ugly isle, and that no other adventure abided her therein. And by now it was high noon; & she turned about and took a few steps on the backward road.

BUT even therewith it seemed as if the sun, which heretofore had been shining brightly in the heavens, went out as a burnt-down candle, & all was become dull grey overhead, as all under foot was a dull dun. But Birdalone deemed she could follow a straight course back again,

ſhe walked on ſturdily. Hour after hour ſhe went and ſtayed not, but ſaw before her no glimpse of the northern ſhore, and no change in the aspect of the ground about her.

IT had ſo happened that a little before ſhe had turned to go back, ſhe had eaten her dinner of a piece of bread & a morſel of cheeſe, and now as ſhe ſtooped and peered on the ground, looking for ſome ſign of the way, as her foot-prints going ſouth, and had her eyes low anigh the earth, ſhe ſaw ſomething white at her feet in the gathering duſk (for the day was wearing), and ſhe put her hand to it and lifted it, and found it a crumb of bread, & knew that it muſt have come from her dinner of ſeven hours ago, where-as till that time her bread had lain unbroken in her ſcrip. fear and anguiſh ſmote her therewith, for ſhe ſaw that in that dull land, every piece whereof was like every other piece, ſhe muſt have gone about in a ring, and come back again to where ſhe firſt turned to make for the northern ſhore.

NET would ſhe not caſt aſide all hope, but clad herſelf in her valiancy. forſooth ſhe knew it availed nought to try to move on in the twilight; ſo ſhe laid her-

ſelf down on that waſte, and made up her mind to ſleep if ſhe might, and abide the new day there, and then to ſtrive with the way once more, for be- like, ſhe thought, it may befall to-morrow, and the ſun ſhining. And as ſhe was very weary with tramping the waſte all day, ſhe fell aſleep at once, and ſlept the ſhort night through.

WHEN ſhe awoke, and ſaw what the new day was, her heart fell indeed, for now was ſhe encompassed and ſhut in with a thick dark miſt (though it ſeemed to be broad day), ſo that had there been aught to ſee ſhe would not have ſeen it her own length away from her. So there ſhe ſtood, hanging her head, and ſtriving to think; but the maſter thought of death drawing nigh ſcattered all other thoughts, or made them dim and feeble.

LONG ſhe ſtood there; but ſuddenly ſomething came into her mind. She ſet her hand to the fair-broidered pouch which hung from Viridis' loin-girdle, and drew out thence flint and ſteel & tinder, which matters, forſooth, had ſerved her before in the boat to make fire withal. Then ſhe ſet her hand to her head, and drew forth the tress of hair which Nabun-

Part I. c. 7
The
Lioness

dia had given her, and which was coiled up in the crown of her own abundant locks which decked her so gloriously: she drew two hairs from the said tress, and held them between her lips while she did up the tress in its place again, & then, pale & trembling, fell to striking a light, & when she had the tinder burning she cried out O wood-mother, wood-mother! Now then may we meet again as thou didst promise me, if I die here in this empty waste? O wood-mother, if thou might'st but come hither for my deliverance!

WHEN she burned the hairs one after another, and stood waiting, but nought befell a great while, & her heart sickened, and there she stood like a stone.

BUT in a while, lo! there came as it were a shadow amidst the mist, or rather lying thereon, faint and colourless, and it was of the shape of the wood-mother, with girt up gown and bow in hand. Birdalone cried aloud with joy, and hastened toward the semblance, but came to it no nigher, and still she went, & the semblance still escaped her, and she followed on & on; and this lasted long & faster & faster must she follow lest it vanish, and she gathered her

skirt into her girdle, and fell to running feet-foot after the fleeing shadow, which she loved dearly even amidst the jaws of death; & all her fleetness of foot had Birdalone to put forth in following up the chase; but even to die in the pain would she not miss that dear shadow.

BUT suddenly, as she ran, the mist was all gone from before her, the sun shone hot & cloudless; there was no shadow or shape of Habundia there, nought but the blue lake and the ugly lip of that hideous desert, with the Sinking Boat lying a half score yards from her feet; and behind her stood up, as it were a wall, the mist from out of which she had come.

FOR SOON Birdalone was too breathless to cry out her joy, but her heart went nigh to breaking therewith, & lovely indeed to her was the rippled water and the blue sky; & she knew that her wood-mother had sped a sending to her help, & she fell a weeping where she stood, for love of her wise mother, and for longing to behold her: she stretched out her arms to the north quarter, and said blessings on her in a voice faint for weariness. Then she laid her down on the desert, and rested her with sleep, despite the

hot sun, and when she awoke, some three hours thereafter, all was as before, save that the sky had now some light flying clouds, and still was the wall of mist behind her. Wherefore she deemed she had yet time, & the blue rippling water wooed her much, besweated limbs; so she did off her raiment & took

the water, and became happy and unwearied therein. Then she landed and stood in the sun to dry her, and so, strengthened with that refreshing, clad her, and went aboard and did the due rites, & sped over the waters, and had soon lost sight of that ugly blotch on the fair face of the Great Water.

Here ends the Second Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the Wondrous Isles, and begins the Third Part of the said tale, which is called Of the Castle of the Quest. ✠ ✠

THE WATER OF THE WINDROCK ISLE & KEENE
THE THIRD PART OF THE CASTLE OF THE QUEEN
OF THE ISLE OF THE WINDROCK



WITH THE day to Hirdalone
have for her thoughts, and she
slept not a good while of the
night. When she awoke in the
morning there was no land be-
fore her, and she began to fear
somewhat that so it might be
many days, and that she might
have to fare the water landless.
As perchance till she starved for
hunger, for now was there but
little victual left of that which
the kind Viridis had given her,
so she wore the day somewhat
uneasily, and by then night fell
had eaten but little, yet was
that little the last crumb and
gobbet of her store. Where-
fore it is no wonder though
she were dismayed when she
awoke early on the morrow, &
beheld nought before her save

the landless water.

AT ABOUT noon she
deemed she saw a little
cloud in the offing that
moved not as the other clouds,
and she watched it closely at
first, and it changed not any
the more, and she grew weary
of watching it and strove to
sleep, turning her head to the
after part of her ferry; & thus
betwixt sleeping and waking
she wore away three hours;
then she stood up and looked
ahead, and to the white cloud
had taken shape, & was a white
castle far away (for the day
was exceeding clear), sitting
as it seemed, on the very face
of the water. The boat sped on
swiftly thitherward, so that
it was not right long ere Hird-
alone beheld the green shore
on either side of the said cas-
tle, and at last three hours be-
fore sunset, she was drawing
nigh thereto, and beheld it all
clearly what it was.

IT was brand-new, and
was fair enough build-
ed part of stone & lime
part of framed work, but was
but middling big. As she drew
nigher yet, she saw that there
were folk on the walls of it, &
they seemed to see her, for a
horn was winded from the bat-
tlement, & folk were running
together to some whither.

or mine errand will come to nought after all.

HEREWITH came another man down the stair, and stood by the old knight and plucked his sleeve, & fell to talk with him softly. This man was by his habit a religious, and was a younger man than the others, it might be of five and thirty winters, and he was fair of favour. While they spake together Birdalone sat her down again, & was well-nigh spent.

Last the old man spake: Damael, he said, we deem we may suffer thee to enter the castle since thy need is so great, and have a meal's meat at our hands, & yet save our oath, if thou depart thence by the landward gate before sunset. Will this serve thee? Fair sir, said Birdalone, it will save my life and mine errand; I may say no more words for my faintness, else would I thank thee.

SHE stood up on her feet, and the old man at arms reached out his hand to her, and she took it & came her ways up the stair, but found herself but feeble. But the priest (forsooth he was chaplain of the castle) helped her on the other side. But when she stood on the level stone by the water-gate, she turned

to the old man and said: One thing I will ask of thee, is this place one of the Wondrous Isles? The elder shook his head. We know not the Wondrous Isles, said he; this castle is builded on the mainland. Her face flushed for joy at the word, and she said: One thing I will crave of thee, to wit, that thou wilt leave my barge lying here untouched till thy masters come back, & wilt give command that none meddle therewith.

HE would have answered, but the priest brake in, and said. This will he do, lady, & he is the castellan, and moreover he will swear to obey thee herein. And therewith he drew forth a cross with God nailed thereon, & the castellan swore on it with a good will.

WHEN the priest drew Birdalone on, & between them they brought her into the great hall, and set her down in a chair and propped her with cushions. And when she was thus at rest, she began to weep somewhat, & the castellan and the priest stood by and comforted her; for them seemed, despite her grief, that she had brought the sun into their house.



NEXT WERE vntual
brought unto her of
broth and venison, and
good wine and cates & straw-
berries; & she was not so fam-
ished but she might eat and
drink with a good will. But
when she was done, & had rest-
ed a little, the castellan stood
up and said. Lady, the sun is
gone off the western window
now, & I must save mine oath;
but ere thou depart, I were fain
to hear the voice giving me par-
don for my evil cheer and the
thrusting of thee forth. And
therewith he put one knee to
the ground, & took her hand
and kissed it. But Hirdalone
was grown merry again, & she
laughed & said: What pardon
thou canst have of me, kind
knicht, thou hast; but now me
thinks thou makest overmuch
of me, because I am the only
woman who hath come into thy
castle. I am but a simple maid-
en, though mine errand be not
little.

FOR SOOTH she won-
dered that the stark &
gruff old man was so
changed to her in little space.
For nought she knew as yet
how the sight of her cast a hot
gleed of love into the hearts of
them who beheld her.

WHEN Hirdalone arose but
the castellan knelt at her
feet, & kissed her hand

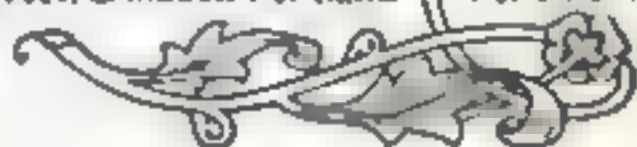
again, & again, and yet again.
Then he said. Thou art gra-
cious indeed. But methinks
the father here will lead thee
out a gates; for he may show
thee a lair, wherein thou shalt
be safe enough to night; and
to morrow may bring new tid-
ings.

WHEN the priest made obe-
dience to her and led her
down the hall, & the cas-
tellan's eyes were following
them till the screen hid them.
The priest left her in the hall-
porch a while, & went into the
buttery, and came back with a
basket of meat and drink, and
they went forth at the great
gate together, & there was the
last of the sun before them.

*And Hirdalone was so
wondered that the stark &
gruff old man was so
changed to her in little space.*

IN a fair smooth
road went they a-
midst of a good-
ly meadow land,
wherein were lit-
tle copses here
& there. When they were fairly
out of the gate, the priest
reached for Hirdalone a hand,
and she let him take it and lead
her along thereby, thinking no
evil, but he might scarce speak
for a while, so great was the
glow in his heart at the touch of
her bare flesh. But Hirdalone

*And Hirdalone was so
wondered that the stark &
gruff old man was so
changed to her in little space.*



spake and said: Thou art kind, father, to lead me on my way thus.

BIRDALONE answered in a husky voice with his eyes cast down, and forsooth set on the feet of her: It is not far that I am leading thee; there is a broken cot by the copse at the turn of the road yonder, where thou mayst abide to-night; it is better lodging than none, evil as it is for such an one as thou. **B**IRDALONE laughed; Worse have I had, said she, than would be the copse without the cot. And she thought withal of the prison in the Isle of Increase Unthought.

HER voice seemed so cheery & friendly to the priest, that he shook off somewhat the moodiness of his desire, and looked up & said: I shall tell thee, lady, that I suppose thou hast more errand with my lords than to crave lodging of them despite the custom of the castle. Nay, I have an inkling of what thine errand may be, whereof more anon; but now shall I tell thee what is best for thee to do so as to have speech of them the soonest. They have gone forth with some of our lads to gather venison, or it may be beeves and muttons for our victualing, and somewhat of battle may they have had on the way,

for ill neighbours have we. But if they come back unfoughten they will be wending this road, and must needs pass by thy copse-side; & if thou be sleeping the noise of them will full surely awaken thee. Then all thou hast to do is to come forth and stand in the way before them, that they may see thee; and when once they have seen thee, how may they pass thee by unspoken with?

THANK thee heartily for thy rede, said BIRDALONE; but I would ask thee two things: first, what is the name of the castle behind us? & second, why have ye the custom of shutting the door upon women? **S**aid the priest: The castle is called in this country-side, the White Ward by the Water; but within there we call it the Castle of the Quest; and thus is it called because my lords are seeking their loves whom they have lost; and they have sworn an oath that no woman shall enter therein till their own loves have trodden its floors.

THOSE the heart of BIRDALONE at that word, and she deemed indeed that she was come thither whereas her she-friends would have had her. The priest beheld her and saw how her beauty was eked by that gladness, & he scarce

knew how to contain himself, & might speak no word awhile; then he said: Harken further concerning thy matter; if my lords be tarried, and come not by matin-song, then I doubt not but the castellan will send folk to see to thee. He looked down therewith and said: I will come to thee myself, and will bring thee men-at-arms, if need be. But sometime to-morrow morning my lords will come, ere mischief hath betid, which God forbid. And he crossed himself; then he looked up & full in her face, and said: But keep thine heart up; for whatsoever may betide, thou shalt not be left uncared for.

Said Birdalone: I see of thee that thou art become my good friend, and it rejoiceth my heart; I shall be well at ease to-night in thy cot, and to-morrow morn I shall be valiant to do thy bidding.

His sweetness of her speech so overcame him, that he but looked confusedly on her, as if he scarce heard her; & they went on together without more words, till he said: Here are we at the cot, and I will show thee thy chamber. So he led her to a little thatched bower, built with walls of wattle-work daubed with clay, which stood without the remnant of the cot: it was

clean and dry, for the roof was weather-tight; but there was nought in it at all save a heap of bracken in a corner.

THERE stood the priest, still holding Birdalone's hand, and spake not, but looked about, yet always covertly on Birdalone; but in a while he let go her hand, and seemed to wake up, and said: This is a sorry place enough, were it even for a gangrel body. Even so am I, quoth she laughing. & thou mayest look to it, that herein I shall rest full happily. Then he gave her a horn, drawing it from out of the basket of victual, which he now set down on the ground; and he said: If thou shouldst deem thee hard bestead, then wind this horn, and we shall know its voice up there & come to help thee. Now I give thee good-night.

She thanked him sweetly, and he went slowly out of the bower, but was scarce gone ere he came back again, & said: One thing I may perchance tell thee without drawing thine anger on my head; to wit, that I it was who said to the castellan that he should take thee in. Wilt thou say aught to this? He said: I will thank thee again & again; for it was the saving of my life and mine errand. And clearer

is it now than ever that thou
art a good friend unto me.

She looked on him and
caressed him with kind
eyes, she saw that his
brow was knit, and his face
troubled, and she said to him:
What ails thee? art thou wroth
with me in any wise? O no,
said he; how should I be wroth
with thee! But there is a thing
I would ask of thee. Yea, and
what? said she. He said: Nay,
I may not, I may not. It shall be
for to-morrow, or another day.
He spake it looking down,
and in a broken voice; and she
wondered somewhat at him,
but not much, deeming that
he was troubled by something
which had nought to do with
her, & which he might refrain
from thinking of, even before
a stranger.

She presently he caught
her hand and kissed it,
& bade her good-night
again. & then went hastily out
of the tower. and when he was
well without, he muttered, but
not so as she might hear him:
Durst I have asked her, she
would have suffered me to kiss
her cheek. Alas! fool that I was!

BIRDALONE turned
then to her bracken bed,
and found it sweet and
clean; and she was at rest and
peace in her mind, albeit her
body was exceeding weary. She

felt happy in the little lonely
cot, and her heart had gone out
to the sweet meadow-land, &
she loved it after all the trouble
of the water; and here seemed
that even now, in the dusk a-
growing into dark, it loved and
caressed her. So she laid her
down, nor unclad herself at all,
lest she should have to arise
on a sudden, and show those
tokens of the three damsels on
her body.

ALITTLE while she lay
there happily, heark-
ening the voices of the
nightingales in the brake, and
then she fell into a dreamless
sleep, unbroken till the short
night passed into day.

**Chapter III. How Birda-
lone sought her for meeting the
Champions of the Quest.**

IT was the birds
beginning their
first song once
more that awak-
ened Birdalone
before the sun
was up; but she had no will to
stir a while, whereas she felt so
happy and restful, & that all
the more when she remember-
ed where she was, and told her-
self that her errand was now
like to be accomplished; & she
thought of her friends whom
she had left on the Isle of In-
crease Unthought, and blessed
them for their kindness, and

the love of them was sweet to her heart, and amidst such thoughts she fell asleep again.

AFTER she awoke there after there was a flood of sunshine lying on the meadows, and she sprang up in haste lest she had overslept herself, but when she was come out of the bower, she soon saw that the sunbeams lay low on the land, and that it was yet the first hour of the sun; so she turned about, and went through the copse to the other side, and lo! a little clear stream running before her. So she spake to herself softly & said: fie on it! I was weary with the boat and my hunger last night, and I went to bed unwashen; and this morn I am weary for the foulness of my unwashen body. Unseemly it were to me to show myself sluttish before these lords; let me find time for a bath at least.

HEREWITH she went swiftly down to the water, undoing her girdle & laces by the way. She came to the stream & found it running between blue-flowering mouse-ear & rushes, into a pool which deepened from a sandy shallow so anon her borrowed raiment was lying on the grassy lip of the water, and she was swimming and disporting her

h1

in the pool, with her hair loose & wavering over her white back like some tress of the water-weed. Therein she durst not tarry long, but came hurrying out on to the grass, and clad herself in haste. But she covered not her shoulders with the golden gown, nor laced it over her bosom, so that 'Viridia's' smock might be the plainer to see: which smock was noteworthy, for the breast thereof was brodered with green boughs, whence brake forth little flames of fire, & all so daintyrwrought as if the faery had done it.

WITHAL she gathered up the gown in- to her girdle, and let the skirt hem clear her ankles, so that Atra's shoon might be seen at once; & they were daintily dight with window-work and broidery of gold & green stones, & blue. And forsooth it was little likely that any man should stand before her a minute ere his eyes would seek to her feet and ankles, so clean & kindly as they were fashioned.

HEREWITH she set her hands to her head & trussed up her hair, & bound it closely to her head, so that it might hide no whit of her borrowed attire.

Part I. 21
The Countess
The Count

WHERE SHE stood, with
Hure a collar lying on
her dear neck & Viridie's
girdle about her shapen loins,
and Hira a ring on her love-
some finger. And she heark-
ened a while & heard no sound
of coming men & there came in
to her heart a gentle fear which
grieved her not. Over the water
before her hung an eglantine
bush, with its many roses ei-
ther budding or but just out.
Birdalone stole thither soft-
ly, and said, smiling: Nay, if I
have nothing that is mine on
my body, I will take this of the
maiden's bath & make it mine.
And therewith she plucked
a spray of the bush & turned it
into a garland for her head; &
then when she had stood shy-
ly a while in that same place,
she turned and went swiftly to
her place beside her night har-
bour, & stood there hearkening
with that sweet fear growing
upon her, her colour coming &
going, & her heart beating fast.
WHEN SHE thought of
that kind priest who had
led her to the bower last
night came into her mind, and
she wondered why he had been
so troubled. And she thought,
would those others be so kind
to her, or would they deem her
an impudent wench or a fool-
ish, or pass her by?

WHORBOOTH if any had
passed her by it had been
not that he should miss
seeing her beauty, but that he
should fear it, and deem her
some goddess of the Gentiles
of old time come before him
for his enenaring.

Chapter IV. And now she
meets the Champions.

WHEN SHE stood
hearkening, she
deemed she heard
something that
was not so loud
as the song of the
blackbird in the brake, but fur-
ther off and longer voiced; and
again she hearkened heedful-
ly, and the sound came again,
& she deemed now that it was
the voice of an horn. But the
third time of her hearing it she
knew that it was nought less;
and at last it grew nigher, and
there was mingled with it the
sound of men shouting & the
lowing of neat.

WHEN SHE stepped
down to the very edge
of the way, & now she
saw the riding-reck go up into
the clear air, and she said: Now
are they coming without fail,
and I must pluck up a heart;
for surety these dear friends of
my friends shall neither harm
a poor maiden nor scorn her.

SOON came the leading
beasts from out of the
dust cloud, & behind
them was the glitter of spear-
heads: & then presently was
a herd of neat shambling and
jostling along the road, and af-
ter them a score or so of spear-
men in jack and sallet, who, for-
sooth, turned to look on Bird-
alone as they passed by, and
spake here and there a word or
two, laughing and pointing to
her, but stayed not; & all went
on straight to the castle.

THEREAFTER was a
void, & then came rid-
ing leisurely another
score of weaponed men, where-
of some in white armour; and
amongst them were five sumpr
ter horses laden with carcasses
of venison. And all these also
went by & stayed not, though
the most of them gazed on
Birdalone hard enough.

LAST OF ALL came
three knights riding,
one with a gold surcoat
over his armour, and thereon a
cleft heart of red; the second
with a green surcoat, & on the
same a chief of silver with green
boughs thereon, their ends a-
flaming; but the third bore a
black surcoat besprinkled with
silver tears. And all these
three rode bare-headed, save
that the Black Knight bore an
oak-wreath on the head.

b 2

NOW did Birdalone take
to her valancy, and she
stepped out into the
road till she was but a ten pa-
ces from those men, who rein-
ed up when they beheld her; &
she said in a clear voice: Abide,
warriors! for if ye be what I
deem you, I have an errand un-
to you.

SCARCE were the words
out of her mouth, ere all
three had leapt off their
horses. & the Golden Knight
came up to her, & laid his hand
upon her side & spake eagerly
and said: Where is she, whence
thou gattest this gown of
good web? And thou, said
she, art thou Baudoin the Gol-
den Knight? But he set his
hand to the collar on her neck,
and touched her skin withal,
and said: This, was she alive
when thou camest by it? She
said: If thou be Baudoin
the Golden Knight, I have an
errand to thee. I am he, said
the knight; O tell me, tell me,
is she dead? Said Birdalone:
Aurea was alive when last I
saw her, & mine errand is from
her to thee, if thou be verily her
lover. Now with this word I
pray thee to be content awhile,
said she, smiling kindly upon
him, for needs must I do mine
errand in such wise as I was
bidden. And thou seeest also
that thy friends would have a

word of me.

WORBOOTH, they were thrusting in on her, and the Green Knight gat a hold of her left wrist in his left hand, and his right was on her shoulder, and his bright face close to her bosom whereon lay Viridia's smock; & thereat she shrank aback somewhat, but said: Sir, it is sooth that the smock is for thee when thou hast answered me a question or two. Meanwhile I pray thee forbear a little; for, as I trow, all is well, & thou shalt see my dear friend Viridia again.

He withdrew him a little, flushed & shamefaced. He was a young man exceeding beauteous, clear-skinned and grey-eyed, with curly golden hair, and he bore his armour as though it were silken cloth. Birdalone looked upon him kindly though shyly, and was glad to the heart's root that Viridia had so lovely a man to her darling. As for the Golden Knight, as Birdalone might see now, he stood a little aloof. He was a very goodly man of some five and thirty winters tall he was, broad-shouldered and thin-flanked, black-haired, with somewhat heavy eyebrows, & fierce hawk-eyes, a man terrible of aspect, when one first beheld him.

WHEN the Black Squire had hearkened Birdalone's word concerning Viridia, he threw himself down on the ground before her, and fell to kissing her feet; or, if you will, Atra's shoon which covered them. When she drew back a little, he rose on one knee and looked up at her with an eager face. & she said: To thee also I have an errand from Atra, thy speech-friend, if thou be Arthur the Black Squire. He spake not, but still gazed on her till she reddened. She knew not whether to deem him less goodly than the other twain. He also was a young man of not over five and twenty years, slim and lithe, with much brown hair; his face tanned so dark that his eyes gleamed light from amidst it, his chin was round and cloven, his mouth & nose excellently fashioned; little hair he had upon his face, his cheeks were somewhat more hollow than round. Birdalone noted of his bare hands, which were as brown as his face, that they were very trim and shapely.

When he rose to his feet, and the three stood together and gazed on her, as how might they do otherwise? Birdalone hung her head, and knew not what next to do or say. But she thought within

herself, would these three men have been as kind to her as her three friends of the Isle, had she happened on them in like case as she was that time? And she settled with herself that they would have been no less kind.

NOW spake the Golden Knight, and said, Will the kind maiden do her errand to us here and now? for we be eager & worn with trouble. Birdalene looked adown and was somewhat confused. fair sire, said she, I will do your will herein.

BUT the Black Squire looked on her and saw that she was troubled, and he said: Your pardon, fair fellows, but is it not so that we have an house somewhat anigh, not ill purveyed of many things? By your leave I would entreat this kind and dear lady to honour us so much as to enter the Castle of the Quest with us, & abide there so long as she will; & therein may she tell us all her errand at her leisure; and already we may see and know, that it may not be aught save a joyous one.

WHEN spake the Golden Knight, and said: I will ask the lady to pardon me, and will now join my prayer to thine, brother, that she come home with us. Lady, he

said, wilt thou not pardon me, that in the eager desire to hear tidings of my speech/friend I forgot all else?

AND therewithal he knelt before her, and took her hand and kissed it; and for all his fierce eyes & his warrior's mien, she deemed him kind & friendly. Then needs must the Green Knight kneel and kiss also, though he had no pardon to crave, but a fair sweet lad she thought him, & again her heart swelled with joy to think that her friend Yndis had so dear a speech-friend to long for her.

THEN came the turn of the Black Squire, and by then were the two others turned away a little toward their horses; & he knelt down on both knees before Birdalene and took her right arm above the wrist, & looked at the hand and kissed it as if it were a relic, but stood not up: & she stood bending over him, and a new sweetness entered into her, the like of which she had never felt. But as for the Black Squire, it seemed that one hand would not suffice him, and he took her left hand and fell to kissing it, and then both the hands together all over the backs of them, and then the palms thereof, and he buried his face in the two

Part III. Of
the Castle of
the Quest

palms, and held them to his cheeks: & the dear hands suffered it all, and consented to the embracing of his cheeks. But Birdaloue deemed that this was the kindest & sweetest of the three kind warriors, and sorry she was when he let go her hands and stood up.

HIS face was flushed, but his speech calm, as he spake so that the other knights might hear him: Now will we straight to the castle, lady, & we will ask thee which of us three thou wilt honour by riding his horse there: shall it be Baudoin's bright bay, or Hugh's dapple-grey, or my red roan? And therewith he took her by the hand and led her toward the horses. But she laughed, & turning a little, pointed to the castle, and said: Nay, sweet lords, but I will fare afoot, such a little way as it is, and I all unwont to the saddle.

SPAKE the Green Knight: If that be so, lady, then shall we three walk afoot with thee. Nay nay, she said, I have nought to carry but myself, but ye have your byrnie and your other armour, which were heavy for you to drag on afoot, even a little way. Moreover, I were fain to see you moun your horses, and ride and run about the meadow with tossing manes & flashing swords,

while I trudge quietly toward the gate: for such things, and so beauteous, are all new unto me, as ye shall learn presently when I tell you my story. Do so much to pleasure me, kind knights.

THE tall Baudoin nodded to her, smiling kindly, as much as to say that he thought well of her desire. But the Green Knight ran to his horse with a glad shout, & anon was in the saddle with his bright sword in his fist; then he spurred, and went a gallop hither & thither over the mead, making his horse turn short & bound, & playing many tricks of the tilt-yard, and crying, *A Hugh, A Hugh*, for the Green Gown! The Golden Knight was slower & more staid, but in manywise he showed his wardeftness, riding after Hugh as if he would fall on him, & staying his way just as it became perilous, & he cried, *Baudoin, Baudoin, for Gold sleeves!*

And all this seemed to Birdaloue both terrible and lovely. **W**HAT FOR THE Black Squire, he was slow to let loose Birdaloue's hand; but thereafter he was speedy to vault into his saddle, & he made courses over the meadow, but ever came back to Birdaloue as she went her ways, riding round and round

the III of
the III of
the III of

her, & tossing his sword into the air the while and catching it as it fell. And no less lowly did this seem to Birdalone, & she smiled on him and waved her hand to him.

GOLING slowly in this wise, she came at last to the castle gate; & now had all those three out-gone her & stood afoot in the wicket to welcome her, & the Golden Knight, who was the oldest of the three, was the speaker of the welcome.

ATTER the threshold of the Castle of the Quest went Birdalone's feet then, & she was grown so happy as she had never deemed she should be all her life long.

*Chapter V. Birdalone had first
told him from the Champ of
the III of the III of*

WHEN they brought Birdalone into a very fair chamber, where was presently every thing she might need, gave a tiring woman, which, forsooth, was no luckury to her, since never had she had any to help her array her body. So she did what she might to make herself the trimmer; and in a while came two fair gawains of service, who brought her in all honour into the great hall, where were the three lords a-

biding her. There were they served well & plentifully, and fair was the converse between them; and in especial was the talk of Arthur the Black-bquire goodly and wise and cheery, & well-measured; and the Green Knight's speech merry & kind, as of an happy child; and the Golden Knight spake ever free & kindly, though not of many words was he. And who was happy if Birdalone were not?

ATTER when they had eaten and washed their hands, then spake the Golden Knight: Dear maiden, now are we ready to hear the innermost of thine errand, all we together, if thou wilt.

BIRDALONE smiled & reddened withal, as she said: fair lords, I doubt not but ye are even they unto whom I was sent, but they who sent me, & who saved me from death & worse, bade me do mine errand in such a way, that I should speak with each one of you privily, & that for a token each should tell me a thing known but to him and his love, and to me unto whom she hath told it. Now am I all ready to do mine errand thus, and no other wise.

LAUGHED they now, and were merry, & the Green Knight blushed like a maiden; forsooth like to

his very speech, friend Viridia. But the Black Squire said fair fellows, get we all into the pleasance this fair morn, & sit there on the grass, & our sweet lady shall take us one after other into the plashed alley, & have the tokens of us.

YET SO they did and went into the pleasance, which was a goodly little garth south of the castle, grassed, & set thick with roses and lilies and gillyflowers, and other fragrant flowers. There then they sat on the daisied greenward, the three lords together, and Birdalone over against them, and they three watched her beauty and loveliness and wondered thereat.

WHEN she said: Now it comes to the very point of mine errand; wherefore I bid thee, Baudoin the Golden Knight, to come apart with me & answer to my questions, so that I may know surely that I am doing mine errand aright.

WHEREWITH she arose to her feet, and he also, and he led her into the plashed alley, out of earshot of the other twain, who lay up on the grass biding their turn with but little patience.

WHEN those two were in the deep shade of the alley, Birdalone

said: Thou must know, Sir Golden Knight, that the three lovers of you three were good to me in my need, and clad my nakedness from their very bodies, but this raiment they lent me, and gave it not; for they bade me give it up piece by piece each unto the one who had given it to his love, whom I should know by the token that he should tell truly the tale of its giving. Now, fair sir, I know well, for I have been told, what was the tale of thy giving this golden gown to Hurea, & that same tale shalt thou now tell me, and if thou tell it aright, then is the gown thine again, then, without more tarrying.



HOW SAID the knight, thus it was Hurea, my sweetling, abode with an ancient dame, a kinswoman of hers, who was but scantily kind to her; and on a day when we had met privily, and were talking together, my love lamented the niggard ways of her said kinswoman, and told how she had no goodly gown to make her fair when feasts were toward; but I laughed at her, and told her that so clad as she was (and her attire was verily but simple) she was fairer than any other; and then, as

ye may wot, there was kissing & clipping between us; but at last, as from the first I meant it, I promised her I would purvey her such a gown as no lady should go with a better in all the country-side; but I said that in return I must have the gown she went in then, which had so long embraced her body and been strained so close to her body and her sides, & was as it were a part of her. That she promised me with kisses, and I went away as merry as a bird. Straightway thereafter I did do make this very gown, which thou bearest, dear maiden, and on the appointed day she came out to me unto the same place clad as she was before; but the new gown I had with me. Hard by our trying-place was a hazel-copse thick enow, for it was midsummer, & she said she would go there into & shift gowns, & bear me out thence the gift of the old clout (so she called it, laughing merrily). But I said: Nay, I would go into the copse with her to guard her from evil things, beasts or men; & withal to see her do off the old gown, that I might know before I wedded her whatlike stuffing and padding went to make the grace of her flanks & her hips. And again was she merry, and she said: Come, then, thou

Thomas unbelieving, and see the side of me. So we went into that cover together, and she did off her gown before mine eyes, and stood there in her white coat with her arms bare & her shoulders & bosom little covered, and she was as lovely as a woman of the faery. Then I made no prayer unto her for leave, but took my arms about her, and kissed her arms & shoulders & bosom all she would suffer me, for I was mad with love of her naked flesh. Then she did on this golden gown, and departed when she had given me the old clout aforesaid, and I went away with it, scarce feeling the ground beneath my feet; and I set the dear gown in a fair little coffer, and here in this castle I have it now, and many times I take it forth & kiss it and lay my head upon it. Now this is a simple tale, lady, and I am ashamed that I have made it so long for thee. And yet I know not; for thou seemest to me so kind and loving and true, that I am fain that thou shouldst know how sorely I love thy friend & mine.

13 IRDHLONE deemed Baudoin a good man indeed, and the tears came into her eyes as she answered & said: True is thy tale, dear friend, and I have deemed

it rather short than long I see well that thou art Hurea a very lover; and it joys me to think that thou, O terrible champion, art yet so tender and true. Now is the golden gown thine, but I will pray thee to lend it me a little longer. But this jewel shalt thou have from my neck here and now, and thou knowest whence it came, thine Hurea's neck forsooth.

HEREWITH she be- took it him, & he held it in his hand doubtfully a while, and then he said: Dear maiden, I thank thee, but I will take this collar, and lay it in my casket, & be glad thereof; and that the more, as, now I look on thee, I see nought missing from the loveliness of thine own neck.

GO to thy fellows now, said Birdalone, & send me the Green Knight, the goodly lad. So went he, & presently came Hugh thither merry and smiling, and said: Thou hast been long about the first token, sweet mistress: I fear me I shall make no such goodly story as hath Baudoin. And yet, said she, Viridis tale was the longest of all. I doubt thou mayest fail in the token. And she laughed; & he no less, and took her by the shoulders, & kissed her cheek frankly, and in such wise that

she feared him nought, & said: Now that is to pay thee for thy gibe; what wouldst thou have of me? Said Birdalone: I would have thee tell me how it was that Viridis came by the smock with the green boughs aflame, which now I bear upon me.



LARKEN, darling lady, said he: On a day Viridis and I were alone in the meadow, & so happy, that we might find nought to do save to fall into strife together; and I said it to her, that she loved me not as well as I loved her; which, by the way, was no less than a lie, for of all things living she is the most loving, and when we be together she knoweth not how to make enough of me. Well, we fell to wrangling after the manner of lovers, till I, having nothing else to say, bade her remember that since we had first come to love each other, I had given her many things, & she had given me nothing. Lo, then my dear, what an ill-conditioned lad was I. But, little as I meant it, she took it all amiss, and leapt up, and fell to running back home over the meadow; thou mayest think how easily I caught up with her, & how little loth she was to be dragged back by the

Part II
The Countess
The Queen

shoulders. So when we were sitting again under the thorn-bush, we had well-nigh done our wrangle; but she unlaced her gown & drew down a corner thereof, to show me her shoulder, how I had hurt it e'now; and forsooth some little mark there was on the rose-leaf skin; and that made good time for kissing again, as ye may well wot. Then she said unto me: And how may La poor damsel, give thee gifts, & my kindred all greedy about me? Yet would I give thee a gift, such as I may, if I but knew what thou wouldst take. Now my heart was afire with that kissing of her shoulder, and I said that I would have that very same smock from her body, which then she bore, and that thereof I should deem that I had a rich gift indeed. What I said she, and wouldst thou have it here and now? And indeed I think she would have done it off her that minute had I pressed her, but I lacked the boldness thereto; and I said: Nay, but would she bring it unto me the next time we met; and forsooth she brought it folded in a piece of green silk, and dearly have I loved it & kissed it since. But as for thy smock, I had it fairly wrought & embroidered with the flaming green branches, as thou seest it, and

I gave it to her: but not on the day when she gave me the gift, for the new one was long about doing. Now this is all the tale, & how Viridis might che it into a long one, I wot not, But let it be, and tell me, have I won thy smock, or lost it?

BIRDALONE laughed on him and said: Well, at least thou shalt have it as a gift; & thou mayst call it given either by Viridis or me, which thou wilt. But with it goes another gift, which thou mayst have at once since thou must lend me the smock a little longer. And therewith she betook him her girdle, and he kissed it, but said: Nay, fair lady, this befiteth well the loveliness of thy body that thou shouldst wear it; & well it befiteth the truth & love of thy soul to ward it for me; I pray thee to keep it. Nevertheless, she said, I will not have it, for it goeth with mine errand that thou take it of me. Now I bid thee depart, and send hither thy fellow, the Black Squire.

WENT he then, & anon comes the Black Squire, & now that he was alone with Birdalone this first time, he seemed moody and downcast, all unlike the two others. He stood a little aloof

from Birdalone, & said: What wouldst thou ask of me? Her heart was somewhat chilled by his moodiness, for erst had she deemed him the kindest of the three: but she said: It is of mine errand to ask of thee concerning this foot-gear which Htra lent me until I give it unto thee, if thou be verily her lover. Said he: I was verily her lover. Birdalone said: Then canst thou tell me the manner of thy giving these fair shoon unto Htra?

He said. Even so; we were walking together in this **B**lacks country-side and came to a ford of the river, and it was somewhat deep and took me to over the knee, so I bore her over in my arms; then we went on a little further till we must cross the river back again in another place, & there the ford was shallower, and, the day being hot, Htra must needs wade it on her own feet. So she did off hosen and shoon, and I led her by the hand, and it took her but up to mid-leg. But when we came up out of the water and were on the grass again, I craved the gift of her foot-gear for the love of her, & she gave it straightway, and fared home barefoot, for it was over the meads we were wending in early summer, and the grass was thick and soft. But there:

after I did do make the fair shoon which thou hast on thy feet, & gave them to her. And, for a further token that my tale is true, I shall tell thee that the name of the first ford we waded that day is the Grey-nag's Wade, and the second is called Goat ford. This is all my tale, lady: is the token true?

THE it is, squire, said Birdalone, and was silent awhile, and he also.

Then she looked on him friendly, & said: Thou art out of heart as now, my friend, fear not, for thou shalt without doubt see thy speech-friend again. Moreover here is a ring which she set upon my finger, bidding me give it thee. And she held it out unto him.

HE took the ring, & said: Yea, it is best that I have it of thee, lest unluck come thereof. She saw trouble in his face, but knew not what to say to cheer him, and they stood silently facing one another for a while. Then he said: Let us back to our fellows, and talk it over, what is now to be done.

So they went their ways to where lay the other two upon the green grass, & the Black Squire lay down beside them; but Birdalone stood before them & spake unto the three.

Chapter VI. how the Cham-
pions would do Birdaloue to
be clad anew in the Castle of
the Quest. ¶

LORDS she said,
now is it clear by
the tokens that
mine errand is to
you & none oth-
er; now therefore
am I to tell you what to do to
come unto your speech-friends
and deliver them & bring them
back hither. for this is their
case, that they are in captivity
in a wonder-isle of this great
water, and it is called the Isle
of Increase Unsought.

SPAKE THE Golden
knight: fair lady, we
have heard before that
our friends fared hence, or ra-
ther were taken hence over the
water. And that is the cause
why we builded this castle on
the water's edge, on the very
stead where was raised the pa-
vilion, the house made for the
ladies to abide therein the bat-
tle of the Champions. Since
that time, moreover, many a
barge & keel have we thrust out
into the water, that we might
accomplish the Quest where-
unto we were vowed: but ever
one way went our seafaring,
that when we were come so far
out into the water as to lose
sight of land, came upon us
mist, rose against us dusk &

darkness and then a fierce driv-
ing wind that drave us back
to this shore. It is but six days
ago since we tried this adven-
ture for the last time, and be-
like the same shall befall us
the next time we try it. Where-
fore I must ask thee, lady, dost
thou know any way whereby
we may come to the said isle?
for if thou dost, full surely we
will try it, whatsoever may be
the risk thereby to our bodies
or our souls.

I WILL SORELY I do,
said Birdaloue: else
how had I come from
thence hither mine own self? ¶
And therewith she told them
of the Sending Boat, what it
was, and how she had come all
the way by means thereof from
the Isle of Increase Unsought;
& they all hearkened her heed-
fully, & wondered both at the
sorcery, and the valiant heart
of her who had driven it as she
would in despite of the evil. ¶
But in the end she spake and
said: Lords, ye have now heard
some deal of my story, even
that which concerns you there-
of, & which must needs be told
at once: wherefore doubtless
ye shall fare unto your speech-
friends by this ferry in the very
wise that I shall show you;
unless perchance ye deem that
I have been lying and making
light tales to you, as, sooth to

Part III. of
the Quest
the Quest

say I deem ye think it not.

THE Golden Knight: Damsel, in all wise we trow in thee & thy tale. And God forbid that we should tarry! Go we hence this very day.

ER, but hearken, said the Black Squire: Is it not a part of this damsel's errand that she should deliver to us the raiment of our friends, which now she beareth on her own body, that we may bear it back unto them?

SOOT his that, said Birdaloue, and ye may well wot that this may be nought but needful, whereas the said ladies be all benet by sorceries.

SEE ye then, fellows, said the Black Squire, it may not be to day nor yet to morrow that we may take the road. For ye wot that there is no woman's gear in all the castle, and we must needs send otherwhere to seek it.

LOOK thou, maiden, said the Golden Knight laughing, how duly this young knight thinketh of thee, whereas I, who am his elder, and should be wiser than he, am but heedless of thee. I pray thy pardon.


MOOREOVER, said the Black Squire, there may well be wisdom in abiding; for it is to be thought

that our dear loves considered this, & knew what the time of tarrying should be, & have so dight their matter as to fit in therewith; & I may not deem it of them that they would have us array this our dear sister & theirs in unseemly wise. Nay, for that would be an ill beginning of this deal of the Queene.

ALL ye said this gladly; & the Green Knight said: It were not so ill done that we should see more of our sister here ere we depart, and hear more of her tale; for meseemeth she began it ere while but half-way. And he turned to Birdaloue, and took her hand and caressed it.

BIRDALONE smiled on them somewhat shyly, and thanked them; but bade them spend as little time as might be on her arrayal. For, said she, though those ladies may well have reckoned on the time of the arrayal of my body, yet surely also they shall have reckoned with the eager fire of love in the hearts of you, and the haste it shall breed therein.

ALL pleased were they with that word of hers, but none the less sent two sergeants and a squire with led horses unto the cheaping town, a goodly and great town hight Greenford, which was some twenty



miles thence, with the errand to bring back with them a good shaper and embroideress, and sewing-women, and cloth and silk and linen, and all things needful.


For jewels, each one of them was fain to give her something which he prized, and fair and rich were the gifts, though they had not been made for women. He a fair SS collar of gold, which the Golden Knight gave her, and a girdle of broad golden plates, wrought beauteously, which was the gift of the Black Squire. Albeit he did not offer to clasp it round her loins, as she deemed he would; for when the Green Knight brought his gift, a great gold ring, very ancient of fashion, he would have her turn back the sleeve from her fore-arm, that he might set his dwarf-wrought gold upon the bare flesh; neither did he refrain him from kissing it withal.

BUT THE messengers came back with their workwomen & stuffs early on the morrow; and now was changed all the manner of the womanless castle, & men were full merry therein.

OF CHAPTER VII OF Birdalovne
how she told the Champions
in her tale. 19. 20

Part III. Of
the Quest

IT was a matter of eight days, the making of all Birdalovne's raiment, & meanwhile she was ever with the three Champions, either all three together, or one or other of them. And as to their manners with her, ever was the Golden Knight of somewhat sober demeanour, as if he were an older man than he verily was. The Green Knight was forever praising Birdalovne's beauty to her face, and seemed to find it no easy matter to keep his eyes off her, and somewhat he wearied her with kisses and carresses; but a gay & sportive lad he was; and when she rebuked him for his overmuch fondness, as now & again she did, he would laugh at himself along with her; & in sooth she deemed him heart-whole, and of all truth to Viridis, and oft he would talk of her to Birdalovne, and praise her darling beauty to her, and tell of his longing for his love aloof. Only, quoth he, here art thou, my sister, dwelling amongst us, & shedding thy fragrance on us, and showing to us, wilt thou, wilt thou not, as do the flowers, all the grace & loveliness of thee; & thou so tender



of heart withal, that thou must not blame me overmuch if whiles I forget that thou art my sister, and that my love is, woe's me! far away. So thou wilt pardon me, wilt thou not?

Yea, verily, said she, with a whole heart. Yet thou needest not reach out for my hand: thou hast had enough of it this morning. And she hid it, laughing in the folds of her gown. & he laughed also, and said: O a truth thou art good in all wise, and a young fool am I: but Viridis shall make me wiser, when we come together again. Hast thou ever so fair a damsel? Never, she said, and surely there is none fairer in all the world. So hold thee aloof now for a while, & think of her.

For the Black Squire, knight Arthur, Birdalene was troubled for him, & he made her somewhat sad. True it is that he came not before her again so moody and downcast as when he was giving her the token: yet she deemed that he enforced himself to seem of good cheer furthermore, though he sought her company ever, & that lonely with him & would talk with her almost as one man with another, though with a certain tenderness in his voice, & looking earnestly on her the while.

yet never would he take her hand, or touch her in any wise. And true it is that she longed for the touch of his hand.

ON the third day of her sojourn in the Castle of the Quest, Birdalene took heart at themuch egging of her friends, as they sat all together in the meadow without the castle, to tell them all the story of her; she hid none, save concerning the wood-mother, for she deemed that her sweet friend would love her the better if she babbled not of her.

SO the Champions heartened her telling the tale in her clear lovely voice, and great was their love & pity for the poor lonely maiden. And in especial clear it was to see that they were sore moved when she told how she first came on the Sending Boat, and how the witch-wife tormented her innocent body for that guilt. Then Haudoin laid his hand upon her head, & spake: Poor child, much indeed hast thou suffered! and now I will say it, that it was for us & our loves that thou hast borne all this anguish of captivity and toil and stripes.

RICHARD Hugh leaned over to her, as she sat with her head hanging down, and kissed her cheek and said:

Yea! and I was not there to
emite the head off that accur-
ed one; and I knew nought of
thee and thine anguish, as I
took my light pleasure about
these freemeadows. And he
turned very red, and went nigh
to weep.

ARTHUR sat still with
his eyes bent down on
the ground, and he said
nothing; & Birdalone glanced
on him wistfully ere she went
on with her tale. And she went
on and told closely all that had
happened unto her in the cross-
ing of the water & on the Isle
of Increase Unsought, & the
other Wonder Isles; and she
deemed it not too much that
she should tell it twice over,
nor they that twice over they
should hearken it.

AT the same evening an
Birdalone walked by her-
self in the castle pleas-
ance, she saw Arthur peering
about as if he were seeking
someone; so she stood forth,
and asked him was he seeking
aught; and he said: There was
nothing. But she durst not
ask him what he would, but
stood silent & trembling be-
fore him, till he took her hand,
& spake not loud but eagerly.

AFTER what thou hast
told us to-day, I seem
to know thee what thou
art; and I tell thee that it is a

pain and grief to me to leave
thee, yea to leave thee were it
but for a minute. O I pray thee
pity me for the sundering.

And therewith he turned about
and hastened into the castle.
But Birdalone stood there
with her heart beating fast &
her flesh quivering. & a strange
sweetness of joy took hold of
her. But she said to herself
that it was no wonder though
she felt so happy, seeing that
she had found out that, de-
spite her fears, this one of her
friends loved her no less well
than the others. And then she
spake it in a soft voice that she
would indeed pity him for the
sundering, yea, & herself also.

EVERTHELESS,
when they met there-
after, his demeanour to
her was none otherwise than
it had been; but she no long-
er heeded this since now she
troughed in him.

Chapter VIII. In the mean-
while of the departing of the
Champions, they would plea-
sure Birdalone with feats of

AS THE days
now speedily, &
the three Cham-
pions did what
they might for the
sake of Birda-
lone. for they & their house-
hold showed her of arms, and

they tilted together courteously, and the sergeants stood forth, and shot in the bow before her, till she herself by their bidding took the bow in hand, and shot straighter and well-nigh as hard as the best man there, whereat they marvelled, and praised her much.

WHEN the young men ran afoot before her for the prize of a belt and knife, and forsooth she wotted well that were she to run against them with trussed up skirts she would bear off the prize; but she had no heart thereto, for amidst them all, & her new friendships, she had grown shamefast, & might play the wood-maiden no longer.

YET twice the Champions fared further afield with her to show her some woodcraft yet were not very free to go far because of the ill neighbours whereof the chaplain had told her that first night of her coming.

AND in all these pastimes, whatso they were, Bird-alone bore herself well and merrily, and put from her the sorrow of the sundering, & the peril of her dear friends which grew now so near at hand.

THE chaplain aforesaid, who hight Leonard, she fell in with not seldom; and he was ever meek & humble

before her; and ever withal was sorrow easy to be seen in his countenance, & trouble withal; and she knew not how to help him, save by being courteous & kind with him whenso they met; but none the more might he pluck up cheerful countenance in answer to her kindness.

WHEN Sir Hymeris, the grizzle-haired castellan, she foregathered also oft enough, and could not forbear some merry gibes with him concerning their first meeting, and how that she had been a burden and a terror to him; & these mocks she made him because she saw it liked him not ill to be mocked in friendly fashion; though forsooth betwixt the laughter he looked on her somewhat ruefully. And ever, ere he parted from her, he made occasion to kiss her hands; and she suffered it smiling, and was demonstrative to him; whereas she saw that he was of good will to her. In such wise then wore the hours and the days.

Chapter LX. Birdalone cometh before the Champions in her

WHEN the time was come when Birdalone had all her gear ready, and the women were to abide in the

castle as her serving-damoels while the Champions were away.

SO now in the summer eve, an hour before sunset, Birdalone did on the richest of her new raiment, and came into the hall where sat the Three together, & Sir Hymeris with them. She was so clad, that she had on a green gown with brodered sleeves, & thereover a white cote-hardie welled with gold, and gold-embroidered; on her feet were gold shoon of window-work, pearled and gemmed; and on her head a rose garland; on her neck she bore the Golden Knight's collar; her loins were girt with the Black Squire's girdle; & on her wrist was the Green Knight's ancient gold ring; & she carried in her arms Aurea's gown & Viridis' shift and Astra's shoon.

RATHER sunrise than sunset it seemed, as verily birdalone she came into the hall with bright eager eyes, & flushed cheeks, and countenance smiling with love. The men stood up all, & would come down from the dais to meet her; but she bade them go back, and sit each in his place till she stood before them.

IN the hall then she walked, and every step of hers seemed lovelier than the last, till she came to them and gave unto each his keepsake & said Champions, now is mine errand all done, save that to-morrow I must show you the manner of the Sending Boat. Now there is nought save the darkness of the coming night to hinder you from this last deal of your Quest; and it is I that have brought you to this, and have done this good unto you, if no more good I do in the world. Wherefore I pray you to love me ever, & bear me ever in your minds.

SHE Y gazed on her & were overcome by her loveliness and grace, and by the kindness & valiancy of her heart. Next arose the Golden Knight, Baudoin to wit, & took a cross from his breast, and held it up, and spake: Maiden, thou sayest well, & never shall we forget thee, or cease to love thee: and here I swear by God upon the Tree that it shall be a light thing for me to die for thee, if in any need I find thee. Brethren, will ye not swear the same? And this is but thy due, maiden, for I declare unto thee, that when thou didst enter the hall e'en now, it was as if the very sun of heaven was com-

Part III. Of
the Castle of
the Queen.

ing in unto us.

HEREON the other two took the Rood and swore upon it; & Hugh was hushed and meek and sadfaced after he had sworn; but Arthur the Black Squire bowed down his head and wept, & his fellows marvelled nought thereat, neither did Birdaloue; and all her body yearned toward him to solace him.

NOW turned Sir Baudoin to the castellan & said Sir Hymeris, I will now swear thee to guard this lady as the apple of thine eye whiles we three be away, and therein to spare neither thyself nor others, for thou seest well what grief it would be to us if she came to any harm.

AND to me also, said the castellan. And therewith he swore upon the Rood, & then came round the table, and knelt before Birdaloue, and kissed her hands.

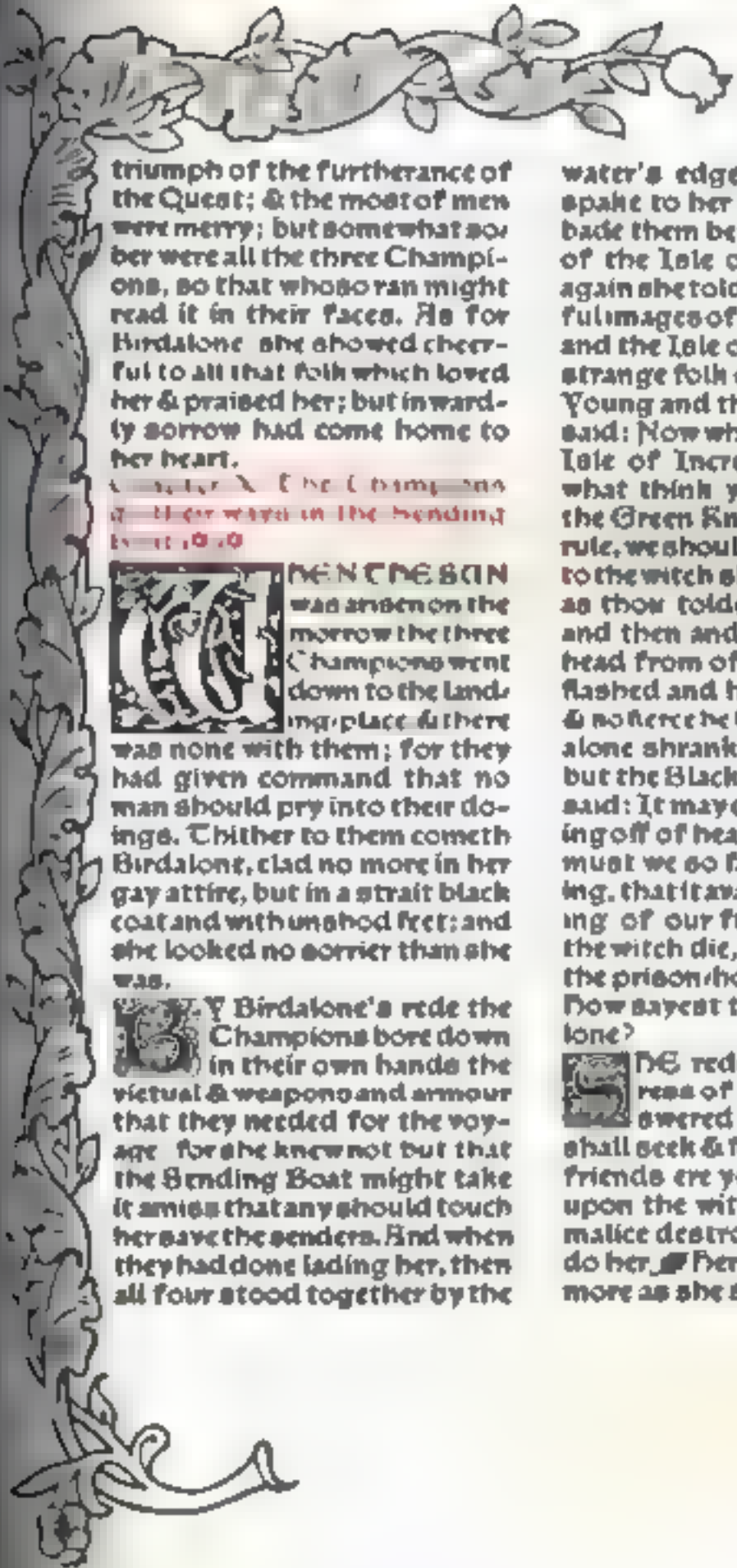
HEREAFTER were they all silent a space; & then came Birdaloue to the inner side of the table & sat betwixt Baudoin & Hugh. But the Black Squire took up the word & spake: Birdaloue, sweet child, one thing is to be said, to wit, that it were well that thou keep within walls while we be away; or at least that thou go but a little be-

yond the castle, and never but within a half bowshot, save thou be well accompanied. For there be men of violence dwelling no great way off, reivers and rovers, who would be well pleased to take from us anything which we deem dear besides others who would think the lifting of such a jewel good hap indeed. Sir Hymeris, have a care of the Red Knight; & if thou mightest come by a few more stout lads, to wage them, it were well.

BIRDALONE heeded not what the castellan answered, such a shaft of joy went to her heart when she heard that friend speak her own name in such wise as he had never done erst, and that before them all. She but murmured some yeasay to that which Arthur had spoken unto her, and then she held her peace for the sweetness of that moment.

SO there they sat & talked awhile in dear and pleasant converse; & Hugh fell to asking her of her life in the house under the Wood, & she answered all frankly and simply, and the more she told the dearer she seemed to them.

THIS DREW night in, till folk came flocking into the hall: for needs must be feast and banquet for



triumph of the furtherance of the Quest; & the most of men were merry; but somewhat sober were all the three Champions, so that whose ran might read it in their faces. As for Birdalone she showed cheerful to all that folk which loved her & praised her; but inwardly sorrow had come home to her heart.

*Chapter X The Champions
of their ways in the bending
boat.*

WHEN THE SUN was arisen on the morrow the three Champions went down to the landing place & there was none with them; for they had given command that no man should pry into their doings. Thither to them cometh Birdalone, clad no more in her gay attire, but in a strait black coat and with unshod feet; and she looked no sorer than she was.

Y Birdalone's rede the Champions bore down in their own hands the victual & weapons and armour that they needed for the voyage for she knew not but that the Bending Boat might take it amiss that any should touch her save the senders. And when they had done lading her, then all four stood together by the

water's edge, and Birdalone spake to her friends, & again bade them beware of the wiles of the Isle of Nothing; and again she told them of the woful images of the Isle of Kings and the Isle of Queens, & the strange folk of the Isle of the Young and the Old. Then she said: Now when ye come to the Isle of Increase Unsought, what think ye to do? Said the Green Knight: If I might rule, we should go straight up to the witch sitting in her hall, as thou toldest us, my dear, and then and there smite the head from off her. His eyes flashed and his brow knitted, & so fierce he looked that Birdalone shrank back from him; but the Black Squire smiled & said: It may come to the smiting off of heads in the end; yet must we so fashion our carrying, that it avail us for the freeing of our friends; else may the witch die, and the secret of the prison-house die with her. Now sayest thou, dear Birdalone?

SHE reddened at the career of his voice, and answered: By my rede ye shall seek & find your speech-friends ere ye make open war upon the witch; else may her malice destroy them ere ye undo her. Her face flushed yet more as she spake again: But

*Part III
the Castle of
the Queen*

concerning all things. I deem that Mira may give you the best rede when ye have met the loves, for that she knoweth more of the isle and its guiles than the others.

BOTH Baudoin: Here, in is wisdom, sweet maiden, for as guileless as thou mayest be and so far as we may we shall follow thy rede; but all lieth in the fathom of the coming time. And now this moment is the moment of sundering & farewell.

WHEN he then to Birdalone and took his two hands about her head, and lifted her face unto him, & kissed it kindly, as a father might kiss a daughter, & said: Farewell, dear child, and take heed to the word that Arthur spake yesterday, and go not from the castle even a little way save with good and sure company.

WHEN came Dugh to her, & took her hand some, what timidly; but she put up her face to him in simple wise, and he kissed either cheek of her, and said no more than: Farewell, Birdalone!

WHEN came Arthur, and stood before her a little; & then he knelt down on the stones before her & kissed her feet many times.

and she shuddered and caught her breath as they felt his kisses; but neither he nor she spake a word, and he stood up and turned away at once toward the Sending Boat, & boarded her first of the three; & the others followed straightway.

HEREFTER THE Champions bared each an arm, and let blood flow thence into a bowl, & reddened stem and stern of their barge, and then all three spake the spell together thus, as Birdalone had taught them:

The red raven/wine now
Hast thou drunk, stem & bow;
Wake then, and awake,
And the northern way take!
The way of the Senders
forth over the flood,
for the will of the Senders
is blent with the blood.

WHENTHALL as before thereafter, that the Sending Boat stirred under them, and then turned about and pointed her bows to the northward, & sped swiftly over the waters. It was a fair sunny day, with no cloud, nought save the summer haze lying on the lake far away. Birdalone stood watching the speeding of the boat, till she could see it no longer, not even as a fleck on the face of the waters. Then she turned away & went

toward her chamber, saying to herself that the sundering was easier to bear than she had deemed it would be, and that she had a many things to do that day. But when she came into her chamber, and shut the door, she looked about her on the things which had grown so familiar to her in these few latter days, and she stood watching the bright sunshine that

streamed across the floor and lay warm upon her feet: then she took three steps toward the window, & saw the lake lying all a-glitter under the sun, and her heart failed her withal, and she had no might so much as to think about her sorrow & caress it, but fell down where she was swooning on to the floor, & lay there, while all the house began to stir about her.

Part III. Of
the Castle of
the Quest

Here ends the Third Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the Castle of the Quest, and begins the fourth Part of the said tale, which is called Of the Days of Abiding. ❧❧

THE MEEER OF THE WONDROUS TALE
THE FOURTH PART OF THE DAYE OF ABIDING

Chapter I. Of Birdalons
grief: & of Leonard the Chap
lain. &c.



NCAME BIRDALONE to her
self, and that was but little joy
unto her, and she yet lay still
on the floor for a while for she
loathed the hour that was to
come. Then the life stirred in
her, and whereas she would not
that her women should find her
there she stood up & clad her
self somewhat more seemly, yet
she did on her black raiment
and determined in her mind
that nought would she wear
save black unadorned while her
friends were away.

SHE beheld her now to the
chamber where her women
were gathered together,
and watched them working a
while, but spake nought. Then
she went her way into the plea
sance, and paced the plashed

alley up and down, letting the
tears run down from her as
they would. Then she turned
back into the castle, and went
out at gates and walked over
the meadow a little, & might
well have gone further than
wisdom would. But the cas
tellan espied her from a win
dow, and came hurrying out
after her & with many pray
ers for pardon brought her
back again, babbling to her
by the way; but not a word
might he get from her; and
when he came into the hall
with her, and, after his wont,
knelt down to kiss her hands,
she caught them away from
him presently and was sorry
for it thereafter.

LEONARD HNF sat in the
hall, scarce moving,
till she heard one en
tering from the screen, & lo
it was Leonard the chaplain.
He came her way, and showed
her rueful countenance & pity
of him smote her, and she re
membered therewith how they
first went out of gates toge
ther: & at the thought thereof
her tears brake forth again, but
she made him a sign with her
hand to sit down beside her, &
he did so: & when she might
for her weeping, she looked
kindle on him & he fell to talk
making as if he noted not her

tears and sorrow; but she answered him little, for she had shame to begin the talk concerning the Champions & their Quest, & their departure: yet might she not bring her tongue to make any speech else. But presently he took up the word, & asked her how long a while she deemed they would be away, & she answered, smiling on him for thanks, and having reckoned the days on her fingers: If all go better than well, they may be back in ten days' time. Said the chaplain: There be longer whites of waiting in most men's lives. Yea, she said, but this is the delay at the best; it may be far longer; for how may we tell what haps may be?

YEA, said Leonard, shall we then call it twenty days, or thirty? forsooth, that may be long for thee; though there be some who must needs endure hope deferred a deal longer. But it may run out longer than even thirty days, thy waiting-tide.

HE answered not, & he said: Wheneo the time hangs heavy on hand with thee, if thou hast will to fare abroad out of the castle, I shall be ever at hand to guide thee. Indeed, I wot that the castellan will be loth to let thee go; but he is old and straitlaced:

& yet withal he wotteth, as do we all, that there is now little peril or none were we to fare a five miles or more, whereas we are as good as at peace for the last five days with all save the Red Knight, & of him we wot that he is gone into another land with as many of his folk as be not needed for the warding of his hold.

I THINK THEE, said Birdalene, but it is like to be my will not to fare out a gates till the Champions come back home. I was glad e'en now when the castellan fetched me in again: to say sooth, fear of peril had just entered my heart when he came up with me.

HE priest seemed somewhat chafallen at her answer. He spake little more, and presently he stood up, made his obeisance, & departed.

Chapter II Birdalene's love of the Priest. Ten days of waiting wear.

MORE that day and the next, and Birdalene fell to talking with her women, whereof were five now left, & four of them were young, the eldest scarce of thirty summers, & the fifth was a woman of sixty, both wise and kind.



All these told her somewhat of their own lives when she asked them; and some withal told of folk whom they had known or heard tell of. And well pleased was Birdalone to hear thereof, and learn more of the ways of the world, & quick-witted she was at the lesson, so that she needed not to ask many questions.

FURTHERMORE, she took to her broidering again, & fell to doing a goodly pair of shoon for Aitra, since she had worn those borrowed ones somewhat hardly. And the women wondered at her needlework, so marvellous fine as it was, and how that in little space of time were come flowers and trees, and birds and beasts, all lovely; & they said that the faery must have learned her that craft. But she laughed and reddened, and thought of the woodmother; and, sitting there within the four walls, she longed for the oak-glades, and the wood-lawns, and for the sight of the beasts that dwelt therein.

AGAIN she fell in with Leonard the priest, & he asked her could she read in a book, & when she said nay, he offered to teach her that lore, and she yea said that joyously; & thenceforth would she have him with her

every day a good while; and an apt scholar she was, and he no ill master, and she learned her A.B.C. speedily.

NOW it was the ninth day since the Champions were gone, and all that time she had not been out of gates, and after the first two days, had enforced herself to fill up her time with her work as aforesaid: but this last day she might do but little, for she could not but take it for sure that the morrow would be the day of return; nay, even she deemed that they might come in the night/tide; so that when she went to bed, though she was weary, she would wake if she might, so that it was nigh dawn ere she fell asleep.

SOME three hours after she woke up, and heard a sound of folk stirring in the house, and the clashing of weapons: & the heart leapt in her, and she said 'They are come, they are come!' Nevertheless she durst not get out of bed, lest her hope had beguiled her; and she lay awake another hour, and no tidings came to her; and then she wept herself to sleep; and when she awoke once more, she found that she must have wept sleeping, for the pillow beside her face was all wet with the tears.

Part III. Of
the death of
Birdalune.

THE sun was high now,
& his beams were cast
back from the ripple of
the lake, and shone wavering
on the wall of the chamber, the
window whereof gave on to the
water. Then came a hand on the
latch of the door, & she start-
ed, and her heart grieved her
but it was one of the women
who opened, and came in, and
Birdalune rose up sitting in
her bed, and said faintly, for
she could scarce speak: Is any
tidings toward, Catherine?
The maid said: Yes, my lady;
for early after sunrise came
weaponed men to the gate, and
would sell us beeves; and my
lord, Sir Hymeris, must needs
go forth & chaffer with them,
though belike they had been
lifting what was neither ours,
nor theirs, nor the neighbour's.
Maybe Sir Hymeris looked to
buy tidings from them as well
as beef. Anyhow they departed
when they had gotten their
money & drunk a cup. And now
it is said that the Red Knight
hath been hurt in some fray,
and keepeth his bed; where-
fore the land shall have peace
of him awhile. Said Birda-
lune: I thank thee, good Cath-
erine; I shall lie a little longer;
depart now.

THE woman went her
ways; & when she was
gone, Birdalune wept

and sobbed, and writhed upon
her bed, and found no solace
to her grief. But she arose and
paced the chamber, & at length
looked out of the window over
the empty water & wept again.
Then she said: Yet they may
come ere noon, or it may be ere
evening, or perchance to mor-
row morning. And she stayed
her weeping, and was calmer.
But still she walked the floor,
and whiles looked out of win-
dow, and whiles she looked on
her limbs, & felt the sleekness
of her sides, and she said: O
my body! how thou longest!

BUT AT LAST she clad
herself in haste & went
stealthily from the cham-
ber, as if she feared to meet
anyone; & she stole up to the
tower-top that was highest, &
looked through the door on to
the leads, & saw no one there;
so she went out, and stood by
the battlement, & gazed long
over the water, but saw neither
boat nor burning mountain
coming towards her.

**Chapter III. Now would Bird-
alone ride abroad.**

AFTER a while
she came down a-
gain, and went to
the women, and
sat working with
them awhile and
so wore away two hours. Then
she sent for the priest and had

her lesson of him; and when she had been at it another two hours, she bade him begin and learn her writing; and nought loth he was thereto; forsooth he had been longing to pray her to suffer him learn her, but durst not. for in such teaching needs must he sit full nigh to her, and watch her hands, & her fingers striving to shape the letters; nay, whiles must he touch her hand with his, and hold it. Wherefore now he promised himself a taste of Paradise. Withal he was full meet to learn her, whereas he was one of the best of scribes, and a fair writer full handy.

SO they fell to the lesson, & she became eager thereof, and learned fast, & clave to the work, while his soul was tormented with longing for her. And thus wore a three hours, and then suddenly she looked up wearily from her work, & her trouble was awake, & the longing for her speech/friend, & she gave the priest leave for that day, but suffered him to kiss her hand for wages.

WHEN she hurried up to the tower/top, when the afternoon was wearing into evening; and abode there a long while looking over the waters, till it began to dusk, and then came down miserably

and went to her women.

THE next day was like unto this; nought better, and she wore the hours whiles going up to the tower/top & looking over the lake, whiles broidering amidst her maids, whiles learning her clerk's work with Sir Leonard, but ever eating her heart out with her longing.

ON THE third of these days she called the carter to her for a talk, & asked him what he thought of it, this delay of his lords' return. Quoth the greyhead: My lady, we may not wonder if they be tarried for a few days; for this is an adventure on which they have gone, & many haps betide in such tales. Now I beseech thee torment not thy self; for the time is not yet come for thee even to doubt that they have miscarried.

HIS WORDS solaced her much for that time, where-as she saw that he spake but the sooth; so she thanked him, & smiled upon him kindly; and he was ravished thereof, and was for kneeling before her at once & kissing her hands after his wont; but she smiled again and refrained him, and said: Nay, not yet, fair friend; that is for the departure, and I have yet a word to say unto thee: to wit, that I long to go

outwages, and it will solace me and give me patience to abide the coming of my friends, for thou must know, Sir Hymeris, that I was reared amidst the woods and the meadows, with the burning of the sun, and the buffets of the wind; & now for lack of some deal of that am I waxing white & faint. And thou wouldst not have me falling sick on thine hands now wouldst thou?

QHY, surely, lady, said Sir Hymeris; this very day I will ride out with thee; and two score or more of weaponed men shall ride with us for fear of mishaps. Said Birdalone, knitting her brows: Nay, knight, I need not thy men at arms; I would fain go free and alone, for hast thou not heard how that the Red Knight is hurt & keepeth his bed? So what peril is there? Said Sir Hymeris: Yea, lady; but the Red knight is not the only foe, though he be the worst, but it may well be that the story is but feigned, for the said enemy hath many wiles. And look you, kind lady, it is most like that by now he hath heard how in my poor castle is kept a jewel, a pearl of great price, that hath not its like in the world, and will encompass the stealing of it if he may.

QUENED Birdalone, and said: But how if the said jewel hath a will, and legs and feet thereto, and is ready to take the peril on her, & will wend outwages if she will? What wilt thou do then, lord? Then, said the castellan, I shall fetch thee back, and, though it be a grief to me, shall have thee borne back perforce if nought else may do, for so the oath sworn to my lords compelleth me.

QUEN laughed Birdalone, and said: Pardon me whereto cometh all this kneeling & hand-kissing? But bear in mind, fair lord, how once on a time thou wouldst have me outwages, would I, would I not, & now, will I, will I not, thou wouldst keep me within; so have times changed, and may happen they may change yet again. But tell me, am I mistress over my women to bid them what I will? Certes, said he, & over all of us. Said she: If then I bade them, some two or three, come with me into the meadows & woods a half day's journey for our disport, how then? For that once said Sir Hymeris I should bid them disobey their lady. Said Birdalone: And how if they disobeyed thee, & obeyed me? Quoth Sir Hymeris: If they bring thee back safe, they

Part IV Of
the Days of
Abiding

may chance to sing to the twig-
gen fiddle/bow, that they may
be warned from such folly; but
if they come back without thee,
by All Hallows the wind of
wrath shall sweep their heads
off them!

BIRDALONE flushed
red at his word, & was
silent a while; then she
said, making cheerful coun-
tenance again: Thou art a hard
master, lord castellan; but I
must needs obey thee. There-
fore I will take thy bidding, &
ride abroad in such wise that I
shall scare the land with an ar-
my, since no otherwise may I
look on the summer land. But
to-day I will not go, nor to-
morrow belike; but some day
soon. And in good sooth I
thank thee for thy heedful care
of me, and wish I were better
worth it. Nay, nay, thou shalt
not kneel to me, but I to thee;
for thou art verily the master.

WHEN REWIT the rose
came from beside him, and
knelt down before him
& took his hand and kissed it,
and went her ways, leaving him
ravished with love of her. But
now she had no scorn of him,
but deemed, as was true, that
he was both valiant and trusty
and kind, and she thanked him
in her heart as well as in words.

Chapter IV Of Birdalone
faring abroad.

INDEED Birda-
lone longed on
any terms to be
outwaged & to
have some joy of
the summer; for
now she began to see that
she might have to abide some
while ere her friends should
come to her in the Castle of
the Quest; and she was angry
with herself that her longing
was thus wasting her, and she
rebuked herself & said: Where
is now that Birdalone who let
but few days go by without
some joyance of the earth and
its creatures? she who bore
lightly the toil of a thrall, and
gibes and mocking & stripes?
Surely this is grievous folly,
that I should be worsened
since I have come to be the
friend of gentle ladies, & noble
champions, and mighty war-
riors. Had it not been better to
have abided under the witch/
wife's hand? for not every day
nor most days did she tor-
ment me. But now for many
days there has been pain and
grief and heart-sickness hour
by hour; and every hour have
I dreaded the coming of the
next hour, till I know not how
to bear it.

She strove with herself, & became of better heart, and set herself strongly to the learning of the clerkly lore; she gathered her wits together, and no longer looked for every day and every hour to bring about the return of the Champions, nor blamed the day and the hour because they failed therein, & in all wise she strove to get through the day unworn by vain longing.

WHEREFORE, on a day when three whole weeks were gone since the day of departure, she was glad when the castellan came to her and said: Lady, these two days I have had men out to spy the land, and their word goes that nought is stirring which a score of us well-armed might have cause to fear; wherefore to-morrow, if it be thy will, we shall bring thee out a gates, & so please thee, shall be in no haste to come back, but may lie out in the wild-wood one night, & come back at our leisure on the morrow of to-morrow. Now sayest thou of thy pleasure herein?


She thanked him, & yeasaid it eagerly, and next morning they set forth; and Birdalone had with her three of the women, & they had sumpter-beasts with them, & tents for Birdalone and her

maids.

So they rode by pleasant ways & fair meadows, and the weather was good, for it was now the first days of July, and all was as lovely as might be; & for that while Birdalone cast off all her cares, and was merry, and of many words and sweet; and all the folk rejoiced thereat, for all loved her in the Castle of the Quest, beakles those one or two that loved her overmuch.

RIDE they thus a twelve miles or more and then they came, as their purpose was, to the beginning of a woodland plenteous of venison, and they hunted here, and Birdalone took her part therein, and all praised her woodcraft; albeit because of her went a head or two free that had fallen else, whereas of the carle hunters were some who deemed the body of her better worth looking on than the quarry.

SOME SOEVER, they slew of hind and roe and other beastes wood-cattle what they would, some deal for their supper in the wilderness, some to bear home to the castle. But when night was nigh at hand they made stay in a fair wood-lawn about which ran a clear stream, whereby they pitched the ladies tent, and Birdalone



and here went down into the water & washed the weariness off them; and her ladies wondered at the deftness of Birdalone's swimming; for they bathed in a pool somewhat great into which the stream widened, so that there was space enough for her therein.

WHEN they were washed & clad goodly in raiment which they had brought on the sumpters, the men had lighted fires and were cooking the venison, & anon there was supper & banquet in the wild-wood, with drinking of wine and pleasant talk & the telling of tales and singing of minstrelsy; and so at last, when night was well worn, & out in the open meadows the easternly was waxing grey, then Birdalone and her ladies went to bed in their fair tents, and the men-at-arms lay down on the greensward under the bare heaven.

Chapter V. Sir Hymeris showeth Birdalone the mountains

WHEN IT WAS morning & they arose, the day was as fair as yesterday, and folk were even as joyous as they had been then, all but Birdalone, and she was silent & downcast, even when

she came forth from the fresh water into the sweetness of the midsummer wood. She had dreamed in the night that she was all alone in the Castle of the Quest, & that her old mistress came to her from out of the Sinking Boat to fetch her away, and brought her aboard, and stripped her of her rich garments and sat facing her, drawing ugly grimaces at her; and she thought she knew that her friends were all dead and gone, and she had none to pity or defend her. Then somehow were they two, the witch and she, amidmost of the Isle of Nothing, & the witch drew close anigh her, and was just going to whisper into her ear something of measureless horror, when she awoke; and the sun was bright outside the shaded whiteness of her tent: the shadows of the leaves were dancing on the ground of it; the morning wind was rustling the tree-boughs, and the ripple of the stream was tinkling hard by. At first was Birdalone joyous that what she had awakened from was but a dream; but presently she felt the burden of her longing, & she said to herself that when they came back to the castle they should find tidings, & that she should know either that her friends were indeed dead, or that they

were come back again alive and well. And then she thought within herself, suppose the three Champions & their loves were dead & gone, how would she do with those that were left her, as Sir Hymeria, and Leonard the priest, & her women? and her soul turned with loathing from a life so empty as that would be; and yet she blamed herself that she was so little friendly to these lesser friends, whom forsooth she loved because of her love for the greater ones. So, as above said, she was troubled and silent amongst the joy of the others.

THAT saw Sir Hymeria the castellan; & when they had broken fast and were getting to horse, he came to her & said: Lady, the day is yet young, & if we fetch a compass by a way that I wot of, we shall see places new to thee, and may happen somewhat wonderful, and yet come home timely to the castle. Wilt thou?

BIRDALONE was still somewhat distraught, but she knew not how to naysay him, though at heart she would liefer have gone back to the castle by the shortest way. So folk brought her her palfrey & they rode their way, the castellan ever by her side.

h i

And by fair ways indeed they went, & so joyous was all about them, that little by little Birdalone's gladness came back to her, and she made the most of it to be as merry of seeming as she might be.

NOW they rode fair and softly by thicket and copse and glade of the woodland, following up the stream afore said for the more part, till at last the trees failed them suddenly and they came forth on to a wide green plain, all unbuilt, so far as their eyes could see, and beyond it the ridges of the hills and blue mountains rising high beyond them.

THE N Birdalone's eyes beheld this new thing. Of a sudden all care left her, and she dropped her rein, and smote her palms together, and cried out: Oh! but thou art beautiful, O earth, thou art beautiful! Then she sat gazing on it, while the greyhead turned & smiled on her, well pleased of her pleasure.

AFTER a while she said: And might we go nigher? Yea, certes, said he, yet I doubt if thou wilt like it the better, the nigher thou art. Ah! she said, but if I were only amidst it, & a part of it, as once I was of the woodland!

129


So thitherward they rode over the unharvested mead, and saw hart and hind thereon, and wild kine, & of smaller deer great plenty, but of tame beasts none, and the hills were before them like a wall. But as they drew nigher, they saw where the said wall of the hills was cloven by a valley narrow & steep-sided, that went right athwart the lie of the hills: the said valley was but little grassed, and the bare rocks were crow-black. When they had gone a little further, they could see that the ground near the foot of the hills rose in little knolls and ridges, but these were lower & fewer about the entry into that valley. Also presently they came upon a stream which ran out of the said valley: & Sir Hymeris said that this was the water where by they had lain last night, albeit here it was little indeed.

When they had ridden some five miles over the plain, they came amongst those knolls at the mouth of the valley: & Sir Hymeris led Birdalone up to the top of one of the highest of them, & thence they could look into that dale & see how it winded away up toward the mountains, like to a diemal street, for not only was it but little grassed, but withal there was

neither tree nor bush therein. Moreover, scattered all about the bottom of the dale were great stones, which looked as if they had once been set in some kind of order, & that the more whereas they were not black like the rocks of the dale-side, but pale grey of hue, so that they looked even as huge sheep of the ganta feeding down the dale.

THE Nopake Birdalone. Truly, sir knight, thou saidst but sooth that I should see things new and strange. But shall we go a little way into this valley to-day? Nay lady, said Sir Hymeris, nor to-morrow nor any day uncompelled, neither shall we go higher unto it than now we be. Wherefore not, said Birdalone, for meseemeth it is as the gate of the mountains, & fain were I in the mountains.

LADY, said the castellan, overmuch perilous it were to ride the valley, which, as thou savest, is the very gate of the mountains, for the said dale, which hight the Black Valley of the Greywaters, hath a bad name for the haunting of unmanlike wights, against which even our men-at-arms might make no defence. And if any might escape them, and win through the gates and up into the mountains, I wot



not if suchlike devils & things
unkent be there in the moun-
tain-land, but of a sooth there
be ferce & wild men like enough
to devils, who know no peace,
and slay whatsoever cometh
unto them, but if they them-
selves be slain of them.

WELL, said Birdalone,
then to-day, at least,
we go not into the dale;
but knowest thou any tales of
these wild places? Many
have I heard, said he, but I am
an ill minstrel & should spoil
them in the telling. Ask them
of Sir Leonard our priest, he
knoweth of them better than
others, and hath a tongue duly
shapen for telling them.

BIRDALONE answered
nought thereto; she but
turned her horse's head
and rode down the knoll; and
so they came unto their com-
pany, & all went their ways to-
ward the Castle of the Queat.

NIGHT befell them on
their way home; but the
nigher they came to the
castle the more pensive waxed
Birdalone, and, though she hid
it, when they were come to the
gate she scarce had her wit; for
it was as if she thought to have
one rushing out & crying Tid-
ings, tidings! they are come.

OWISE it so befell; they
were no more come than
was the Day of Doom.

And a little after they were
within gates, it was night, and
Birdalone crept wearily up to
her chamber, and gat to bed,
and so tired was she that she
fell asleep at once and dream-
ed not.

**Chapter VI. Birdalone hear-
eth tell tales of the Black Val-
ley of the Greywethers.**

ON THE morrow
was Birdalone
heavier of heart
than ever yet, &
weaner for tid-
ings & she won-
dered how she could have been
so joyous that day in the wild-
wood. Yet she thought much
of the Valley of the Greyweth-
ers, & that solaced her some-
what after a while, so sore she
longed to go thither; and, as
'tis said, one nail knocks out
the other. So that morning,
when she had had her lesson
of priest Leonard, she spake
thereof to him, and told him
what Sir Hymeris had said con-
cerning his knowledge there-
of, and she asked him what he
knew.

I HAVE been there, said
he; & he started at that
word & said: Did aught
of evil befall thee?

NAY, said he, but a great
fear & dread hung about
me; & 'tis said that they
try their luck overmuch who

Part IV, Of

11

go thither twice.


BIRDALONE said: Tell me now of the tales that be told of that valley.

Quoth Leonard: They be many, but the main of them is this: that those Greywethers be giants of yore ago, or land wights, carles, & queans, who have been turned into stone by I wot not what deed; but that whiles they come alive again, and can walk and talk as erst they did; and that if any man may be so bold as to abide the time of their awakening, and in the first moment of their change may frame words that crave the fulfilment of his desire, & if therewith he be both wise and constant, then shall he have his desire fulfilled of these wights, and bear his life back again from out the dale. And thus must he speak & no otherwise O earth, thou and thy first children, I crave of you such and such a thing whatsoever it may be. And if he speak more than this, then is he undone. He shall answer no question of them; & if they threaten him he shall not pray them mercy, nor quail before their uplifted weapons; nor, to be short, shall he heed them more than if they still were stones unchanged. Moreover, when he hath said his say, then shall these wights throng about him

and offer him gold and gems, and all the wealth of the earth; and if that be not enough, they shall bring him the goodliest of women, with nought lacking in her shape, but lacking all raiment, so that he shall see her as she is verily shapen. But whoso shall take any one of all these gifts is lost forever, and shall become one of that Stony People; and whoso naysayeth them all until the cock crow, & abideth steady by his one craving, shall win fulfilment thereof, and, as some say, all those gifts aforesaid; for that the Stony People may not abide the day to take them back again.

She was silent therewith, and nought spake Birdalone, but looked down on the ground, and longing encompassed her soul. Then the priest spake again: This were a fair adventure, lady, for a hapless one, but for the happy it were a fool's errand. She answered not, and they parted for that time.

AT the next week, there being yet no tidings come to hand, Birdalone prayed the castellan to take her out of gates again, that she might once more behold the mountains, and the gates thereof; and he yea said her asking, and went with her, well accompa-



nied, as before; but this time, by Birdalone's will, they rode straight to the plain aforesaid, and again she looked into that dale of the Greywethers from the knoll. Somewhat belated they were, so that they might not get back to the castle before dusk, wherefore again they lay out in the wildwood, but there lacked somewhat of the triumph and joyance which they had had that other day. They came back to the castle on the morrow somewhat after noon, & found no news there; nor, to say sooth, did Birdalone look for any; & her heart was heavy.

Chapter VII. Birdalone beguileth the Priest to help her to outgoing. &c.

Ill had the time so worn that the reason was in the first days of August, and weariness and heart-sickness increased on Birdalone again, & she began to look pined and pale. Yet when she spake of the tarrying of the Champions both to the castellan and Sir Leonard the priest (who was the wiser man of the two), each said the same thing, to wit, that it was no marvel if they were not yet come, seeing what like the adventure was, & neither of those two seemed in anywise to have lost hope.

PRICE in these last days did Birdalone go out & gates with Sir Hymeris and his company; & the last of the three times the journey was to the knoll that looked into the Black Valley; but now was Birdalone's pleasure of the sight of it afar off marred by her longing to be amidst thereof; yet she did not show that she was irked by the refraining of her desire to enter therein, and they turned, & came home safely to the castle.

In the morrow she sat with Sir Leonard the priest over the writing lesson, and she let it be long, and oft he touched her hand, so that the sweetness of unfulfilled desire went deep to his heart.

Last Birdalone looked up & said friend. I would ask thee if thou seeest any peril in my entering the Black Valley of the Greywethers by daylight, if I leave it by daylight? Stone? quoth he. Yea, she said, alone. He pondered a little, and then said. Sooth to say I deem the peril little in the valley itself, if thou be not overcome by terror there. Yea, for my part I am not all so sure that thou shalt see the wonder of the Stony folk coming alive: for 'tis not said that they quicken save on

Part IV, Of
the Dawn of
-biding

Part IV of
the Day of
Abiding

certain nights, and chiefly on Midsummer Night; unless it be that the trier of the adventure is some one fated above others thereto; as forsooth thou mayest be. And as for peril of evil men, there are few who be like to be as venturesome as thou or I. They durst not enter that black street, save sore need compel them. But forsooth, going thither, and coming back again, some peril there may be therein. And yet for weeks past there has been no word of any unpeace; and the Red Knight it is said for certain is not riding.

BIRDLONE was silent a while; then she said: Fair & kind friend I am eating my heart out in longing for the coming back of my friends & it is like that unless I take to some remedy, I shall fall sick thereby, & then when they come back there shall be in me but sorry cheer for them. Now the remedy I know, & it is that I betake me alone to this adventure of the Black Valley: for meseemeth that I shall gain health & strength by my going thither (wherefore to be short, if thou wilt help me, I will go to-morrow (What sayest thou, wilt thou help me?)

She turned very red & spake: Lady, why shouldst thou thus go, as thy name is, birda-

lone? Thou hast called me just now thy kind friend, so kind as it was of thee: now therefore why should not thy friend go with thee?

KINDLY indeed she smiled on him, but shook her head: I call thee trusty and dear friend again, said she; but what I would do I must do myself. Moreover to what end shouldst thou go? If I fall in with ghosts, a score of men would help me nought, & if I happen on weaponed men who would do me scathe, of what avail were one man against them? And look thou, Sir Leonard, there is this avail in thine abiding behind: If I come not back in two days' space, or three at the most, thou wilt wot that I have fared amiss, & then mayest thou let it be known whither I went, & men will seek me and deliver me maybe.

SHE KEWITCH she stayed her words suddenly, and turned very pale, and laid her hand on her bosom, & said faintly: But O my heart, my heart! If they should come while I am away! And she seemed like to swoon.

LORD was afraid thereof, and knew not what to do; but presently the colour came into her face again, and in a little while



she smiled & said: Beest thou not, friend, how weak I am gotten to be, and that I must now beyond doubt have the remedy? Wilt thou not help me to it?

SHE verily, said he; but in what wise wilt thou have it? He spake as a man distraught & redeless; but she smiled on him pleasantly, and said: Now by this time shouldst thou have devised what was to do, & spared me the pain thereof. Two things I need of thee: the first and most, to be put out of the castle privily betimes in the morning when nought is stirring; the second, to have my palfrey awaiting me somewhat anigh the gate, so that I may not have to go afoot; for I am become soft & feeble with all this house-life.

LEONARD seemed to wake up with that word. He said: I have the key of the priest's door of the chapel, & the pouter beyond it; that shall be thine outgate, lady. I will come and scratch at thy chamber-door much betimes, & I will see to it that thy palfrey is bestowed in the bower wherein thou didst rest the first night thou camest among us. She said: I trust thee, friend. And she thanked him sweetly, and then rose

up and fell to pacing the hall up and down. Leonard hung about watching her awhile, she nought forbidding him, for her thoughts were elsewhere, and she had forgotten him; and at last he went his ways to set about doing what she would.

Chapter VII. Birdalene fares on her adventure.

DAWN WAS but just beginning when Birdalene awoke & though she had not heard Leonard at the door, she sprang out of bed & clad herself, doing on her black gown; and she had a scrip with some bread therein, & a sharp knife at her girdle. Then even as she had done she heard the priest's nail on the door, and she turned thereto; but as she went, her eye caught her bow & quiver of arrows where they hung on the wall, so she took the bow in her hand and slung the quiver over her shoulder ere she opened the door and found Leonard standing there. Neither of them spake aught, but they stole downstairs, and so to the chapel and out by the priest's door and the pouter in the wall nook, and were presently out in the fresh morning air; and Birdalene was joyous and lightfoot, and scarce



felt the earth beneath her soles for pleasure of her hope where, as she deemed she had a thing to crave of the Stony folk, if they should come alive before her. Fain were she, if she might withal, to give a joy to some other; so that when they were gone but a little way from the castle she reached out her hand to Leonard & took his, & said: Hand in hand we walked when first I went this way, & I deemed thee kind and friendly then, & even so hast thou been since.

HE was dumbfounded at first for joy of the touch of her hand & the sweetness of her words; but presently he awoke to her confused & stammering, & praised her that she had thought to take her bow and arrows. For, said he that they might stand her in stead for defence or for getting of food, or for an excuse for wending the woods. She nodded yeasay unto him, & bade him again to bide three days for her, and if she came not again in that time, to make a clean breast of it to Sir Hymen.

SHE said the priest, and then... Why, what then? He can but shove me out by the shoulders, and then I can seek to the little house of canons that is at Gate Cross

on the road to Greenford.

My friend' said Birdalone, how we women think of nothing at all but ourselves! And wilt thou be thrust out of thine home for helping me herein? Why did I not look to my palfrey myself? And the keys I might have stolen from thee, always with thy good will. But now I see that I have done thee a hurt.

SHO Sir Leonard: Lady, a priest hath a home wheresoever is an house of religion. There is no harm done, save Sir Hymen is bethink him of hanging me over the battlements and doubt he will not with a priest. Moreover, I pray thee believe, that wert thou gone from the castle, house & home were none for me there. And he looked upon her piteously, as if he were beseeching.

BUT she knew not what to say, & hung her head down; and presently they were come to the bower in the copse, which this time was a stable for Birdalone's palfrey instead of a chamber for herself. So Leonard went in & fetched out the comely beast; and Birdalone stood with him just in the cover of the copse waiting to put her foot in the stirrup; but she might not but abide to look upon the priest, who stood there as if he were

striving with his words.

SO she said. Now is need of haate to be gone. Yet one word, my friend: Is there aught betwixt us wherein I have done thee wrong? If so it be, I pray thee to say out what it is; for it may be (though I think it not) thou shalt not see me again from henceforth.

HE caught his breath, as if he had much ado to refrain the sobbing; but he mastered it, and said: Lady & dear friend, if I see thee not again, I heed not what shall befall me. Thou hast done me no wrong. There is this only betwixt us, that I love thee, and thou lovest not me.

HE looked on him sweetly and pitifully, and said. I may not choose but understand thy word, to wit, that thy love for me is the desire of a man toward a woman, & that is unhappy; for I love thee indeed, but not as a woman loveth a man. It is best to say thus much to thee downright. But I feel in my heart that when I have said it, it is as much as to say that I cannot help thee, and therefore am I sorry indred.

HE stood before her abashed, but he said at last: Now art thou so sweet, and so kind, & so true, that I must perforce love thee yet more; and this maketh me

bold to say that thou mayst help me a little, or so me seemeth. How so? said Birdalone.

QUOTH HE If thou wouldst suffer me to kiss thy face this once. She shook her head, & spake: How may it avail thee, when it is for once, & once only, as forsooth it must be? Yet it is thy choice, not mine, & I will not naysay thee.

AND therewith she put up her face to him, & he kissed her cheek without touching her otherwise, & then he kissed her mouth; and she knew that he was both timorous and sad, and she was ashamed to look on him, or to speak to him any more, lest she should behold him ashamed; so she but said: farewell, friend, till to-morrow at least.

AND therewith her foot was in the stirrup, & anon she sat in the saddle, and her palfrey was ambling briskly on the way she would.

Chapter IX. Birdalone comes to the Black Valley.

LITTLE is to tell of Birdalone's journey unto the knoll above the Black Valley of the Greywethers.

It was about noon when she came there, and had met but few folk on the way, and those few were husbandmen, or car-

**the Days of
Hiding**



lines, or maidens wending a-field betimes not far from the Castle of the Quest.

NOW she sat on her horse & looked down into the dale & its stony people once more, & saw nought stirring save three ravens who, not far off, were flapping about from stone to stone of the Greywethers, & croaking loud to each other as if some tidings were toward. She watched their play for a little, and then gat off her horse, and sat down on the grass of the knoll, & drew forth her victual, and ate and drank; for she deemed it happier to eat and drink there than in the very jaws of the Black Valley.

SOON was her dinner done, and then she got to her saddle again, and rode slowly down to the little stream, & along it toward the valley & the gates of the mountains, which she had been fain to pass through; but now, as had happed with her that morning when she was bound for the Sending Boat, somewhat she hung back from the adventure, and when she lacked but some five score yards from the very dale itself, she lighted down again, & let her way-beast bite the grass, while she sat down & watched the rippling water.

IN a while she drew off shoon and hosen, and stood in the shallow ripple, and bathed her hands and face withal, and stooped up stream and drank from the hollow of her hands, and so stepped ashore and was waxen hardier; then she strung her bow and looked to the shafts in her quiver, & did on her foot-gear, and mounted once more, & so rode a brisk amble right on into the dale, and was soon come amongst the Greywethers; & she saw that they were a many, & that all the bottom of the dale was besprinkled with them on either side of the stream, and some stood in the very stream itself, the ground whereof was black even as the rest of the valley, although the water ran over it as clear as glass.

BUT for the dale, now she was fairly within it, she could see but a little way up it, for it winded much, & at first away from her left hand, and the sides of it went up in somewhat steep screes on either side, which were topped with mere upright staves and burge of black rock; and these were specially big and out-thrusting on the right hand of her; and but a furlong ahead of where she was, one of these burge thrust out past the verge

and came down sheer into the dale, & straitened it so much that there was but little way save by the stream itself which ran swift indeed but not deep, even there where it was straitened by the sheer rocks.

UP the dale would she go, whatever was before her & now she told herself her very purpose, as forsooth she scarce had heretofore to wit, that she would abide in the dale the night over and see what should betide, and if those wights should chance to come alive then she looked to have valiance enough to face them and crave the fulfilment of her desire.

She took the water and rode the stream till she was past the said sheer rock & then the valley widened again, and presently was wider than it was in the beginning, and here again were the Grey-wethers grown many more and closer together & as she deemed, were set in rings round about one very big one, which, forsooth, was somewhat in the shape of a man sitting down with his hands laid on his knees.

BIRDALONE reined up for a minute, and looked about her, and then went up on to the grass, and rode straight to the said big stone,

and there lighted down from off her horse again, and stood by the stone & pondered. Presently she deemed that she saw something dark moving just beyond the stone but if it were so, it was gone in a twinkling; nevertheless she stood affrighted, and stared before her long and saw no more, but yet for a while durst not move hand nor foot.

Last her courage came again, and she thought: Yet how if this great chieftain be inwardly stirring & will come awake? Shall I say the word now, lest hereafter it be of no avail? Therewith she stretched out her right hand and laid it on the stone, & spake aloud O Earth thou and thy first children, I crave of you that he may come back now at once and loving me. And her voice sounded strange and unkennt to her in that solitude, and she rued it that she had spoken.

*THE NEW TIDINGS
THERWITHAL FOR
THE MOMENT AFTER
SHE HAD SPOKEN,
A TALL MAN DREW
OUT FROM BEHIND
THE BIG STONE, & STOOD BEFORE
HER, AND AT FIRST IT WAS IN HER*

THE new tidings therewithal for the moment after she had spoken, a tall man drew out from behind the big stone, & stood before her, and at first it was in her

*THE NEW TIDINGS
THERWITHAL FOR
THE MOMENT AFTER
SHE HAD SPOKEN,
A TALL MAN DREW
OUT FROM BEHIND
THE BIG STONE, & STOOD BEFORE
HER, AND AT FIRST IT WAS IN HER*

mind that this was the very chieftain come alive for her, and for terror she was like to swoon this time; but he spake nought a while, but looked on her eagerly and curiously.

SHE came to herself presently, so much that she could see him clearly, & was now growing more ashamed than afraid, when she saw beyond doubt that the man was of the sons of Adam; but what with her shame that was now, & her fear that had been, she yet had no might to move, but stood there pale and trembling like a leaf, & might scarce keep her feet.

NOW the new-comer bowed before her smiling, & said: I ask thy pardon, fair damsel (or indeed I should say fairest damsel), that I have scared thee. But sooth to say I beheld thee coming riding, and even from a little aloof I could see that nought which might befall could ever make it up to me for not seeing thee close at hand and hearing thee speak. Wherefore I hid myself behind the king's stone here; & no harm is done thereby I trow; for now I see that the colour is coming into thy cheeks again, and thy fear is gone. And as for me, thou hast not fled away from me, as thou wouldst have done had I not

hidden & come on thee suddenly; and then thou being horsed and I unhorsed, thou wouldst have escaped me, whereas now thou art within reach of my hand. Then he smiled, and said: furthermore, thou hast told so little of thy secret to this stony king here, that I am little the wiser for thy word, & thou the little more betrayed. Only this I will say, that if he loveth thee not, he is more of a fool than I be.

HE reached out his hand to hers, but she drew it aback, & grew yet more ashamed, & could find no word for him. His voice was soft & full, and he spake deftly, but she was not content with it for its kindness, as she had been with all the other men whom she had met since she left the house under the Wood. & she durst not trust her hand to him.

BUT for his aspect, she saw that he was tall and well-knit, and goodly of fashion; dark-haired, with long hazel eyes, smooth-checked and bright-glinned; his nose long, and a little bent over at the end, & coming down close to his lips, which were full and red; his face was hairless save for a little lip-beard. He was so clad, that he had no helm on his head, but a little hat with a

broad gold piece in the front thereof; he was girt to a long sword, & had an anlace also in his belt, and Birdalone saw the rings of a fine hauberk at his collar and knees; otherwise he was not armed. Over his hauberk he wore a black surcoat, without device of any kind, & his foot and leg gear were of the same hue; wherefore may we call him the Black Knight. Sooth to say, for all his soft speech, she feared him & rued the meeting of him.

When he spake to her again I see that thou art wroth with me lady, but may happen it is not so ill that I have happened on thee; for this dale hath a bad name for more than one thing, and is scarce meet for damsels to wander in. But now since thou hast a weaponed man with thee, and thou, by Hilhallowe, not utterly unarmed, thou mayst well go up the valley and see something more thereof. So come now, mount thine horse again, and I will lead him for thee.

When Birdalone found speech & said knight, for such thou seemest to me, I deem now that I have no need to fare further in this dale, but I will get me into the saddle & turn my horse's head outward again, giving thee

good day first and thanking thee for thy courtesy. And therewith she turned to get to her palfrey, but sore trembling the while; but he followed her & said, with brow somewhat knitted. Nay, lady, I have left my horse somewhat further up, and I must go back to fetch him, that we may wend out of the dale together. for I will not suffer thee to flee from me and fall into the hands of evil wights, be they ghosts or living men, and that the less since I have heard the speech in thy mouth, as of honey and cream and roses. Therefore if thou go out of the dale, I shall go with thee afoot, leading thine horse. And look to it if it be courteous to unhorse a knight, who is ready to be thy servant. Moreover, since thou hast come to this dale of wonder, & mayst leave it safely, pity it were that thou shouldst see nought thereof, for strange is it forsooth, and belike thou shalt never seek thither again. Wherefore I crave of thee, once more, to mount thine horse & let me lead thee up the dale.

When she spake these last words, rather as one giving a command than making a prayer, & Birdalone feared him now sorely. forsooth she had her bended bow in hand, but let alone that the knight was

over near to her that she might get a shaft out of her quiver & nock it. ere he should run in on her, & let alone also that he was byrned, she scarce deemed that it behoved her to play or wound the man because she would be quit of him. Wherefore angrily, and with a flushed face, she answered him So shall it be then, Sir Knight: or rather so must it be, since thou compellest me.

He laughed & said Nay, now thou art angry. I compel thee not, I but say that it will not do for thee to compel me to leave thee Go which way thou wilt, up the dale, or down it and out of it, it is all one unto me, so long as I am with thee forbooth, damsel, I have said harder words to ladies who have done my pleasure & not deemed themselves compelled.

She, paled but answered nought: then she mounted her palfrey, and the knight went to her bridle-rein without more words. & so led her on up the valley by the eastward way amongst the Grey-wethers.

Chapter XI. How the knight led
the lady to the valley of the Grey-wethers

As they went, the knight fell a talking to Kirdalone, and that without any of the covert meaning which he had used ere while, & he showed her places in the dale, as caverns under the burghs, & little coves in the stream, and certain stones amongst the Grey-wethers whereof stories ran; and how this and the other one had fared in dealings with the land-wights, and how one had perished, & another had been made happy & so forth. Withal he told of the mountain-folk, and in especial how they of the plains, when he was scarce more than a boy had met them in battle in that same dale & how fierce the fight was whereas the mountain-men were fighting for a life of desires accomplished, which hitherto had been but a dream unto them & the men of the plain fought for dear life itself, and for all that made it aught save death in life. Wherefore up and down the dale they fought, at first in ordered ranks and then in knots, and lastly sword to sword & man to man, till there was no foot of grass or black sand there which had not its shower of blood; and the stream was choked with

the dead, and ran red out of the dale; till at last well-nigh all the host of the mountain-men was fallen, & scarce less of the folk of the plains, but these men held the field and had the victory.

THIS he told her deftly and well, and though he said not so right out, yet let her wot that, youth as he was, he was of the battle; & his voice was clear and good, and Birdalone's wrath ran off her, & she hearkened his tale, and even asked him a question here and there; & so courteous was this Black Knight now become, that Birdalone began to think that she had fallen short of courtesy to him, because of her fear and the weariness of the waiting which so oppressed her; and that shamed and irked her, for she would fain be of all courtesy. Wherefore now she deemed that perchance she had erred in deeming him an evil man; & she looked on him from time to time, and deemed him goodly of fashion; she thought his eyes were deep, & his face sober and fair of aspect, but that his nose turned down at the end, and was overthin at the bridge, and moreover his lips looked over-sweet and licorous.

NOW when the knight was silent of his tale, Birdalone fell to asking him questions sweetly concerning this Stony People which was all about them, and he told her all he knew, soberly enough at first, yet indeed ended by mocking them somewhat, but mocked not at her any more. At last he said, fair lady, that thou hast not come here all for nought I partly know by those words which I heard come from thy mouth at the King's Stone, wherefore I marvelled indeed when I heard thee say that thou wouldst go straight out of the dale; for I had deemed thee desirous of trying the adventure of waking this Stony People a night/tide. forsooth was this thy mind when thou soughtest hither to the dale?

SHE reddened at his word, and yea said him shortly. Then said he: Is it not thy mind still? Sir, said she, as now I have got to fear it. Yea? & that is strange, said he, for thou wouldst have waked the dale alone; & now thou art no longer alone, but hast me to watch and ward thy waking, thou art more afraid.

SHE looked on his face steadily, to wot if there were no half-hidden smile therein; but her seemed that he spake in all soberness:

Part IV. Of
Birdalone
Abiding

and she had nought to say to him save this: 'Sir, I am now become afraid of the waking.' And he said no more thereof.

NOW they went thus, & Birdalone not without pleasure, since her fear of the knight was minished, some three hours up the dale, and still were the Greywethers everywhere about them, so that there were well-nigh as many hours as miles in their wending.

AT last they seemed to be drawing nigh to the head of the dale, and the burges & the rocks were before them all round it as a wall, though yet about a mile aloof at the further end; & this end it was wider than elsewhere.

GAME they then to a level space of greensward clear of the grey stones, which were drawn all around it in ordered rings, so that it was as some doom-ring of an ancient people; and within the said space Birdalone beheld a great black horse tethered and cropping the grass. The knight led her into the ring, & said: 'Now are we come home for the present, my lady, & if it please thee to light down we shall presently eat and drink & aithence talk a little.' And he drew nigh to help her off her horse, but she suffered him not, and lighted

down of herself; but if she suffered not his hand, his eyes she must needs suffer, as he gazed greedily on the trimness of her feet and legs in her sliding from her horse.

NOW SOEVER, he took her hand and led her to a little mound on the other side of the ring, & bade her sit down there, and so did she, & from under the nighest of the stones he drew forth a pair of saddle-bags, and took victual and wine thence, and they ate & drank together like old companions. And now Birdalone told herself that the knight was frank & friendly; yet forsooth she wotted that her heart scarce trowed what it feigned, & that she yet feared him.

*Now, as yet, I have not shown
get them from out of the Black
Valley of the Greywethers &*

WHEN they had dined, and had sat a while talking, the knight said: 'I will ask thee once more wherefore thou must needs depart from this dale leaving the Greywethers unwaked? Yet this must I tell thee first, that this ring at the dale's end is the only one due place where the Greywethers can be rightly waked, and that there be few

who wot this. Wilt thou not tell me then what is in thy mind?

BIRDALONE gazed down on the ground a while; then she lifted up her head and looked on the Black Knight, and said: Sir Knight, we have been brought so close together to-day, and as meseemeth I am so wholly in thy power, that I will tell thee the very truth as it is. My mind it was to wake the dale here to-night, & take what might befall me. And well indeed might I fear the adventure, which few, meseemeth, would not fear. But so strong is my longing for that which I would crave of these wights, that it overmastered my fear, and my purpose held when I entered the dale. Then I met thee; & here again is the truth, take it how thou wilt, that presently I feared thee, and yet I fear thee; for I have noted thee closely all this while, and have seen of thee, that thou art over heedful of my poor body, and wouldst have it for thine own if thou mightest. And there is this in thee also, as I deem, though thou thyself mayst not know it, that thou wouldst have thy pleasure of me whether it please me or grieve me; and this thy pleasure must I needs again say; for though thou mayest hereafter become my friend,

(1)

yet are there other friends of mine who be such, that my grief would mar any pleasure they might have. Hast thou heard and understood?

SHE looked on his face steadily as she spake, and saw that it flushed, and darkened, and scowled, & that his hands were clenched, & his teeth set hard together. And again she spake: but thou shalt know that beside these shot-weapons, I have a thing here in my girdle that may serve either against thee or against me, if need drive me thereto; wherefore I will pray thee to forbear. forsooth, thou shalt presently happen on other women, who shall be better unto thee than I can be.

BUT THEN Birdalone had spoken the word, the knight's face had cleared, & he laughed aloud & said: He to thy last words, therein at least thou liest, my lady. But for the rest, I see that it must all be as thou wilt. Yea, if such be thy will, we shall presently to horse and ride down the dale again, and at the end thereof I shall leave thee to go home alone at thy will. She said: for that I can thee thank with all my heart. But why hast thou not asked me of whence I am, and whither I would go home?

Part IV
The end of
the book

BRYN he laughed & said.
Because I know already.
I have had more than two
or three tales from them who
have seen thee, or spoken un-
to others who have seen thee,
how the gay Champions of the
Castle of the Quest had fished
up a wondrous pearl of price
from out of the Great Water;
& when I set eyes on thy beau-
ty, I knew that the said pearl
could be nowhere else than un-
der mine eyes.

AT that pass she said,
and blushed not, but
now tell me the truth
as I have told thee, why thou
art so instant with me to wake
the Greywethers to night? He
kept silence a while & as she
looked on him, she thought
she saw confusion in his face:
but at last he said: Thou wert
wrong in saying that I heeded
not thy pleasure, and solace,
and welfare Me seemed, & yet
doth, that it might be to thine
avail to wake the Greywethers
to night; & never again mayst
thou have a chance of the wak-
ing, as erst I said. I say I wish
thee to have fulfilment of thy
craving. Nor hast thou aught
to fear of them, seeing that it
is but dastards and fools that
they undo.

HE broke off his speech,
& Birdalone yet looked
on him, and after a lit-

tle he said: Thou drawest the
truth out of me; for moreover
I would have thee with me long-
er than thou wouldst be if we
but rode together down the
water and out of the dale, and
thou to fare away alone.

BIRDALONE spake in a
while, and that while he
gazed upon her eagerly;
she said: I shall now tell thee
that I shall abide the advent-
ure of the waking to night,
whatever befall. And I, said
he, will so do that thou mayst
fear me the less; for I will un-
arm me when the night com-
eth, & thou thyself shalt keep
mine hauberk and sword and
anlace. She said: It is well;
I will take that, lest desire o-
vermaster thee.

SHE spake no more of
it at that time, and it
was now five hours af-
ter noon. Birdalone arose, for
she found it hard to sit still &
abide nightfall: she went with-
out the two first rings of the
Greywethers, which were set in
more open order beyond that,
& she looked all about her, to
the black rocks on either side,
& to the great black wall at the
dale's ending, & the blue moun-
tains aloof beyond it; then
down toward the plain of the
dale came her eyes, & she look-
ed through the tangle of the
grey stones. Now she seem-

ed to be looking more intently upon some one thing; with that she called to her the Black Knight, who was hanging about watching her, & she said to him: fair sir, art thou clear seeing and far seeing? I am not thought to be purblind, quoth he. Then Birdalone reached out her hand & pointed & said: Canst thou see aught which thou didst not look to see, there, up the dale as I point? Said he: All too clear I see the hand and the wrist of thee, & that blinds me to aught else. I pray thee fool not, she said, but look heedfully, and thou mayst see what I see, and then tell me what it means. Though forsooth I am exceeding in far sight.

HE LOOKED under the sharp of his hand heedfully, then he turned unto her & said: By Allhallows! there is in thee every excellency! Thou art right; I see a bay horse up there feeding on the bites of grass amongst the Greywethers. Look again! she said; what else canst thou see? Is there aught anigh to the bay horse which is like to the gleam and glitter of metal? Christ said he, once more thou art right. There be weaponed men in the dale. Carry not, I beseech thee, but get to horse forthright, and I will do

no less.

HEN THE RE goeth the waking of the dale for this time, said Birdalone, laughing. But art thou not in haste fair sir? may not these be friends?

HEN THE knight laid his hand upon her shoulder, & thrust her on toward her palfrey, and spake fiercely, but not loud: Thee I pray not to fool now! There is not a minute to spare. If thou deemest me evil, as I think thou dost, there are worse than I, I tell thee, there are worse. But we will talk of it when we be in the saddle, & clear of this accursed dale.

BIRDALONE knew not what to do save obey him, so she lightly gat into her saddle, and followed him, for he was mounted in a twinkling, & riding on. He led out of the ring, & fell to threading the maze of the Greywethers, keeping ever toward the steep side of the dale, which was on that hand that looked toward the Castle of the Quest, that is to say, the eastern bent.

Birdalone wondered at this leading, & when she was come up with the knight she spake to him breathlessly, and said: But, fair sir, why wend we not down the dale? He answered first, lady, because we must hide us from them straightway:

and next because they be more than we many more and their horses be fresh, while thine at least is somewhat spent; and if they were to spur down the dale in chase, they would soon be upon us; for think not that I would escape and leave thee behind.

SYD Birdaloue: But thou knowest them, then, what they be? since thou wottest of their numbers & their riding. Hearken now! Upon thy soul and thy salvation, be they more friends unto thee than unto me?

HE said, as he rode on a little slower than erst: Upon my soul and my salvation I swear it, that the men yonder be of the worst unfriends to thee that may be in the world. And now, lady, I promise thee that I will unravel thee the riddle, and tell thee the whole truth of these haps, whatsoever may come of my words, when we be in a safer place than this; and meantime I beseech thee to trust in me thus far, as to believe that I am leading thee out of the very worst peril that might befall thee. Nay, thou must needs trust me; for I tell thee, that though I now love thee better than all the world and all that is in it, I would slay thee here in this dale rather than suffer

thee to fall into the hands of these men.

BIRDALONE heard him with a sick heart; but such passion went with his words that she believed what he said; and she spake softly: Sir, I will trust thee thus far; but I beseech thee to have pity upon a poor maiden who hath had but little pity shown unto her until these latter days; & then: O woe's me, to have fallen out of the kindness and love once more!

THE Black Knight spake to her in a little while, & said: What pity I can to thee, that I will. Once more I tell thee, that if thou but knew it thou wouldst thank me indeed for what I have done for thee in this hour; and henceforth I will do & forbear with thee to the uttermost that love will suffer me. But lo thou! here are we safe for this present; but we must nowise tarry.

BIRDALONE looked & saw that they were come to the wall of the dale, & that there it went down sheer to the plain thereof, & that before them was a cleft that narrowed speedily, & over which the rocks well nigh met, so that it was indeed almost a cave. They rode into it straightway, and when that they had gone but a little, and because it had



winded somewhat, they could but see the main valley as a star of light behind them, then it narrowed no more, but was as a dismal street of the straitest, whiles lighter & whiles darker, according as the rocks roofed it in overhead or drew away from it. Long they rode, and whiles came trickles of water from out the rocks on one hand or the other; and now & again they met a stream which covered all the ground of the pass from side to side for the depth of a foot or more. Great rocks also were strewn over their path every here and there, so that whiles must they needs dismount and toil afoot over the rugged stones; and in most places the way was toilsome & difficult. The knight spake little to Birdalene, save to tell her of the way, and warn her where it was perilous; & she, for her part, was silent, partly for fear of the strange man, or, it might be, even for hatred of him, who had thus brought her into such sore trouble, & partly for grief, for, with all torment of sorrow, she kept turning over & over in her mind whether her friends had yet come home to the Castle of the Quest, and whether they would go seek her to deliver her. And such shame took hold of her when she thought of their grief and confusion of

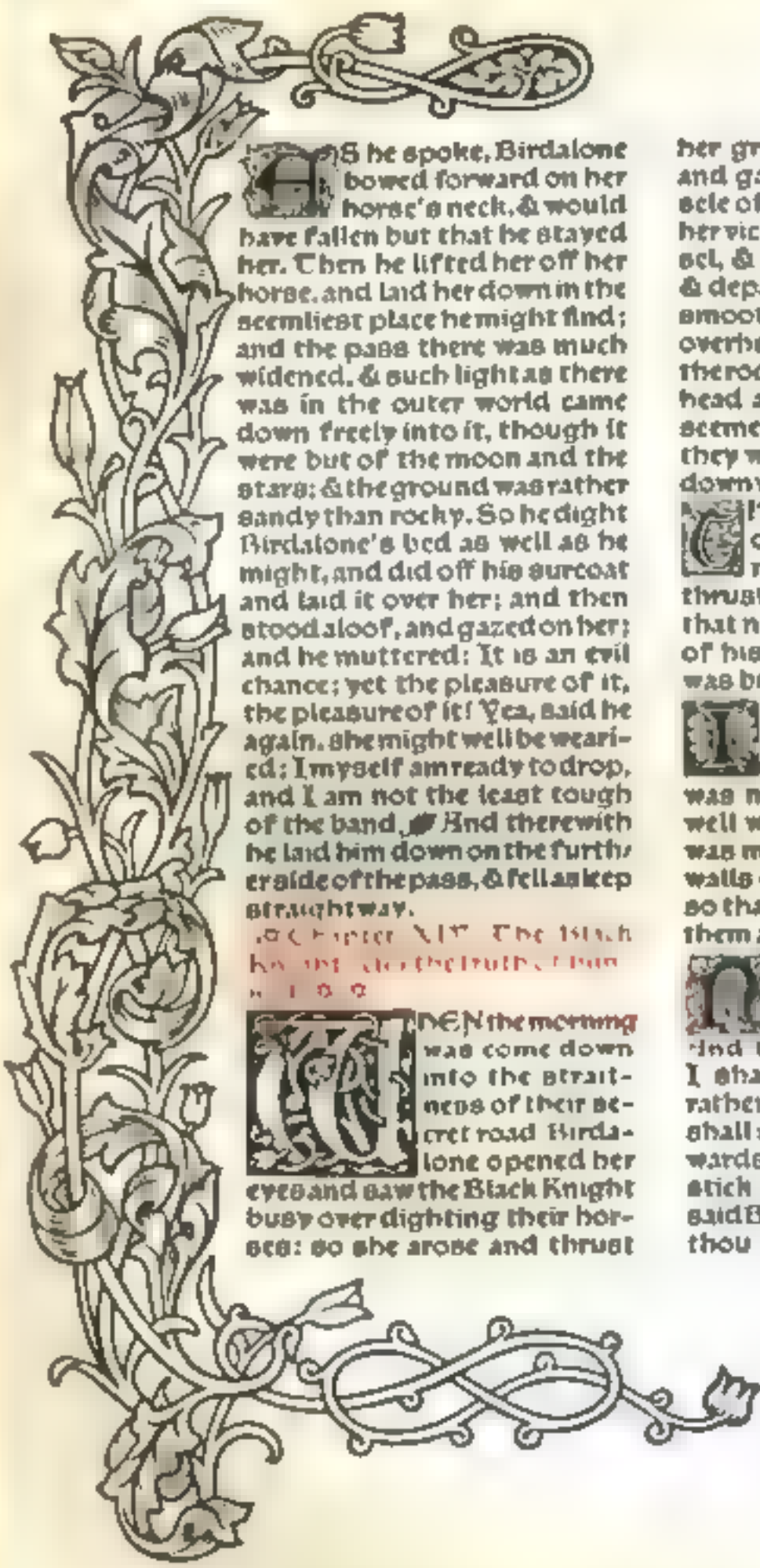
soul when they should come home & find her gone, that she set her mind to asking if it had not been better had she never met them. Yet in good sooth her mind would not shape the thought, howsoever she bade it.

Chapter XIII. Now they rest for the night in the Strait.

AT last when they had been going a long while, it might be some six hours and it had long been night in the world without but moonlight, and they had rested but seldom, and then but for short whiles, the knight drew rein and upake to Birdalene, & asked her was she not weary. O yes, she said: I was at point to pray thee suffer me to get off & lie down on the bare rock. To say sooth, I am now too weary to think of any peril, or what thou art, or whither we be going. He said hymedeeming we be now half through this mountain highway, & belike there is little peril in our resting; for I think not that any one of them knoweth of this pass, or would dare it if he did; & they doubtless came into the dale by the upper pass, which is strait enough, but light and open.

Book IV. Of
the Day and
Night.





WHEN he spoke, Birdalone bowed forward on her horse's neck, & would have fallen but that he stayed her. Then he lifted her off her horse, and laid her down in the seemliest place he might find; and the pass there was much widened, & such light as there was in the outer world came down freely into it, though it were but of the moon and the stars; & the ground was rather sandy than rocky. So he dight Birdalone's bed as well as he might, and did off his surcoat and laid it over her; and then stood aloof, and gazed on her; and he muttered: It is an evil chance; yet the pleasure of it, the pleasure of it! Yea, said he again, she might well be wearied; I myself am ready to drop, and I am not the least tough of the band. And therewith he laid him down on the further side of the pass, & fell asleep straightway.

Chapter XIX The Black Knight doth the truth tell
102

WHEN the morning was come down into the straitness of their secret road Birdalone opened her eyes and saw the Black Knight busy over dighting their horses: so she arose and thrust

her grief back into her heart, and gave her fellow-farer the side of the day, & he brought her victual, and they ate a morsel, & gat to horse thereafter & departed; & the way became smoother, and it was lighter overhead everywhere now, and the rocks never again met overhead athwart the way; and it seemed to Birdalone that now they were wending somewhat downward.

THE knight was courteous unto Birdalone, and no longer for the present thrust his love upon her, so that now she had some solace of his fellowship, though he was but few-spoken to her.

IT WAS betimes when they arose, & they rode all the morning till it was noon, which they might well wot of, because the way was much wider, and the cliff-walls of the pass much lower, so that the sun shone in upon them and cheered them.

TOLD the Black Knight drew rein & said Shall we rest, lady, and eat? And thereafter, if thou wilt, I shall tell thee my tale. Or rather, if thou wilt suffer me, I shall speak first and eat afterwards, or else the morsel might stick in my throat. Knight, said Birdalone, smiling, I hope thou hast no lie to swallow

down before the meat. Nay, lady, said he, no lie that is of moment at least.

So they lighted down, and Birdalone sat on the way-side under a birch-bush that came thrusting out from the rock, and the knight stood before her, hanging his head, as though he were one accused who would plead his cause; & he began:

LADY, I must tell thee first of all, that to-day I have done as an unfaithful servant and a traitor to my lord. Said Birdalone simply: Shall I tell thee the truth, & say that from the first I seemed to see in thee that thou wert scarce trusty? He said: Well, that mind I saw in thee, and it went to my heart that thou shouldst think it, and that it should be no less than true. But now I must tell thee, that it is for thy sake that I have been untrusty to my lord. How so? said she. Quoth he: Heardst thou ever of the Red Knight? Yea, said Birdalone, I have heard of him ever as a tyrant and oppressor. Then she grew pale & said: Art thou he? Nay, said the knight, I am but a kinsman of his, and his best-trusted man; nor have I failed him ever till yesterday.

WE kept silence a while, and then said: This is the true tale that we have had tidings of thee & of thy ridings abroad with that old fool, Sir Hymeris, & how thou hadst been twice to look into the Black Valley. This I say hath the Red One heard, & the heart of him was touched by the mere hearsay of thee; & moreover 'tis blessed bread to him the doing of any grief to the knights of Quest Castle; wherefore he hath sent me to hang about the dale, to lay hands on thee if I might; for he knew, being wise, that thou wouldst hanker after it; and moreover he let one of his wise women sit out in spells on thee. So I espied, and happened on thee all alone; and mine errand it was, since I came upon thee thus, to draw thee till I had thee safe at home in the Red Hold. Forsooth I began mine errand duly, & fell to beguiling thee, so that thou mayst well have seen the traitor in me. But then, and then my heart failed me, because I fell, not to desiring thee as coveting my master's chattel, but to loving thee & longing for thee as my fellow and speech-friend. And I said to myself: Into the Red Hold she shall not go if I may hinder it.

BIRDALONE was very pale, but she refrained her from grief and fear, and said: But those horsed & weaponed men up the dale, who were they? He said: I will not lie now, not even a little; they came into the dale by that upper pass whereof I told thee; they were of our men; I brought them. I was never all alone in the dale; I was to have fetched thee to them, so that thou mightest not see a rout of folk and flee away; and then would we all have gone home together by the upper pass. But we two must have gone on unto them in the dale's head, whereas for all that I could say I might not bring them down into that doomring where we ate and talked yesterday. We two have been valanter than thou mayst have deemed, to have done the deed of dining there; for all men fear it. But as for me, I have been there more than twice or thrice, & thence have I wandered, & found this pass wherein now we be; concerning which I have held my tongue, deeming that it might one day serve my turn; as it hath done now abundantly, since it hath been a refuge unto thee.

NAY, but whither are we going now? said Birdalone; is it perchance to

the Red Hold? Nay, never, said the knight, so help me God and Allhallows!

HITHER then? said Birdalone; tell me, that I may at least trust thee, even though I owe thee for all the pain and grief which thou hast wrought me. He reddened & said: Wait a while; I bring thee to no ill place; there shall no harm befall thee. And he fretted and fumed, and was confused of speech and look, and then he said: When we come there I shall belike crave a boon of thee.

BUT I crave a boon of thee here and now, said Birdalone. Wipe away thine offence to me & take me back to my friends & the Castle of the Quest; for mayst thou yet be dear unto me, though maybe not wholly as thou wouldst have it. And she reached out her two hands toward him.

His breast heaved, and he seemed nigh to weeping; but he said: Nay, lady, ask me not here and now, but there & to-morrow. But again I swear to thee by thine hands that to the Red Hold I will not bring thee, nor suffer thee to be brought, if I may hinder it; nay, not though I give my life therefor.

BIRDALONE was silent
a while; then she said:
And what shall befall me
if I come to the Red Dold?
What is the Red knight and
what would he do with me?
Baid he: The Red Knight is
terrible & fierce & wise, and I
fear him I. He held his peace,
and said I must needs say it,
that to thee he would have been
as Death & the Devil. He would
have bedded thee first. She
broke in: Nay, never! & flushed
very red. But the knight went
on: And after, I wot not: that
were according to his mood.
And as to thy never, lady, thou
wottest not the like of him or
of the folk he hath about him.
Such as thou? she said an-
grily. Nay, he said, far worse
than me: men who fare little
afield, and are not sweetened
by adventures and war-perils;
and women worsar yet; and far
worsar were they dealing with a
woman. She was silent again
awhile, and paled once more;
then her colour came back to
her, and she held out her hand
to him and said kindly: Thou
being what thou art, I thank
thee for thy dealings with me;
& now until tomorrow, when
I shall ask thee of that again, I
am friends with thee: so come
now, and let us eat and drink
together.

He took her hand & kissed
it, and then came and sat
down meekly beside her,
and they ate and drank in that
wild place as though they had
been friends of long acquaint-
ance.

*Chapter XX The Black knight
brings Birdalone to the tower
in the Dale of*

WHEN they had
made an end
of their meal,
they gat to
horse again &
rode on their
ways; and every mile now was
their road the easier, the pass
wider, and its walls lower and
now also more broken: till at
last they began to go down hill
swiftly, and after a little their
road seemed to be swallowed
in a great thicket of hornbeam
and holly: but the knight rode
on & entered the said thicket,
& ever found some way amidst
the branches, though they were
presently in the very thick of
the trees, and saw no daylight
between the trunks for well-
nigh an hour, whereas the wood
was thick and tangled, & they
had to thread their way betwixt
its mazes.

AT last the wood began
to grow thinner before
them, & the white light
to show between the trunks;
& Birdalone deemed that she

*Part IV Of
the Damned
Abiding*



heard the sound of falling water, & presently was sure thereof; and the knight spake to her: Patience, my lady; now are we near home for to-day. She nodded kindly to him, and therewith they rode on to open ground, & were on the side of a steep bent, broken on their right hands into a sheer cliff, as Birdalone saw when the knight led her to the edge & bade her look over. Then she saw down into a fair dale lying far below them, through the which ran a little river, clear and swift, but not riotous, after it had fallen over a force at the upper end of the dale, and made the sound of water which she had heard. The said dale was so, that what soever was on the other side thereof was hidden by tall and great trees, that stood close together some twenty yards aloof from the stream, & betwixt them & it was fair greenward with a few bushes and thorn-trees thereon.

QUOTH THE knight: Down there shall we rest till to-morrow, if it please thee, lady; and since the sun will set in an hour, we were best on our way at once. It pleases me well, said Birdalone, & I long to tread the turf by the river-side, for I am weary as weary may be of the saddle and the pass.

SO down the bent they rode, and it was but a little ere they had ridden it to an end, and had met the river as it swept round the cliff-wall of the valley; & they rode through it, and came on to the pleasant greenward asforesaid under the trees; and in a bight of the wood was a bower buikled of turf & thatched with reed; and there, by the bidding of the knight, they alighted; and the knight said: This is thine house for to-night, my lady; & thou mayest lie therein all safety after thou hast supped, and mayst have my weapons by thy side if thou wilt, while I lie under the trees yonder. And if thou wilt bathe thee in the cool water, to comfort thee after the long ride & the weariness, I swear by thy hand that I will take myself out of eye-shot & abide aloof till thou call me.

SAYD Birdalone, smiling somewhat fair air, I will not have my watch and ward unarmed; keep thou thy weapons; & thou wilt not forget, perchance, that I am not wholly unarmed, whereas I have my bow and arrows & my knife here. And as to my bathing, I will take thee at thy word, and bid thee go aloof a while now at once; for I will go down to the water; & if thou spy upon

me, then wilt it be thy shame and not mine.

THE knight went his way therewith, and Birdalone went down to the water & unclad her; but ere she stepped into the river, she laid her bow and three shafts on the lip thereof. Then she took the water, and disported her merrily therein; & now, forsooth, she was nowise downcast, for she said to herself, this man is not all evil, and he loveth me well, and I look for it that tomorrow he will bring me on my way toward the Castle of the Quest, for mere love of me; & then shall he be a dear friend to me, and I will comfort him what I can for as long as we both live.

She came out of the water and clad her, and then called aloud for the knight, & he came speedily unto her, as if he had been not exceeding far away, though he swore with a great oath that he had nowise espied her. She answered him nought, & they went side by side to the bower; and there the knight dight the victual, & they sat together & ate their meat like old friends; & Birdalone asked the knight concerning this valley and the bower, if he had known it for long, and he answered: Yea, lady, I was but a stripling when

I first happened on the dale; & I deem that few know thereof save me, at least none of our flock knoweth thereof; & I am fain thereof, and keep them unknowing, for if my lord were to hear of my having a haunt privy unto me he would like it but ill.

BIRDALONE turned pale when she heard him speak of his lord; for fear of the Red Knight had entered into her soul, so that now the flesh crept upon her bones. But she enforced her to smile, and said, Yea, & what would he do to thee were he ill-content with thy ways? Forsooth, lady, said he, if he could spare me he would make an end of me in some miserable way; nay, if he were exceeding ill-content, he would do as much for me whether he could spare me or not: otherwise he would watch his occasion, & so grieve me that what he did would go to my very heart. **W**oe's me! said Birdalone, thou servest an evil master. The knight answered not, and Birdalone went on speaking earnestly: It is a shame to thee to follow this fiend; why dost thou not sunder thee from him, and become wholly an honest man? Said he gruffly: It is of no use talking of this, I may not; to boot, I fear him. Then did

Part IV. Of
the Downfall
of Arthur.

Birdalone hold her peace, and the knight said: Thou dost not know; when I part from thee I must needs go straight to him, & then must that befall which will befall. Speak we no more of these matters.

BIRDALONE flushed with hope and joy as he spake thus, for she took him to mean that he would lead her, on the morrow, on her way to the Castle of the Quest. But the knight spake in a voice grown cheerful again: As to this bower, lady, the tale thereof is soon told; for with mine own hands I builded it some fifteen years ago; and I have come to this place time and again when my heart was overmuch oppressed with black burdens of evil & turmoil, and have whiles prevailed against the evil, & whiles not. Mayst thou prevail this time, then? said she. He answered her not, but presently fell to talking with her of other matters, & the two were frank & friendly together, till the August night grew dark about them; & then spake Birdalone: Now would I rest, for I can no longer keep mine eyes open. Abide aloof from me to-morrow morning till I call to thee, as thou didst this evening; & then, before we eat together again, thou shalt tell me what thou wilt do with

me. He stood up to depart, and she reached out her hand to him in the glimmer, and he saw it, but said: Nay, if I take thine hand, I shall take thine whole body. And therewith he departed, & she laid her down in her smock alone, and slept anon, and was dreamless and forgetting everything till the sun was up in the morning.

Chapter XVI Yet a Day and a Night they tarry in the Dale.

BIRDALONE awoke when the sun came into the bower to her, & stood up at once, & went down to the river and washed the night off her; and then, when she was clad, called on the knight to come to her; and he came, looking downcast and troubled; so that Birdalone thought within herself. It is well, he will do my will.

HE stood before him, & gave him the tale of the day, and he looked on her sorrowfully. Then she said. Now is come the time when I am to ask thee to take me back to the Castle of the Quest and my own people. He was not hasty to answer her, and she spake again: This must thou do, or else take me to the Red Hold & deliver me to the tyrant there; and I have heard it from

thine own mouth that will be nought else than casting me in to shame and torment & death. And I deem thou canst not do it. Nay, she said, staying the words that were coming from his mouth, I wot that thou canst do it if thine heart can suffer it: for thou art stronger than I, and thou mayst break my bow, & wrent this knife out of mine hand; and thou canst bind me & make me fast to the saddle, and so lead my helpless body into thralldom and death. But thou hast said that thou lovest me, and I believe thee here in. Therefore I know that thou canst not will to do this.

HIS VOICE answered in his surly voice: Thou art right, lady, I cannot. Nay, hearken thou this time. I have been turning over night-long what thou didst say about leaving my lord, that is, betraying him, for it comes to that; and now I have made up my mind to do it, and I will betray him for thy sake. Wherefore there is a third way to take which thou hast not seen; we will ride out of this dale in an hour's time, & I will bring thee to them who are only less the mortal foes of the Red Knight than are thy fellows of the Quest, to wit, to the captain & burghesses of the good town of Greenford by the water; & I will do them to wit

that I have rescued thee from the hands of the Red Knight, and am become his foe; & will show them all his incomings and outgoings, and every whit of rede, and entrap him, so that he fall into their hands. Now, though were I to be taken in battle by them, I should be speedily brought to the halter, or may be to the bale-fire (for we be wizards all in the Red Hold); yet with this word in my mouth, if they throw in it, I shall be made their captain, & presently their master. Throw in my tale they will, if thou bear me out therein, and they will honour thee, and suffer thee to give thyself to me in marriage; and then I know thee, & myself also, and that ere long we shall be both mighty and wealthy and beloved, and fair will be the days before us.

HIS VOICE had grown softer as he spake, and toward the end of his words he faltered, and at last brake out a weeping, and cast himself wordless on the grass before her.

SHE was pale, & her brow was knitted, and her face quivered, but she spake coldly to him & said: This way I cannot take: & I wonder at thee that thou hast shown it unto me, for thyself thou knowest that I cannot go with thee.

I will go nowhere hence save to the Castle of the Quest. If thou wilt not lead me thereto, or put me on the road, I ask thee straight, Wilt thou stay me if I go seek the way thither myself?

HE ROSE up from the ground with a pale face full of anger as well as grief, & caught her by the wrists and said, scowling the while: Tell me now which of them it is, is it the stupid oaf Baudoin, or the light fool Hugh, or the dull pedant Arthur? But it matters not; for I know, and all the country-side knows, that they be vowed, each man of them, to his own woman; and if they find not the women themselves, such dolts they are, that they will ever be worshipping the mere shadows of them, & turn away from flesh & blood, were it the fairest in the world, as thou art as thou art.

SHE shrank away from him what she might, but he still held her wrists, then she spake in a quivering voice, her very lips pale with fear & wrath. It is well even that thou art a man of the Red Knight; & belike thou wouldst do with me as he would. But one thing I crave of thee, if there is any grain of mercy in thee, that thou wilt draw thy sword and thrust me through; thou mayest leave thine hold of

me to get at the blade, I will not stir from where I stand. Or to think that I deemed thee well-nigh a true man.

SHE dropped her hands now & stood aloof from her, still staring at her, & presently cast himself on the ground, rolling about & tearing at the grass. She looked on him a moment or two, & then stepped forward & stooped to him, and touched his shoulder and said: Rise up, I bid thee, & be a man and not a wild beast.

SOME while he arose, and stood before her hanging-dog-like; then she looked on him pitifully, and said: fair sir & valiant knight, thou hast gone out of thy mind for a while, & thus hast thou shamed both me and thyself; & now thou wert best forget it, and therewithal my last words to thee.

WHEREWITH she held out her hand to him, and he went on his knees and took it, sobbing, and kissed it. But she said, and smiled on him: Now I see that thou wilt do what I prayed of thee, and lead me hence & put me on the road to the Castle of the Quest. He said: I will lead thee to the Castle of the Quest.

SHE said: I will lead thee to the Castle of the Quest. Then shall it be as I promised, that I will be thy

dear friend while both we live.
And now, if thou canst, be a lit-
tle merrier, & come and sit with
me, and let us eat our meat, for
I hunger.

He smiled, but woeful-
ly, and presently they
sat down to their meat;
and he strove to be somewhat
merry of mood, and to eat as
one at a feast; but while his
heart failed him, and he set his
teeth and tore at the grass, &
his face was fierce and terrible
to look on; but Birdalune made
as if she heeded it nought, and
was blithe and debonaire with
him. And when they had done
their meat he sat looking at her
a while, & at last he said: Lady,
dost thou deem that, when all
is said, I have done somewhat
for thee since first we met the
day before yesterday at the low-
er end of the Black Valley? **Y**ea, she said, as erot I spake,
all things considered I deem
that thou hast done much. **A**nd now, said he, I am to do
more yet; for I am to lead thee
to where henceforth I shall have
no more part or lot in thee than
if thou wert in heaven and I in
hell. **I** pray thee say not so,
said Birdalune; have I not said
that I will be thy friend? **L**ady, said the knight, I wot well
that according to the sweet-
ness of thine heart wilt thou
do what thou canst do. **A**nd

therewith he was silent a while
and she also.

Then he said: I would ask
thee a grace if I durst, **A**h it, said she, and I will
grant it if I may; I have gain-
said thee enough meseemeth.

IDY, he said, I will ask
this as a reward of the
way-leader, to wit, that
thou abide with me here in this
dale, in all honour holden, till
to-morrow morning & let this
place, which has helped me a-
foretime, be hallowed by thy
dwelling here, and I, I shall
have had one happy day at
least, if never another. Canst
thou grant me this? If thou
canst not, we will depart in an
hour.

Her countenance fell at
his word & she was si-
lent a while; for sore she
longed to be speedily whereas
her friends should find her if
they came back to the castle.
But she thought within her-
self how wild & fierce the man
was, and doubted if he might
not go stark mad on her hands
& destroy her if she thwarted
overmuch, & moreover, frank-
ly she pitied him, and would
do what she might to ease his
grief & solace his grief of heart.
Wherefore she cleared her face
of its trouble and let it be vexed
no longer, but smiled upon the
knight & said: fair sir, this me-

Part IV. of
the Days of
Arthur

seemeth but a little thing for me to do, & I grant it thee with a goodwill, and this shall now be the first day of the friendship if so thou wilt take it, and may it solace thee.

WHO then was gleeful but the knight, and strange it was to see all his sorrow run off him, and he became glad & gamesome as a youth, and yet withal exceeding courteous & kind with her, as though he were serving a mighty queen.

SO then they wore the day together in all good fellowship, and first they went up the dale together and right to the foot of that great force, where the stream came thundering down from the sheer rocks & long Birdalone stood to look thereon & much she marvelled at it, for no such thing had she seen before.

THE NEXT AFTER THEY went afoot into the wood behind the green bower, and when they had gone some way therein for their pleasure, they fell to seeking venison for their dinner & the knight took Birdalone a bow & shafts to strike the quarry withal, but he would have her gird his sword to her, that she might not be weaponless. So they gat them a roe and came back therewith to the bower, & the

knight dight it and cooked it, & again they ate in fellowship and kindness, and Birdalone had been to the river & fetched thence store of blue-flowered mouse-ear, and of meadow-sweet, whereof was still some left from the early days of summer & had made her garlands for her head & her loins; and the knight sat & worshipped her, yet he would not so much as touch her hand, sorely as he hungered for the beauty of her body.

THE NEXT, when dinner was done, & they lay in the shadow of the trees & heartened the moorhen crying from the water, and the moaning of the wood-doves in the high trees she turned to him & bade him tell her somewhat of the tale of his life & deeds, but he said Nay, lady, I pray thee pardon me for little have I to tell thee that is good, and I would not have thee know of me aught worse than thou knowest of me already. Rather be thou kind to me, and tell me of thy days that have been, wherein I know full surely shall be nought but good.

SHE smiled and blushed, but without more ado fell to telling him of her life in the house under the flood, and spared not even to tell him somewhat of the wood-mo-

ther. And he said no word to her thereover, save thanks and praises for the kindness of her story.

AT last the day wore to its ending, & then the knight's grief strode over him again, & he was moody and few-spoken; & Birdalone was blithe with him still, and would have solaced his grief; but he said: Let it be; as for thee, thou shalt be happy tomorrow, but this happy day of mine is well-nigh worn, and it is as the wearing of my life. And the dark night came, and he bade her good-night sorrowfully, and departed to his lair in the wood. Birdalone lay in the bower, & might not sleep a long while for her joy of the morrow, which should bring her back to the Castle of the Quest.

WHEN morning was, & the sun was but just risen, Birdalone awoke, and stood up and did on her

Here ends the fourth Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called Of the Days of Abiding, & the fifth Part now begins, which is called The Tale of the Quest's Ending.

raiment, and called her servant the knight, and he came at once leading the two horses, and said: Now go we to the Castle of the Quest. And he was sober and sorrowful, but nought fierce or wild.

SO Birdalone thanked him kindly and praised him, and he changed countenance no whit therefor.

WHEN they mounted & set forth, & the knight led straight into the wood, and by roads that he wotted of, so that they went nowise slowly for wenders through the thick woodland. Thus went they on their way together, he sorry and she glad.

WHEN now leaves the tale to tell of Birdalone and the knight on whom she happened in the Black Valley of the Greywethers, and turns to the Castle of the Quest and the folk thereof, & what they did in this while & thereafter.

Part IV Of
the Days of
Abiding

THE WHITE ROSE OF THE WONDERFUL TALE & OF THE
FIFTEENTH THE TALE OF THE QUEEN BEYONDING

Chapter I. Of Sir Lancelot
the knight of the
carte.

TELLS THE tale
that when the
chaplain had de-
parted from Bird-
alone at the bower
in the copse he
went home to the castle sadly
enough because of his love &
longing for her which well he
wotted might never be satis-
fied. Moreover when he was
come into the castle again
there fell fear upon him for
what might befall her and he
rued it that he had done her
will in getting her forth of the
castle and in vain now he set
before himself all the reasons
for deeming that her peril here
in was little or nothing even
as he had laid them before her
& which he then believed in ut-
terly whereas now himseem-
ed there was an answer to every
one of them so he sighed hea-
vily and went into the chapel
wherein was an altar of St.
Leonard and he knelt thereat
and prayed the saint as he had
erast delivered folk from cap-
tivity now to deliver both him
and Birdalone from peril and
bonds but though he was long
a-praying & made many words
it lightened his heart little or
nothing so that when he rose

up again that if anything evil
happened to this pearl of wo-
men he wished heartily that
some one might take his life
and he be done with it

NOW was the house astir
and the chaplain came
also from out the chapel and
thinking all things over he
thought he would go straight
to Sir Lymene & make a clean
breast of it so that weaponed
men might be sent at once to
seek Birdalone. And he said
to himself What matter if he
slay me or cast me into prison
if Birdalone be lost?

So he went his ways to
the highest tower which
looked landward & high
the open ye deeming to find
Sir Lymene but when he got
to the topmost he found nei-
ther captain nor carle there
wherefore he stayed a little &
looked forth betwixt the bat-
lements if perchance there
were some wild chance of see-
ing Birdalone's coming home
again but his keen eyes beheld
nothing more than he looked
to see an sheep and neat and
the field-folk of thereabouts
so he turned away & went by
the swale toward the next tall
east tower which looked lake-
wards and was called Heart's
Hope and as he went he fell to
framing in his mind the words

which he should say to the castellan.

WHEN came he, haggard and hapless, on the leaden top of the tower, which were nought small; & there gathered together in a knot, & all gazing eagerly out over the lake, he found a dozen of men-at-arms & the castellan amongst them. They took no heed of him as he came up, though he stumbled as he crossed the threshold & came clattering over the lead floor, and he saw at once that there was something unwonted toward; but he had but one thought in his mind, to wit, the rescuing of Birdalene.

HE went up now behind where the castellan was leaning over the battlement, and pulled his skirt, and when Sir Hymeris turned round, he said: Lord, I have a word for thine ear. But the old knight did but half turn round, and then spake peevishly: Tush, man! another time I secst thou not I have got no eyes for aught save what we see on the lake? Yes, but what then? said the priest. There cometh a boat, said Sir Hymeris, not looking back at him, and our thought is that therein be our lords.

WHEN the priest heard that word, it was to him as if hell had o-

pened underneath his feet: & he had no might to speak for a minute: then he cried out: Sir Hymeris, hearken, I pray thee. But the old knight but thrust him back with his hand, and even therewith one of the men-at-arms cried out: I hear the voice of their horn! Then shouted Sir Hymeris: Where art thou, Noise? Blow, man, blow, if ever thou blowest in all thy life! And therewithal came the blare of the brass, and Sir Hymeris nodded to the trumpeter, who blew blast after blast with all his might, so that the priest might as well have been dumb for any hearing he might get: and all the while to Leonard the minutes seemed hours, and he was well-nigh distraught.

WHEN then the knight held up his hand for the Noise to stay his blowing & Leonard strove to speak, the castellan turned on him & said: Peace, Sir Leonard: dost thou not know that now we would listen with our ears to heed if they answer us? Not a word any one man of you leamed or lewd, or ye shall rue it!

EVEN therewith came clearly the sound of the horn from the water, and again & yet again; and no man spake but the chaplain, who cried out: Hearken, knight.

**Part V The
End of the
Quest's
Ending**

it is of Birdalone. But Sir Hymene laid his hand on his shoulder and said in an angry whisper: Thou shalt be put downstairs, priest, if thou hold not thy peace.

LEOONARD drew aback cowering and went out of the door, & so slowly down the stair, and withdrew him into the cover of the door of the first chamber down from the tower-top, with the mind to waylay Sir Hymene as he came down; and meanwhile he cursed him for a fool and a dull-wit, and himself yet more, as was but right, for a fool and a licentious traitor.

BUT he had not tarried there more than a score of minutes, ere he heard a great shout from those up above: They are come! they are come! And next thereafter came all the men clattering down the stair past him, scarce restraining them from shoving each his neighbour on to the next one: Leonard followed on them, and presently arose great shouting and tumult through all the house, & all folk, men & women, hurried flock/meal toward the water-gate, & with them went Leonard perforce; and sick of heart he was, calling to mind the first coming thither of Birdalone.

BUT now when they came to the water-gate, there verily was the Sending Boat just coming to hand; and in the stern stood the three knights together, all clad in their armour, and before them sat three lovely ladies, clad one in gold, one in green, and one in black: and lo, there was the Quest come home.

Chapter II. Now ask they of Birdalone, and Sir Leonard

WHEN THE prow touched the stones of the stair, & folk were busy to lay hold of it that the wayfarers might land, but Sir Baudoin cried out in a great voice: Let none be so hardy as to touch this ferry, either now or hereafter: for there is peril therein. And therewith he took Hurea by the hand, & led her out of the boat and up the stair, & she all joyous & wondering: and thereafter came Hugh and his darling, and last of all Arthur & Htra, and she alone of the three women looked downcast, & her eyes wandered about the throng that was before them there, as though she sought something, yet feared to see it.

BUT when they were all standing together on the landing plain, and the folk were all about them in a ring, Sir Baudoin spake to the castellan and said: Sir Hymeris, thee and other folk I see here, the sight of whom doth me great joy; but where, I pray thee, is the lady, our friend Birdalone, by whom it is that all we are come happily hither? And he looked around with an anxious face; but Arthur was as pale as ashes, yet he spake nought, and Aitra let her hand fall away from his.

THE N spake the castellan, and said: No harm hath befallen the Lady Birdalone; but while she hath been somewhat ailing of late, & it is like that she wotterh not what is toward, & keepeth her chamber now, for it is yet betimes in the morning.

AS he spake, came thrusting a man through the throng, eager and pale-faced; who but the chaplain: and he said: He would not let me speak, this fool; I cannot choose my time. Lords, I bear evil tidings & an ugly welcome home. The Lady Birdalone is in peril, & she is not in the castle; I wot not where she is. Ye must send armed men to seek her out.

THEREAT fell the silence of woe upon the throng, but Arthur ran forward on the priest with drawn sword, and cried out: I misdoubt me that thou art a traitor: speak! or I will slay thee here and now. If I be a traitor, quoth Leonard, I shall tell thee in little while what ye must do to undo my treason, if there be yet time thereto; so slay me not till ye have heard, and then do what ye will with me.

BUT Baudoin put Arthur aside, and said: Refrain thee a little, fair brother, else shall words tumble over each other and we shall know nothing clear. Sir Hymeris, bring our dear ladies to the fairest chambers, and do all honour & courtesy to them. And ye, sweetlings, ye will not begrudge us that we go to seek your friend. Thou priest, come with us a little apart, and tell thy tale as shortly as thou mayst, & fear nought; we be not God's dastards, as the Red knight and his men.

VIRIDIS wept & kissed her love before all folk, and bade him go & do his best to find her friend, or never come back to her else. Much moved, even to tears, was Aurea withal, and reached her hand to Baudoin, and said: If any man on earth can help us

it is thou Go thou. But Hira wept not, and but said to Arthur: Go thou, it is meet.

THE THREE ladies brought to fair chambers; but the three knights went with the priest and Sir Hymeris into the solar, and set a guard at the door that their talk should be privy.

Chapter III. Now they follow the Slot of Birdalone and the Black Knight.

IT was but five minutes ere the priest had told them all that need was; so they let him abide alone there, though sooth to say there was none of them but had good will to break his neck; & the same rede had all three, that there was nought for it but to go their ways with all speed to the Black Valley of the Greywethers, and follow up the slot of Birdalone if it might yet be found; wherefore they bade saddle their horses straightway; & while that was a-doing they ate a morsel, and bade farewell to their lowlings.

And they dight them to go, they three together, with but one squire and a sergeant, who were both of them keen trackers and fell woodsmen. But ere they went, by the rede of Arthur they bade Sir Hymeris to arm a two score of men & ride

toward the Red Hold, and beset the ways 'twixt that & the Castle of the Quest; for one and all they deemed that if any harm befell Birdalone, the Red Knight would be at the bottom of it.

SO rode those fellows, and came unto the dale but some four hours after Birdalone had happened on the stranger knight; & they took up the slot of her, but not easily, whereas the ground was hard & stony; howbeit, they found tokens of the knight also, finding here and there what they deemed the foot-prints of a tall man. And this was grievous to those fellows, since now they could not but deem that somewhat untoward had befallen Birdalone. But they went on making out the slot, & they followed it with much toil until they came to the doom-ring in the head of the dale, whereas Birdalone and the stranger had sat down to meat; but by that time, so toilsome had been their going, it was somewhat more than dusk, and there was nought for it but to abide there night-long. So a while they sat talking, all of them, & the squire and the sergeant afore-said were not a little timorous of the adventure of making that stead unhenned their sleeping chamber; and to while away the

time, their lords made them tell tales such as they knew concerning that place; and both they said that they had never erast come into the dale but a very little way & said that they had done so then but trusting in their lords' bidding and the luck of the Quest. Thereafter turned the talk as to what had befallen Birdalone, & the chances of coming on her; and, as folk will in such a plight, they talked the matter over & over again till they were weary and could say no more.

WHEN they went to sleep, & nought befell them till they awoke in the broad daylight; but they had little inkling of what hour it was, for all the dale was full of thick white mist that came rolling down from the mountains, so that they could scarce see their hands before them, and there they had to tarry still, would they, would they not; & the sergeant fell to telling tales of folk who had been lost in that stony maze; and all of them deemed, more or less, that this was the work either of evil wights, or it might be of the wizardry of the Red Knight; and, to be short, they all deemed that he it was who had wielded it, save the sergeant, who said that the mountain wights were the masters and not the servants of

him of the Red Hold.

WHEN, then, it betided; but when the said mist had been hanging upon them for some six hours, it rolled up like a curtain, and lo the blue sky and the sun, and the mountains as clear blue as in a picture; and they saw by the sun that it was but a little after high noon.

BUT as they rejoiced herein, and betook them once more to tracking out the slot of Birdalone & the other, the sky became suddenly overcast, and down from the jaws of the mountain came a storm of wind and rain, and thunder & lightning, so great that they might scarce see each other's faces, and when it cleared off, in about an hour and a half, and went down the wind to the southeast, the stream was waxen great, and ran brown and furious down the dale, so that it was fordable only here & there; and as for tracking the slot of those twain, there was no need to talk thereof, for the fury of the driving rain had washed all away.

WHEN they faced they the whole day betwixt fog and clear weather, & they laid them down to rest at night sore disheartened. When the day broke they talked together as to what was best to do, & the sergeant


aforsaid spake Lords, said he, meseemeth I am more at home in the Black Valley than ye be: heed ye not wherefore. Now so it is that if we tarry here till night come we wot not what of evil may betide us, or at the least we do nought. Or if we turn back & go southward out of the dale we shall be safe indeed; but safe should we have been at your house, lords, and should have done no less. But now I shall tell you that, if ye will, lords, I shall guide you to a pass that goeth out of the head of the dale to our right hands, & so turneth the flank of the mountains, and cometh out into the country which lieth about the Red Fold; and meseemeth it is thitherward that we must seek if we would hear any tidings of the lady; for there may we lay in ambush & beset the ways that lead up to the Fold, by which she must have been brought if she hath not been carried through the air. Now say ye, lords? Soothly there is peril therein; yet meseemeth peril no more than in our abiding another night in the Black Valley.

¶ 110 Arthur. We heed not the peril if there be aught to be done; wherefore let us be stirring straightway. And so said they all. Wherefore they gat to horse, & rode

up to the very head of the valley, and the weather was now calm and bright.

¶ At the sergeant brought them to the pass whereof the stranger knight had spoken to Birdalene, which led into the Red Knight's country, and without more ado they entered it when it was now about three hours after noon. But the way was both steep & rough, so that they had much toll, and went not very far ere night fell upon them, and the moon was not yet up. So when they had stumbled on another two hours, & their horses were much spent and they themselves not a little weary, they laid them down to sleep, after they had eaten such meat as they had with them. In a place where was a little grass for the horses to bite; for all the road hitherto had been mere grim stones and big rocks, walled on either side by stony screes, above which rose steep & beetling crags.

¶ In the dawn they arose again, and made no ado till they were in the saddle, and rode till they came to the crest of the pass, and came out thence after a while on to the swelling flank of a huge mountain (as it might be the side of the mountain of Plinlimmon in Wales), which was



grassed and nought craggy,
but utterly treeless.

NOW THE sergeant led
them somewhat athrow
the said mountain till
they began to go down, and
saw below them a country of
little hills much covered with
wood, and in a while, and ere it
was noon, they were among the
said woods, which were grown
mostly with big trees, as oak
here and beech there, and the
going was good for them.

**Chapter IV. Of the slaying of
friend and foe. ¶ ¶**

CAME they, three
hours after noon.
to where was a
clearing in the
woodland, and a
long narrow plain
some furlong over lay before
them, with a river running a-
long it, and the wood rose on
the other side high and thick,
so that the said plain looked
even as a wide green highway
leading from somewhence to
somewhither.

AT the edge hereof their
way-leader, the sergeant,
hade drawrein, and said
to the Lords, we are now in the lands
of the Red Hold, and therein
is mickle peril and dread to any
save stout hearts as ye be; but
me seems we are so steeled,
that whatever may come out of
the Black Valley of the Grey-

wethers to the Red Hold, ye
now may scarce miss. Yonder
along this plain to the north
lies the way to the said Hold,
and any man coming from the
head of the valley is sure to
come by the way we have come,
& will pass us not many yards
at the worst from where we
now be. On the other hand, if
any come to the Hold from
the mouth of the Black Val-
ley, then along this green road
must they needs pass under
your very eyes. Lastly if we do
what we are come to do, to wit,
to deliver the lady from the
Red Knight, then, the deed
done, we have to take the green
road southward, and ride it for
a league & then turn east, and
we shall have our heads turned
toward the Castle of the Quest,
and shall speedily fall in with
Sir Hymeris and our men who
be guarding the out-gates of
the Red Knight's country to-
ward our house. So now, by my
rede, ye shall lay in covert here
and abide a while what may be-
fall if nought come hereby ere
two hours be lacking of sun-
set, then may we seek further.

THE Y all ye said this, &
gat off their horses, &
lay quiet on the grass,
not even speaking save soft-
ly. And when they had abided
thus scarce an hour's space,
the squire, who was a man of

*First Part
of the
Quest
Book*



very fine ear, held up his hand as though to bid utter silence, and all hearkened eagerly. Presently he said: Hear ye not? Said Arthur: Meeseemeth I hear a faint tinkle as of a sheep's bell. Said the squire: 'Tis the clashing of swords down the plain to the south. & meeseemeth 'tis but of two: ride we thither?

CLOTH Baudoin: Nay, not by my rede for if we can hear them they can hear us; let us quietly edge along afoot somewhat nigher their way, ever keeping the cover of the wood betwixt us and the open plain. Now then to it; and let each man keep his weapon ready.

YET so did they, and spread out in a line as they went, in such wise that there was some six paces betwixt each man of them, and they went softly forward; Baudoin went first, Hugh second, then Arthur; then the squire and the sergeant last of all.

WHEN they had gone but a quarter of an hour, the squire caught up with Arthur, and spake to him softly. & said: The voice of the swords has been silent now a while, and I heard a voice crying out e'en now, a woman's voice. And now again I could well nigh deem that I hear

horse hoofs.

RED KNIGHT nodded to him, and they went but a little further ere he said: Lo, lo! 'tis the time of the eye now! Here come folk. And therewithal they stayed them, for the wood turned somewhat here, so as to hide all but a little of the plain, and round the wood neib the new-comers hove in sight, & were close on them at once, so that they might see them clearly, to wit, a knight weaponed, clad all in red, a very big man, riding on a great bay horse, and behind him a woman going afoot in very piteous plight; for she was tethered to the horse's crupper by a thong that bound her wrists together, so that she had but just room left 'twixt her and the horse that she might walk, and round about her neck was hung a man's head newly hewn off.

IN sight they all saw at once, and were out of the wood in a trice with weapons aloft, for they knew both the man and the woman, that they were the Red Knight and Birdalene.

SWIFT and sudden had they been, that he had no time either to spur or even to draw his sword; but he had a heavy steel axe in his hand as the first man came up

to him, which was the tall Baudoin; and therewith he smote down on Baudoin so fierce and huge a stroke, that came on him betwixt neck & shoulder, that all gave way before it, and the Golden Knight fell to earth all carven & stark dead: but even therewith fell Hugh, the squire, and the sergeant on the Red Knight; for Arthur had run to Birdalene & sheared her loose from her tether. The sergeant smote him on the right arm with a maul, so that the axe fell to the ground; the squire's sword came on the side of his head, & as it was cast back beneath the stroke, Hugh thrust his sword through the throat of him, and down he fell unto the earth and was dead in less than a minute.

GIVEN gathered the others round about Baudoin, and saw at once that he was dead; & Birdalene came thrusting through the press of them, and knelt down beside him, and when she saw her friend so piteously dight, she wept and wailed over him as one whom might not be comforted: and Hugh stood over her and let his tears fall down upon the dead man; and withal the squire & the sergeant did not refrain their lamentations, for sore beloved was Sir Baudoin the Golden Knight.

AT Arthur spake dry-eyed, though there was grief in his countenance, and he said: fellows, & thou, lady, let us lament afterwards, but now is time for us to get us gone hence as speedily as may be. Yet I will ask, doth any know whose is this head that the slain tyrant here had hung about the lady's neck? May the fiends curse him therefor!

Said the sergeant: Yea, lords, that wot I, this is the head of the Red Knight's captain & head man, Sir Thomas of Cutchiffe, one of the hardiest of knights he was while he was alive, as ye surely wot, lords; neither, as I have heard say, was he as cruel a tyrant as his lord that lieth there ready for the ravens.

NOW had Birdalene arisen and was standing facing Arthur; her face was pale and full of anguish, and she was dabbled with blood from the dead man's neck; but there was nought of shame in her face as she stood there and spoke: O my living friends, who have but now saved me, ye and my dead friends, from what shame and death I know not, the tale of this woful hap is over long to tell if there be peril at hand, and I scarce alive from dread and sorrow; but shortly thus it is: This man,

whose head here lieth, entrap-
ped me as I foolishly wander-
ed in the Black Valley, and af-
terwards delivered me, & was
leading me to your castle, my
friends, when this other one,
his master, the tyrant of the
Red Hold came upon him, and
fell upon him and slew him as
a traitor, and dishonoured me as ye
saw. And, woe's me! I am the
fool whose folly has slain your
friend and mine. Wherefore I
am not worthy of your fellow-
ship, and ye shall cast me forth
of it, or to slay me were better.

She spake gazing ear-
nently on Arthur, and so
troubled & grieved, that
she might well have died but
for her woodland breeding, &
the toil of the days she had
won through in the house un-
der the Wood.

Utt Hugh spake gently
to her & said: heep up
thine heart yet, maiden;
for the hand of fate it is that
led thee, and none doeth griev-
ously amiss but if he mean
wrong, doing in his heart; and
we know thee for true, and
thou hast been our helper, and
brought our love-lings unto us
to make us happy.

She brake out weep-
ing afresh, and said: O
no, no! it is but woe and
weaniness I have brought unto
my friends, and to myself woe

and weaniness yet more.

AND she looked piteous-
ly into Arthur's face &
hard & stern it seemed
unto her, and she writhed and
wring her hands for anguish.
But he spake and said: This
will we look into when we be
safe behind our walls, and see
what she hath done amiss and
what not amiss. But now is
there but one thing to do, and
that is to get us speedily on our
way to the Castle of the Quest,
and bind our fellow's body on
his horse that he also may ride
with us, and the lady shall ride
the horse of the accursed thief.
Then they turned to go to-
ward their horses, but there-
with Hirdalone smote her foot
against the slunk knight's head,
and shrank aback from it, and
pointed down toward it and
spake no word: & Hugh said:
friends, the lady is right, this
at least we will cover with earth.
Do ye go fetch hither our hor-
ses, since we be on the road, & I
will do here what need is mean-
while.

So they went on that er-
rand, and then Hugh and
Hirdalone between them
dug a hole with the swords &
laid the head of the captain of
the Red knight therein. And
forsooth, somewhat would
Hirdalone have wept for him
had she had a tear to spare.

WHEN they fell to & bound the dead Baudoin on the Red Knight's mighty bay steed, so that no time might be wasted: & when that was done, and the others had not come back with their horses, Hugh took Birdalone's hand and led her down to the stream and washed the gore off her bosom, & she washed her face and her hands and let him lead her back again in such wise that now she could hearken to the words of comfort he spake to her, and piteous kind he seemed unto her; so that at last she plucked up heart, and asked him how Viridis did. Quoth he: They be all safe at home in the castle, and Viridis is well & loveth thee well. And Hurea was well, woe worth the while for her now! He for Hira, she has not been so glad as the other twain, I wot not wherefore.

WHEN as he spake were the others come up with the horses, and Arthur nodded yea-ay when he saw what had been done with Baudoin dead; and so they gat to horse, & Birdalone it was that rode Baudoin's steed. Then they went their ways, crossing the river into the wood; & the sergeant was ever way-leader, but the squire led the horse which bore the sorrowful bur-

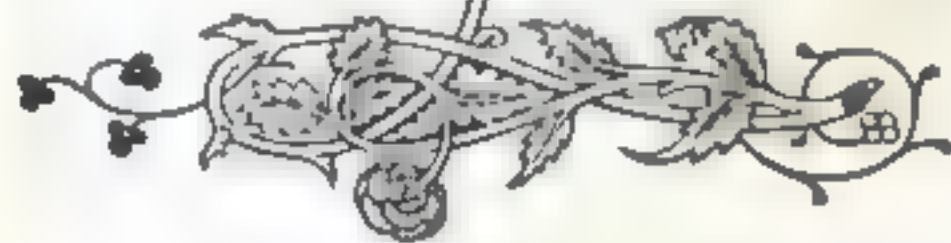
den of the dead Knight of the Quest.

Chapter V They come home to the castle of the Questing



WHEN they had done but some three hours riding dreary & much speechless all of them, ere they began to know the land they were in, and that they were coming to the place where they might look presently to fall in with Sir Hymeris and his company; and even so the meeting befell, that they saw men standing & going about their horses beside a little wood & knew them presently for their folk, who mounted at once and spurred forward to meet them, spears aloft. Speedily then was the joy of those abiders turned in to sorrow, nor may the grief of Sir Hymeris be told, so great it was; and Birdalone looked on and saw the mourning and lamentation of the warriors, and eked was her anguish of mind; and she beheld Arthur the Black Squire, how he sat still upon his horse with a hard and dreary countenance, and looked on those mourners almost as if he contemned them. But Sir Hymeris came up to Birdalone, & knelt before her and kissed her hand, and said: If my heart might rejoice in

*Part V The
Tale of the
Questing
Ending*



ought, as some day it will, it would rejoice in seeing thee safe and sound, lady; here at least is gain to set beside the loss.

HE thanked him, but looked askance toward Arthur, who said: If that be gain, yet is theremore, for the Red Knight lieth in the green plain for a supper to the wolf and the crow. Vengeance there hath been, & belike more yet may come. But now, if ye have lamented as much as ye deem befiteth warriors, let us tarry here no longer; for even yet meseemeth shall we be safer behind walls, now that our chief and captain is slain, I scarce know in what quarrel.

ONE naysaid it, so they all rode forth together, and the sergeant and the squire & Sir Hugh told of their tale what they might to Birdalorne and the others; but Arthur held his peace, and rode aloof from Birdalorne, whereas Sir Hymeris and Hugh rode on either side of her, and did not spare to comfort her what they might.

HE rode straight on, & made no stay for nightfall, and thus came home to the Castle of the Quest before the day was full, & woful was their entry as they went in the dawn underneath the gate of the said castle, & soon was

the whole house astir and lamenting.

S for Birdalorne, when she got down from her horse in the gateway, and was stiff & weary of body, and all dazed and confused of mind, there was but little life in her; nor could she so much as think of the new day & Aurea's awakening, but crept up unto her own chamber, so long as it seemed since she had left it, though it was but a little while; and she cast herself upon the bed and fell asleep whether she would or not, and so forgot her much sorrow & her little hope.

Chapter VI. Of the Talk betwixt Birdalorne and Viridis.

WHEN she woke again, she had slept the night away, & it was broad day, and for a moment she lay wondering what was the burden upon her; but presently she called it all to mind, and deemed it were well might she forget it all again. Anon she became aware of someone moving about the chamber, & she looked about unhappily; and lo! a woman, fair & dainty, clad all in green, & it was Viridis that had come there. But when she saw Birdalorne stirring, she came up to her & kissed

ed her sweetly and kindly, and wept over her, so that Birdalone might nowise refrain her tears. But when she might cease weeping, she said to Viridis. Tell me, art thou weeping for thy friend who is lost, and who shall be thy friend no more; or thy friend whom thou hast found? Said Viridis: forsooth I have wept for Baudom plenteously, & he is worthy of it, for he was valiant and true & kind. Said Birdalone: True is that; but I meant not my question so; but rather I would ask thee if thou weep-est because thine heart must needs cast me away; or because thou hast found me again? Quoth Viridis. Whoso may be dead, or whoso alive, but if it were Hugh, my loving, I were rejoiced beyond measure to find thee, my friend. And again she kissed her as one who was glad and kind. But for new rest of soul and for joy, Birdalone fell a weeping afresh.

AGAIN she spake: And what mind have the other knights about me? for thou art but one though the dearest, save.... And would they punish me for my fault and folly that has slain the best man in the world? If the punishment be short of putting me forth of their fellowship, I were fain thereof.

VIRIDIS laughed: forsooth, she said, they have much to punish thee for! whereas it was by thy doing and thy valiance that we all came together again and the Quest was accomplished. Nay, but tell me, said Birdalone, what do they say of me, each one of them?

VIRIDIS reddened; she said: Hugh, my mate, saith all good of thee; though no one of carlsfolk may be sornier of the loss of his fellow. Aurea loveth not the death of her man upon thee; and she saith: When the fountain of tears is dried up in me, I will see her and comfort her, as she me. Atra saith, she saith but little, yet she saith: So is it fated, I had done belike no better, but worse than she.

NOW turned Birdalone red & then pale again, and she said, but in a quavering voice. And the Black Squire, Arthur, what sayeth he? Said Viridis. He saith nought of thee, but that he would hear all the tale of what befell thee in the Black Valley. Sweet friend, said Birdalone, I pray thee of thy kindness and sweetness that thou go unto him presently & bring him in hither, & then I will tell him all; and he and thou and I together.

VIRIDIS said: There is this to be said, that when a man loveth a woman he coveteth her to have her all wholly to himself, and hard and evil he groweth for the time that he misdoubteth her whom he loveth. And I will tell thee that this man is jealous lest thou wert never so little kind to the slain stranger knight whose head the tyrant hung about thee furthermore, I fear there is no help for it that thou wilt undo the happiness of one of us, that is Atra; yet were it better that that befell later than sooner. And if Sir Arthur come in here to thee, & hath thy tale with none beside save me, meseems the poor Atra will feel a bitter smart because of it. Were it not better that we all meet presently in the solar, and that there thou tell thy tale to us all? & thereafter shall we tell the tale of our deliverance & our coming hither. And thus doing, it will seem less like to the breaking up of our fellowship.

SIR BIDALONE: It will be hard for me to tell my tale before Atra & before him. Might it not be that thou hearkest to it here and now, & tell it to the others hereafter? Nay, nay, said Viridis. I am not a proper minstrel to take the word out of thy mouth. Never shall

I be able to tell it so that they shall trow it as if they had seen it all. Besides, when all is told, then shall we be more bound together again. I pray thee, & I pray thee, sweet, do so much for me as to tell thy tale to the fellowship of us. And if it be hard to thee, look upon it as my share of the punishment which is due to thee for falling into that mishap.

SIR BIDALONE ruefully, and said: So be it. & may the share of the others be as light as thine, sister. Yet soothly were I liefer that my body & my skin should pay the forfeit. But now, since I must needs do this, the sooner is the better meseemeth.

IN a little half hour, said Viridis, will I bring what is left of our fellowship into the solar to hearken thee. So come thou there unto us when thou art clad. And hear thou be not too meek & humble, and bow thyself to us in fear of our sorrow. for whereas thou didst speak of our punishing thee, there will be one there whom thou mayest easily punish to thy pleasure; forsooth, friend, I rue that so it is; but since it will not better be, what may I do but wish thee happy and him also.

HEREWITH she turned and went out of the chamber, and Birdalone, left to herself felt a secret joy in her soul that she might not master, despite the sorrow of her friends, whatever it might be.

Chapter VII Birdalone tells the tale of her wandering up the Valley of the Greywethers. **176**

OLD Vindis did as she said, and brought them all into the solar; there was none lighting save Baudin and they sat silently in a half ring till the door opened and Birdalone came into them, clad all simply in but a black coat and she made obeisance to them & stood there with her head bent down as if they were her judges, for no in sooth she deemed them. Then Hugh bade her sit down amongst them; but she said Nay I will not sit amongst you till ye have heard my story and ye have told me that I am yet of your fellowship. None said aught, Sir looked straight before her & her eyes met not Birdalone's eyes. Arthur looked down on the ground, but Hugh and Vindis looked kindly on Birdalone, and to Vindis eyes the tears were come.

nl

THEN spake Birdalone and said I am here as one that hath done amiss but I will tell you, so that ye may not think worse of me than ye should, that when ye were gone ye champions, and the time wore long that ye came not again it lay heavy on my heart, and hope waned & fear waxed, and my soul so grieved my body that I thought to fall sick thereof and I knew that it would be ill for you to come home hither & find me sick so that I longed sore to do somewhat which should make me whole again. Then weird would that I should hear all the tale of the Black Valley of the Greywethers, and of how therein is whiles granted fulfilment of desire & methought how well it were if I might seek the adventure there & accomplish it. Thereof, doubtless, hath the chaplain Sir Leonard, told you but this furthermore would I say, that his doing herein was nought all was done by my doing and by my bidding and he might not choose but do it, Wherefore I do pray you all earnestly that ye keep no grudge against him but pardon him all. Tell me, then, will ye do this much?

Said Hugh Let him be pardoned if he can take pardon. But Ar-

Part V The Tale of the Quest is ending

Part V The
Tale of the
Quest's
Ending

thus spake not, and Birdalone looked on him anxiously, and her face was moved, and it was with her throat as if she had swallowed something down. Then she spake again, and fell to tell them all that had betid to her when she went to the Black Valley, even as is hereafore writ, hiding nought that had been done and said; and freely she told it, without fear or shame, and with such clearness and sweetness of words that no one of them doubted her aught; & Arthur lifted up his head, and once & again his eyes met hers, and there was nought of hardness in them, though they turned away at once.

So at last fell Birdalone to telling what betid after they two, the stranger-knight and she, left the valley of the force and fell to riding the wild wood with their heads turned toward the Castle of the Quest; and she said:

WHEN we turned into the wood away from the said valley it lacked some four hours of noon; & we rode till noon was, & rested by a stream-side and ate, for we knew no cause wherefore we should hasten overmuch; but my fellow the strange knight was downcast and heavy, and some might have called him

sullen. But I strove to make him of better cheer, and spake to him kindly, as to one who of an enemy had become a friend; but he answered me: Lady, it availeth not; I grieve that I am no better company than thou seest me, and I have striven to be merrier; but apart from all that I wot and that thou wotest which should make me of evil cheer, there is now a weight upon my heart which I cannot lift, such as never have I felt erst. So by thy leave we will to horse at once, that we may the speedier come to the Castle of the Quest & Sir Hymeris' prison.

So I arose, but smiled on him and said: Hold up thyne heart, friend! for thee shall be no prison at the Castle of the Quest, but the fair welcome of friends. He said nought, and mended not his cheer; and in this plight we gat to horse & rode on for some three hours more, till we came out of the thick forest into a long clearing, which went like a wide highway of greenward between the thicket. & it seemed as if the hand of man had cleared that said green road. Thereto we had come, following a little river which came out on to the clearing with us, and then, turning, ran well-nigh amid it toward the north.

NOW when we were come
thither and were betwixt
the thicket and the wa-
ter's edge we drew rein. and it
seemed to me as far a stead as
might be in the woodland. and
I looked thereon well pleased
& with a happy heart. But the
knight and lady art thou not
exceeding weary. Nay said
I. not in any wise. Naide he. It
is strange then. For so weary
am I that I must in any case get
off my horse & lay me down on
the grass here. or I shall drop
from the saddle. And therewith
he lighted down and stood by
me a little. as to help me off my
horse. but I said to him. knight
I pray thee. even if ye be weary.
to struggle forward a little. lest
we be in peril here. In peril
quoth he. yea that might be if
the Red Knight knew of our
whereabouts. but how should
that be. He spoke thus hea-
vily. as one scarce awake. and
then he said. I pray thee par-
don me lady. but for nought
may I hold my head up. suffer
me to sleep but a little. & then
will I arise & lead thee straight
to the journey's end. There-
withal he laid him down on the
grass & was presently asleep.
& lay down by him all dismayed.
At first indeed I doubted
some treachery in him. for how
might I trust him wholly af-
ter all that had come and gone?

but when I saw that there was
no feigning in his sleep. I set
that doubt aside & knew not
what to make of it.

IT IS PAST an hour and
from time to time I lookt
him and strove to waken
him. but it was all in vain. so I
knew none other rede than to
abide his awaking. For I knew
not the way to take toward the
castle. and moreover though
he were a knight & armed yet
might it be perilous for him if
he were left there alone and un-
guarded. so I abode.

SIT now came new tid-
ings. My thought I heard
the sound of the tinkling
of weapons and armour. the
green highway so turned that
a wood web about an hundred
yards to the north hid it from
my sight. so that a man might
have drawn somewhat near to
us without being seen. came
he on the further side of the ri-
ver. so I stood up hastily and
drawing my bow & took a shaft
in my fingers & no sooner was
it done than there came a ri-
der round about the aforesaid
wood web. he was ill armed &
had a red surcoat. and rode a
great shining bay horse. I kept
my eye up on him while I stirred
the sleeping knight with my
foot. and cried to him to wake.
but he scarce moved. and but
uttered words without sense.

NOW the new-comer drew rein for a moment when he saw us, and then moved on a little toward me, but I nocked a shaft and pointed it at him, and cried out to him to stay. Then I heard a great rattling laugh come from him, & he shouted: Nay, do thou stay, fair wood-wife, and I will risk thy shafts to come at thee. But why doth not the sluggard at thy feet rise up and stand before me, if he be thy loving? Or is he dead? His voice was harsh and big, & I feared him sore; and it was as much because of fear as of hardihood, that I drew & loosed straightway; and doubtless it was because of fear that I saw my shaft fly an inch or so over his right shoulder. I heard his rattling laugh again, and saw him bend forward as he spurred; I knew that time lacked for drawing another shaft, so I caught up my skirts and ran all I might; but swift-foot as I be, it availed me nought, for I was cumbered with my gown, and moreover I was confused with not knowing whither to run, since I wotted that in the water the horse would do better than I.

So he was up with me in a twinkling, and reached out his hand and caught hold of me by the hair, & sug-

ged me to him as he reined back his horse. Then he laughed again and said: forsooth she will look better when she is no longer reddened & roughened with fleeing; & by Red Peter! what limbs she hath! Then he let me loose and got off his horse, and shoved me on before him till we came to where the Black One lay still sleeping heavily. Then the Red Knight stood over against me, & looked hard into my face; and I saw how huge a man he was, & how a lock of bright red hair came out from under his gallet, his eyes were green & fierce underneath shaggy red eyebrows, terrible he was to look on.

NOW he awoke fiercely and roughly, & as though he had something against me: Tell me, thou, who thou art and who this is? I answered nought, for fear had frozen my speech. He stamped his foot on the ground and cried: Nah! art thou gone dumb? Speak! thou wert beat! I said, all quaking: My name is Birdalene; I belong to no one; I have no kindred: as for this man, I know not his name. He said, Come at thou from the Castle of the Quest? Art thou the whore of those lily and rose champions there? My heart was hot with anger in spite of my dread, but I spake: I came

from the Castle of the Quest.
 He said And this man
 (therewith he turned about &
 opened him in the sides) where
 didst thou happen upon him?
 Again I was silent and he
 roared out at me No thou wilt
 not answer. Beware or I may
 see how to compel the speech
 of thee. Now answer me this.
 What in the Black Valley of the
 Liverwethen that ye two came
 together? Again I knew not
 how to answer but I might
 do a wrong to him who had
 repented him of the wrong
 he had done me. But the Red
 Knight burst out a laughing
 and said It shall be remem-
 bered against thee first that
 thou didst let fly a shaft at
 me second, that thou didst
 run from me and thirdly that
 thou hast been slack in answer-
 ing my questions. But all this
 grieves me naught first be-
 cause the shaft missed me
 second because the legs failed
 thee although they were fair to
 look on running; & third be-
 cause all thou canst tell me I
 know without thine answer-
 ing. Now then wilt thou tell me
 thou art Friday and that ye two
 first met in the Black Valley on
 Tuesday now I will ask thee
 last question and thou must
 answer it or not as thou wilt.
 For presently I shall wake this
 brash and stirring knight and

I deem that he will tell me
 the truth of this & of naught
 else. Tell me thou where of the
 Queening Champ form, where
 and how many times thou hast
 lain in this good knight's arms
 since last Tuesday. Now
 where & never quoth I. Thou
 liest I doubt me said the Red
 Knight. However let us see
 what thou doaght to me wilt say.
 Foh thou deemest he shall be
 hard to wake up dost thou
 not. Well I shall see to that.
 He who greeth sleep may take
 it away again.

The Red Knight he went
 up to the Black One and
 stooped adown over his
 head and spoke some words
 over him, but so softly that
 I heard not them enport and
 straightway the sleeper rose
 up so suddenly that he well-
 nigh smote against the Red
 Knight. He stood awhile stag-
 gering & blinking at the oth-
 er one but somehow got his
 sword drawn forth & the Red
 Knight hindered him naught
 therein but again anon when
 the other was come to himself
 somewhat. The side of the day
 is that Sir Thomas True
 Thomas lay in the bed and
 most fair the bedfellow.

The Black Knight drew
 I back from him and was
 now come awake where-
 fore he stood on his guard but

Part V. The
Tale of the
Quest's
Ending

said nought. Then said the Red Knight: Sir Thomas, I have been asking this fair lady a question, but her memory faileth her, & she may not answer it; perchance thou mayest do better. Tell me where and how many times hast thou bedded her betwixt last Tuesday and this? Nowhere & never, cried Sir Thomas, knitting his brows & handling his sword. Nah, said the Red Knight, an echo of her speech is this. Lo, the tale ye have made up betwixt you. But at least, having done mine errand, though meene meeth somewhat leisurely, & having gotten the woman for me, thou art now bringing her on to the Red Hold, whatever thou hast done with her on the road? I am not, said my fellow, I am leading her away from the Red Hold. Pury of thee quoth the other, that thou hast fallen in with me, & thou but half-armed. And he raised aloft his sword: but presently sank it again, & let the point rest on the earth.

WHEN he spoke again, not mockingly as erst: A word before we end it, Thomas: thou hast hitherto done well by me, as I by thee. I say thou hast gotten this woman, and I doubt not that at first thou hadst the mind to bring her to me unminished.

182

but then thou wert overcome by her beauty, as forsooth I know thee woman-mad, & thou hadst meant to keep her for thyself, as forsooth I marvel not. But in thy love-making thou hast not bethought thee that keep her to thyself thou mayest not while I am above ground, save thou bewray me, and join thee to my foemen and thine. Because I am such a man, that what I desire that will I have. for this reason, when I mis-doubted me of thee for thy much-tarrying, I cast the sleep over thee, & have caught thee. for what wilt thou do? Doubt it not, that if our swords meet, I shall pay thee for trying to take my bed-thrall from me by taking from thee no more than thy life. But now will I forgive thee all if thou wilt ride home quietly with me and this damsel errant to the Red Hold, and let her be mine & not thine so long as I will; & then afterwards, if thou wilt, she shall be thine as long as thou wilt. Now behold, both this chance & thy life is a mere gift of me to thee, for otherwise thou shalt have neither damsel nor life.

AEH, yea, said my friend, I know what thou wouldst: I have been no unhandy devil to thee this long while, and thou wouldst fain keep me still; but now I will be

devil no longer, on this earth at least, but will die & take my luck of it. And do thou, God, see to the saving of this damsel, since thou hast taken the matter out of my hands. Farewell, dear maiden!

SCHERCE was the word out of his mouth ere his sword was in the air, and he smote so fierce and straight that he beat down the huge man's blade, and, ere he could master it again, smote the Red Knight so heavily on the crest that he fell to his knees; & the heart rose in me, for I deemed that he might yet prevail; and in as 'twere a flash I bethought me of the knife at my girdlestead, & drew it and ran to the Red Knight, & tore aside his mail hood with one hand and thrust the knife into his shoulder with the other; but so mighty was he that he heeded nought the hurt, but swept his sword back-handed at the Black Knight's unarmed leg, and smote him so sore a wound that down he fell clattering. Then arose the Red Knight, & thrust me from him with the left hand, and strode over my fellow-farer & thrust his sword through his throat. Then he turned to me, & spake in a braying voice as if a harsh horn were blown: Abide thou, if thou takest one step I will

slay thee at once. So he went and sat down on a bank a little way from the dead man, and wiped his sword on the grass and laid it beside him, and so sat pondering a while. Thereafter he called me to him, and bade me stand in face of him with my hands clasped before me. Then he spake to me: Thou art my thrall and my having, since I had thus doomed it no few days ago; & thou art now in my hands for me to do with as I will. Now instead of being meek and obedient to me thou hast rebelled against me, shot an arrow at me, run from me, denied answer to my questions, & thrust a knife into me. To be short, thou hast made thyself my foe furthermore, it is by thy doing that I have lost a right good servant and a trusty fellow, and one that I loved; it is thou that hast slain him. Now have I been pondering what I shall do with thee. I said: If I have deserved the death, then make an end & slay me presently; but bring me not to thine house, I pray thee. I pray by the mother that bore thee!

BOTH he: Hold thy peace, it is not what thou deserveest that I am looking to, but what shall pleasure me. Now hearken; I say that thou hast made thee

Part V The
Excelsior
Cannon
Firing

Part V The
Tale of the
Ending

my foe, & I have overcome thee: thou art my runaway thrall, & I have caught thee. As my foe I might slay thee in any evil way (it might like me; as my thrall I might well chastise thee as sharply & as bitterly as I would. But it is not my pleasure to slay thee, rather I will bring thee to the Red Hold, & there see what we may make of thee; whereas I cannot but deem that in thee is the making of some what more than a thrall; and if not, then a thrall must thou needs be. Again as to the chastising of thee, that also I forgive thee since I have gotten the hope aforesaid. Yet forsooth some shame must I do thee to pay thee back for the love that was betwixt thee and the slain man. I will ponder what it shall be; but take heed that whatsoever it shall be, it will not avail thee to pray me to forego it, though thy speech be as fair & sweet as thy body.

WHEREWITH he was silent a while, and I stood there not daring to move, and my heart was so downcast that all the sweetness of life seemed departed. Yet I withheld lamentations or prayers, thinking within myself, who knows what occasion may be between this & the Red Hold for my escaping; let me keep myself alive for that if it may be.

PRESENTLY he arose and took his sword, & went up to the slain man's body & smote the head from off it. Then he went to the two horses of Sir Thomas and of me, & took from them such gear of girths & thongs as he would, and therewith he dight me as ye saw, doing a girth about my middle & making me fast to a line wherewith to hold me in tow. And then he did that other thing which sickens my very soul to tell of, to wit, that he took the slain man's head & tied a lace thereto, and hung it about my neck; and as he did so, he said: This jewel shalt thou thyself bear to mine house, & there belike shall we lay it in earth, since the man was my trusty fellow. Lo now, this is all the ill I shall do thee till it be tried of what avail thou art. This is a shaming to thee and not a torment, for I will ride a foot's pace, & the green way is both soft and smooth; wherefore fear not that I shall throw thee down or drag thee along. And tomorrow thy shame shall be gone and we shall see what is to betide.

O, friends, this is the last word he spake ere he was slain, and the ending of my tale; for we had gone thus but a little way ere

ye brake out of the wood upon us; & then befell the death of one friend, & the doubt, maybe, of the others, and all the grief and sorrow that I shall never be quit of unless ye forgive me where I have done amiss, and help me in the days to come. And she spread out her hands before them, & bowed her head, and the tears fell from her eyes on to the floor.

VIRIDIS wept at Birdalone's weeping, and Hurta for her own sorrow, which this other sorrow stirred. Htra wept not, but her face was sadder than weeping.

BUT Arthur spake and said: Herein hath been the hand of Weird, and hath been heavy on us; but no blame have we to lay on our sister Birdalone, nor hath she done light-mindedly by us; though maybe she erred in not trusting to the good hap of the Quest to bring us back in due time: and all that she saith do we trow as if it were written in the holy Gospel. They all yeasaid this, & called on her to come amongst them; but she thought of little at first save the joy of hearing the sweetness of those words as Arthur spake them; wherefore she hung back a little, and thought shame of it that she might not give more heed to the others

of them. Then came Viridis & took her by the hand and led her to birdugh, and Birdalone knelt down before him & took his hand to kiss it, but he put both hands about her face and kissed her kindly and merrily on the lips. Then she knelt before Hurta, and was hapless before her; but Hurta kissed her, and bade her be of better cheer, albeit the words came coldly from her mouth. Next she came to Arthur, and knelt before him and took his hand and kissed it, and thanked him kindly for his kind words, looking into his face meanwhile; & she saw that it was pale and troubled now, and she longed to be alone with him that she might ask him wherefore.

FOR Htra, she arose as Birdalone came before her, and cast her arms about her neck, & wept and sobbed upon her bosom, and then went hurrying from out the solar and into the hall, & walked to and fro there a while until the passion that tore her was lulled somewhat, & she might show her face to them calm & friendly once more. And as she entered Arthur was speaking, and he said

TO you, ladies, I tell what we of the castle wot better than well, that our dear friend hath escaped so heavy a

Part I The
End of the
Quest's
Ending

fate in escaping the Red Hold, that it were unmeet for us to murmur at our loss in our fellow; for a warrior's life, which is ever in peril of death, is nought over heavy a ransom for such a friend, and so dear and lovely, from such a long & evil death. Whereas ye must wot that the said Hold hath this long while been a very treasure-house of woes and a coffer of lamentations, for merciless was the tyrant thereof, & merciless all his folk. Now another time, when ye are stronger in heart than now ye be, I may tell you tales thereof closer and more nicely of those who did his will; as of his innermost band of men-at-arms, called the Milkens; and of his fellow-worker in wizardry & venoms, called the Apothecary; and the three hags, called the Furies; & the three young women, called the Graces; & his hounds that love man's flesh; & the like tales, as evil as night-mares turned into deeds of the day. But now and here will I say this, that when we have done the obsequies of our dear fellow, it were good that we follow up the battle so valantly begun by him. I mean that the Quest of our ladies being now accomplished, we should turn what is left of the fellowship into a war against the Red Hold and its evil things, and that so

soon as the relics of Baudoin are laid in earth, we gather force & go thither in arms to live or die in the quarrel, & so sweeten the earth, as did the men of ancient days when they slew the dragons and the giants, & the children of hell, and the sons of Cain.

HIS cheek flushed as he spoke, and he looked around till his eyes fell on Birdalone, & he saw that her face also glowed and her eyes gleamed; but Viridis, her heart sank so that she paled, and her lips trembled.

THE Hurta spake & said: I thank thee for thy word, Black Squire and I know that my man shall rejoice in Paradise when he knoweth of it, and thereof shall I tell him tomorrow when the mass is said for him.

THE ND HURTA said, Good is the word, & we look to it that the deed shall be better yet. Thus hath the evil arisen that shall destroy the evil, as oft hath been when the valiant have been grieved, & the joy of the true-hearted hath been stolen from them: then the hand doth the doughty deed and the heart hath ease, and solaced is sorrow.

THEY looked on her and wondered, for she spake with her head upraised

and her eyes glittering, as she had been one of the wise women of yore agone. And Birdalone feared her, though she loved her.

HETLY spake Hugh, and said: Brother, this is well thought of indeed, & I marvel that I did not prevent thee; and I am thine to live and die with thee. And the adventure is nought unlikely; for if we have lost a captain they have lost their head devil, and their head little devil; moreover, the good men of Greenford shall join them to us, and that shall make us strong, whereas they have men enough & those stout men, at arms: and artificers they have to make us engines, and do other wisdom: & therewithal money to buy or to wage what they will. Wherefore, to my mind, we were best to make no tarrying, but send out the messengers for the host-ing straightway.

STRAIGHTWAY, said the Black Squire; and let us go now and find Sir Hymene. So they arose both and went their ways, and left the women there alone, & were gone a good while.

Chapter VIII. Atra and Birdalone talk together while the Lords sit at the Murder-coun-

70

Part V. The Tale of the Ending

ANDWHILE of their absence, Vindis sat sad and silent and downcast though he wept not, for her gladness, which erst had been so great, seemed now rift from her; and no merrier was Hurea, as might have been looked for. But Atra came quietly unto Birdalone, and said softly: I have a word for thee if thou wilt come forth with me into the hall. Birdalone's heart failed her somewhat, but she suffered Atra to take her hand, and they went into the hall together, and Atra brought her into a shot-window & they sat down together side by side and were silent awhile. Spake Atra then, trembling & reddening: Birdalone, knowest thou what thought, what hope, was in my heart when I spake so proudly and rashly e'en now? Birdalone kept silence, and trembled as the other did. This it was, said Atra: he will go to this battle valiantly, he may fall there, and that were better; for then is life to begin anew: and what is there to do with these dregs of life? Said Birdalone, with flushed face: If he die

he shall die goodly & if he live
he shall live goodly. ¶ Yea, yea,
said Atra; forsooth thou art a
happy woman! ¶ Dost thou
hate me? said Birdalone. ¶ Said
Atra: Proud is thy word, but I
hate thee not. Nay, e'en now,
when I spake thus boastfully,
I thought: When he hath died
as a doughty knight should,
then, when life begins again,
Birdalone & I shall be friends
and sisters, & we two will talk
together oft and call him to
mind, & the kindness of him,
& how he loved us. Woe's me!
(that was when he was there sit-
ting beside me and I could see
him and his kindness; & then
it was as if I could give him a-
way; but now he is gone & I may
not see him, it is clear to me
that I have no part or lot in him,
and I call back my thought and
my word, and now it is: O that
he may live! O thou happy wo-
man, that shall be glad wheth-
er he liveth or dieth!

Said Birdalone: And
now thou hatest me,
& dost thou not, and we
are foes? ¶ Atra answered not,
nor spake for a while; then she
said: Hard and bitter is it, and
I know not what to turn to. I
have seen once & again, on the
wall of the Minorites' church at
Greenford, a fair picture of the
Blessed, & they walking in the
meads of Paradise, clad in like

raiment, men and women; their
heads flower-crowned, their feet
naked in the harmless blos-
somed grass; hand in hand they
walk, with all wrath passed for-
ever, all desire changed into lov-
ing-kindness, all the anguish of
forgiveness forgotten. And un-
derneath the picture is it writ:

Bitter winter, burning sum-
mer, never more shall waste
and wear;
Blossom of the rose undying
brings undying springtide
there.

O for the hope of it, that I might
hope it! O for the days to be
and the assuaging of sorrow;
I speak the word, and the hope
springeth; the word is spoken,
and there abideth desire bar-
ren of hope! ¶ And she bowed
down her head and wept bit-
terly; and Birdalone called to
mind her kindness of the past
and wept for her, she also.

AFTER a while Atra lift-
ed up her head, and thus
she spake: I hate thee
not, Birdalone; nor doth one
say such things to a foe. Yea,
furthermore, I will crave some-
what of thee. If ever there come
a time when thou mayst do
something for me, thou wilt
know it belike without my tel-
ling thee. In that day & in that
hour I bid thee remember how
we stood together erst at the

star-foot of the Mailing Tower in the Isle of Increase Un-sought, and thou naked and fearful and quaking, and what I did to thee that tude to comfort thee and help & save thee. And then when thou hast called it to mind, do thou for me what thou canst do. Will thou promise this? Yea, yea, said Birdalone, and with all the better will, that oft and over again have I called it to mind. Wherefore I beight thee to let me serve thee if I may whenso the occasion cometh, even if it be to my own pain and grief; for this I know thou meancst.

So thou to this then, said Hira coldly, & thou shalt be the better for it in the long run belike for thou art a happy woman.

She arose as she spake, & said that here come the lords from the murder-council, and lo, now that he cometh, my heart groweth evil toward thee again & well-nigh biddeth me wish that thou wert naked & helpless before me again. Lo my unhap' that he should mark my face that it shows as if I were fain to do thee amischief And nought of that would I do for how should it avail me, and thou my fellow and the faithful messenger of the Quest?

NOW LITTLE of her last words did Birdalone meet, as into the hall came Hugh and Arthur & though she strove to sober her mind & think of her she-friend and her unhappiness, yet she could not choose but to be full of joy in her inmost heart now she knew without doubt that she was so well-beloved of her beloved, and she deemed that Hira was in the right indeed to call her a happy woman.

Now they all went in to the solar together, and sat them down with the two others, & Hugh did them to wit, how they had ordered all the matter of the messengers who were to summon the knights and chiefs of thereabouts, and the aldermen of Greenford, to meet at the Castle of the Quest, that they might set afoot the hosting to go against the Red Hold.

At chapter 18 is the end of the first part of the Quest and the end of the first part of the book.

WHEN THIS was said, and there had been silence a while Birdalone took up the word, and spake meekly & sweetly saying Dear friends, how it fared with you on the isle from the time of my leaving you, and how with you, true knights, from the time of

*Part V The
Tale of the
Quest is
ending*

**Part V The
Tale of the
Quest's
Ending**

your departure I both were fain to know for the tale's sake, and also I would take the telling thereof as a sign of your forgiveness of my transgression; so I would crave the same of you but if it weary you overmuch.

ALL they yeasaid her kindly, & Hugh spake & said: By your leave, fellows, I will tell in few words what befell us on our way to the Isle of Increase Unsought, and then shall Viridis take up the tale from the time that Birdalone left the said isle in the witch's ferry. None said aught against it, and Hugh went on: Short is my tale of the journey. We came to the Isle of Nothing on the morrow's morn of our departure, and being warned of thee, Birdalone, we abode there but a little while to rest us from the boat, and went no whitther from the strand, and so went on our way in a three hours' space.

THE NCE again we took to the water, & came to the Isle of Kings, and that was in the middle of the night: we beheld the dead long and heedfully when the morning came, & departed again before noon, and came to the Isle of Queens a little after nightfall. The next morning we deemed we needs must go see the im-

ages of those ladies, lest aught might have befall since thou wert there which might be of import to the Quest, but all was unchanged, and we came away while the day was yet young.

WE made the Isle of the Young and the Old about sunset that day, and the boy and the girl came down to the strand to behold us & wonder at us, & we sported with them merrily a while; & then they brought us to the house of the old man, who received us courteously and gave us to eat and drink. forsooth, when the night was somewhat spent, he brought out strong drink to us, and took it somewhat amiss that we drank not overmuch thereof, as forsooth he did, and so fell asleep. Before he was drunk we asked him many questions about the Isle & its customs, but he knew nought to tell us of them. Of thee also we asked, sister, but he had no memory of thee.

IN the morrow he fared down with us to our ferry, and made many prayers to us to take him along with us; for here, said he, is neither lordship nor fair lady; and if here I abide, soon shall I come to mine ending day, and sore I yearn for joyance and a long term to my years. Now we durst not take him aboard

least we should fare amiss with the wight of the Sending Boat; so we naye said him courteously, thanked him for his guesting, and gave him gifts, to wit, a finger gold ring & an ouch of gold, so he turned away from us somewhat downcast as we deemed: but ere we had given the word to the Sending Boat we heard him singing merrily in a high cracked voice as he went on his way.

Well on this last day bethid somewhat of new tidings for scarce was this isle out of sight behind, ere we saw a boat come sailing toward us from the north-east, and it came on swiftly with a blue ripple of the lake behind it. Therat we marvelled, and yet more when we saw that its sail was striped of gold and green & black: next then were we betwixt fear and joy when, as it drew nigher, we saw three women in the said boat, clad in gold, green, and black; and it came so nigh unto us at last, that we could see their faces that they were verily those of our lovelings: & each reached out her arms to us & called on us for help, each by our name: and there we were, oarless, sailless, at the mercy of our unhenned ferry. Then would Bawdoin & I have leapt overboard to swim to our loves at all ad-

venture; but Sir Arthur here stayed us, and bade us think of it, that we were now nearing the Witch-land, & if we might not look to be beset with gilles & gins to keep us from winning to our journey's end; wherefore we forbore, though in all wretchedness, & the gay boat ran down the wind away from us, and the breeze and the ripple passed away with it, & the lake lay under the hot sun as smooth as glass: and on we went, weary-hearted.

Game again another sail out of the north-east, when the sun was getting low, and speedily it drew nigh, but this time it was no small boat or barge, but a tall ship with great sails, & goodly, towered she was and shield-hung, & the banners gleamed and the spears glittered from her castle-tops and bulwarks, & the sound of her horns came down the wind as she neared us. We two handled our weapons and did on our banners, but Arthur there, he sat still, and said: Not over-wise is the witch, that she lets loose on us two sendings in one day so like unto each other. Hah, said Bawdoin, be we wary though; they are going to shoot. And sure enough we saw a line of bowmen in all the castles and even along, and a horn blew, &

Part I The
Tale of the
Quest &
Ending

then forth flew the shafts but whither we knew not, for none came anywhere anigh us; and Arthur laughed & said: A fair shot into the clouds; but, by our Lady! if none shot better in our country, I would bear no armour for their shafts. But we two were confused & knew not what to think.

THE great ship flew past us on the wind as the barge had done, but when she was about half a mile aloof we saw her canvas fall to shivering & her yards swaying round, & Arthur cried out: St. Nicholas! the play beginneth again! she is coming about!

THEN no it was, and presently she was bearing down us, and was ere long so close aboard that we could see her every spar and rope, & her folk all gathered to the windward, knights, sergeants, archers, and mariners, to gaze at us and mock us; and huge & devilish laughter arose from amongst them as she ploughed the water so close beside us, that one might well nigh have cast a morsel of bread aboard her, for clear it was presently that she had no mind to run us down.

SAKE ARTHUR then: There will be a fresh play presently, my mates, but ye sit fast, for meecmeth this

show is no more perilous than the other, though it be bigger.

SCHARGE were the words out of his mouth, ere there was a stir amongst the men gathered in the waist, and lo, amidst a knot of big & fierce mariners, three women standing, pale, with flying hair, and their hands bound behind them, and one was clad in gold and another in green and the third in black; and their faces were as the faces of Aurea and Viridis and Atra.

THEN there came forth from that ship a huge cruel roar blent with mocking laughter that shamed our very hearts, and those evil things in the form of mariners took hold of each one of the ladies and cast them overboard into the gulf of the waters, first Aurea, next Viridis, and then Atra; & we two stood up with our useless swords brandished & would have leapt over into the deep, but that Arthur arose also & took hold of an arm of each of us & stayed us, and said: Nay, then, if ye go, take me with you, and let all the Quest sink down into the deep, and let our lovings pine in captivity, and Birdalene lose all her friends in one swoop, and we be known hereafter as the fools of lovers, the unstable.

SO we sat us down, but
a huge shrieking laugh-
ter rose up unblended
from the keel of the evil thing,
& then they let her go down the
wind, & she went her way with
flashing of arms, and stream-
ing of banners and pennons,
and blowing of horns, and the
sun was setting over the wide
water.

THEN Arthur spake: Cheer
up, brethren! see ye not
how this proud witch is
also but an eyeless fool to send
us such a show, & the second
time in one day to show us the
images of our dearlings, who
hours ago fluted past us in the
strange-made boat? Where then
did they of the ship meet with
them? Nay, lords, let not the
anguish of love steal all your
wits.

WE saw we had been
fools to be so over-
cast by guile, and yet
were we exceeding ill at ease, &
overlong the time seemed un-
to us until we should be come to
the Isle of Increase Unsought,
and find our lovings there.

When the night came,
and we fell asleep, but
belike were not often all
asleep at once: & at last it was,
when we felt the dawn draw-
ing near, though, the moon be-
ing down, it was the darkest
of the summer night, that we

were all three awake, when all
of a sudden we heard just a-
stern the rushing of the water,
as though some keel were cleav-
ing it, and dimly in the dark we
saw a sail as of a boat overhaul-
ing us. Close at hand there rang
out a lamentable cry: O, are ye
there, fellows of the Quest?
O, help me, friends! save me &
deliver me, who am snatched
away to be cast into the hands
of my mistress that was, Help
me, Baudoin, Nugh, Arthur!
Help! help!

WHEN all we knew the
voice of Birdalone, and
Arthur leapt up, and
would have been overboard in
a trice had not we two held him,
and he fought and cursed us
well-favouredly, there is no
way thereto; & meanwhile the
wailing voice of thee, my sis-
ter, died out in the distance, &
the east grew grey, and dawn
was come.

WHEN spake Baudoin:
Arthur, my brother, dost
thou not mark that this
also was of the same sort of
show as those two others, &
thou who wert so wise before?
It is but beguiling to bring
the Quest to nought; where-
fore call to mind thy manhood
and thy much wisdom!

AND we admonished him
and rebuked him till he
became quiet and wise as

gain but was sad and down-
cast and silent. But the Send-
ing Boat sped on through the
dawning, & when it was light
we saw that we had the Isle of
Increase close aboard, and we
ran ashore there just as the
sun was rising. Fain were we
then to get out of the boat and
feel earth under our feet. We
took all our hards out of the
boat, and hid away under the
roots of an old thorn a little
mail, wherein was your rai-
ment, my ladies, which ye had
lent to Birdalene; then we did
on our armour, and advised us
of whereabouts on the isle we
were, and we saw the orchards
and gardens before us, and the
great fair house above all, even
as ye told us of them, Bird-
alone.

NEXT then, without more
ado we went our ways up
through the orchard and
the gardens, and when we were
well nigh at the end of them,
& in face of those many steps
ye spoke of, we saw at the foot
of them a tall woman clad in
red scarlet, standing as if she
abode our coming. When we
drew nigh we saw that she
was strong/looking well-knit,
white-skinned, yellow-haired,
and blue-eyed, and might have
been called a fair woman, as to
her shaping, save that her face
was heavy, yet hard-looking.

with thin lips and somewhat
flagging cheeks, a face stupid,
but proud and cruel.

SHE HALLED us as we
came up, and said. Men/
at arms, ye be welcome
to our house, and I bid you to
eat and drink and abide here.
Then we louted before her,
and bade her hail; & Baudoin
said: Lady, thy bidding will
we take; yet have we an errand
to declare ere we break bread
with thee, lest when it is told
we be not so welcome as ye tell
us now. What is it? said she.
Said Baudoin: This man
here is called the Green Knight,
and this the Black Squire, and
I am the Golden Knight; and
now will we ask thee if this isle
be called the Isle of Increase
Unsought? Even so have I
called it, quoth she, wherefore
I deem none other will dare call
it otherwise. It is well, quoth
Baudoin; but we have heard say
that hereto had strayed three
dear friends of ours, three mai-
dens, who hight Viridis, the
friend of the Green Knight, &
Htra, who is the Black Squire's,
and Hurca who is mine own
friend. So we have come to take
them home with us, since they
have been so long away from
their land and their loves. Now
if they be thy friends thou
wilt perchance let them go for
love's sake and the eking of

friendship; but if they be thy captives, then are we well willing to pay thee ransom, not according to their worth, for no treasure heaped up might come nigh it, but according to thy desire, lady.

LADY SIGNED the proud lady scornfully & said, Big are thy words, Sir knight, if I had these maidens in my keeping I would give them unto you for nothing, & deem that I had the best of the bargain. But here are they not. True it is that I had here three thralls who were hight as thou hast said; but a while ago, not many days, they transgressed against me till I chastised them; and then was I weary of them & would be quit of them; for I need no servants here, whereas I myself am enough for myself. Wherefore I sent them away across the water to my sister, who dwells in a fair place hight the House under the Wood: for she needeth servants, because the earth there yieldeth nought save to the tiller and the herdsman & the hunter, while here all cometh unsought. With her may ye deal, for what I know, and buy the maidens whom ye prize so high; though belike ye may have to give her other servants in their place. For, indeed, a while ago her thrall fled from

her and left her half undone. & it is said that she came hither in her shamecleanness but I know not if she did she slipped through my fingers, or else I would have made her rue her impudence. Now meseemeth, Sir Knight, here is enough of so small and foolish a matter; and again I pray you to enter my poor house, and take meat and drink along with me, for ye be none the less welcome because of your errand, though it be a foolish one.

NOW would Sir Baudoin have answered wrathfully but Arthur intervened at his skirt, & he ye said the lady's bidding, though somewhat ungraciously; but that she heeded nought; she took Sir Baudoin by the hand & led him up the stately perron, and thence came we into a pilared hall, as fair as might be. And there on the dais was a table dight with dainty meats and drinks, and the lady bade us thereto, and we sat to it.

THEREAT was the lady buxom and merry: Baudoin seemed across the board. I was wary and silent but Arthur was as blithe with the lady as she with him, nor did I altogether marvel thereat, since I knew him wise of wit.

Part 5 The
Tale of the
Queen's
Fading

Part V. The
Tale of the
Quest's
Ending

BUT when we were done with the meal, the lady stood up & said: Now, Sir knights, I will give you leave; but this house is as your own to roam through all its chambers & pleasure you with its wonders and goodliness; and when ye are weary of the house, then is the orchard and the garden free to you, and all the isle wheresoever ye will go. And here in this hall is meat & drink for you whenso ye will; but if ye would see me again to-day, then shall ye meet me where ye first happened on me e'en now, at the foot of the great perron.

WHEN she laid her hand on Arthur's shoulder, & said: Thy big friend may search out every nook in this house, and every bush in the whole island, & if he find there the maidens he spake of, one or all of them, then are they a gift from me unto him.

WHEREWITH she turned, and went out of the hall by a door in the side thereof; and now already me seemed that though the woman was hateful and thick-hearted and cruel, yet she was become fairer, or seemed so, than when we first came on her; and for my part I pondered on what it might grow to, and fear of her came into my soul.

NOW spake Baudoin: fellows, let us get out into the garden at least; for this place is evil, and me seems it smells and tastes of tears & blood, & that evil wights that hate the life of men are lurking in the nooks thereof. And lo, our very she-friend that was so kind and simple and dainty with us, there is, as it were, the image of the dear maiden standing trembling and naked before the stupid malice of this lump of flesh. So spake he, Birdalone.

BUT I said to Arthur in a soft voice: And when shall we slay her? Said he: Not until we have gotten from her all that may be gotten; & that is the living bodies of our friends. But come we forth.

SO did we, and came down to the orchard and did off our helms, and lay down under a big apple-tree which was clear of cover all round about, and so fell to our rest; & I asked Arthur what he deemed of the story of our loves having been carried to the house under the Wood, & if it might not be tried seeking thither; but he laughed and said: Never would she have told us thereof had it been sooth: doubtless our friends are here on this isle, but, as I deem, not in the

house, else had not the witch left all the house free for us to search into. ¶ Yea, said I, but how if they be in her prison? ¶ Said he: It is not hard to find out which is the prison of so dainty a house as is yonder; and when we had found it, soon should we have hit upon a way to break it, since we be three, & stout fellows enough. Nay, I deem that the lovelings be stowed away in some corner of the isle without the house, and that may happen we shall find them there; & yet I trow not before we have made guile meet guile, and overcome the sorcerers. But come now, let us bedorring, and begin to quarter this little land as the keutrel doth the water-meadow; & leave we our armour, lest we weary us, for we shall have no need for hard strokes.

WE hung up there on the tree helm & shield and hauberk, and all our defences, & went our ways quartering the isle; & the work was toilsome, but we rested not till the time was come to keep tryst with the lady; and all that while we found no sign of the darling ones: and the isle was everywhere a meadow as fair as a garden, with little copses of sweet-growing trees here and there, and goodly brooks of water, but no tillage anywhere:

wild things, as hart and buck and roe we came upon, & smaller deer withal, but all unhurtful to man, but of herding was no token

WHEN we then back to that lordly perron, and there, at the foot thereof, stood the witch-wife, and received us joyously: clad was she all gloriously in red scarlet broidered and begemmed; her arms bare and her feet sandalled, & her yellow hair hanging down from under its garland. & certainly it was so that she had grown fairer, and was sleek and white and well-shapen, and well-haired: yet by all that, the visage of her was little bettered, and unto me she was loathsome.

WHEN the feast went much as the earlier meal had done, and Raudoin was surly and Arthur blithe & buxom; & nought befell to tell of, save that dishes and meats, & flasks and cups, and all things came upon the board as if they were borne thereon by folk unseen; and thereat we wondered not much, considering in what wonder-house we were. But the lady-witch looked on us and smiled, and said, Knights, ye marvel at the manner of our service, but call to mind that we told you this morning that we were enough for Ourselves, &

Part IV The
Quest of the
Questing
Beast

we have so dight our days here that who so is our friend on this Isle of Increase shall lack nothing. fear not, therefore, to see aught ugly in our servants as now unseen, if their shapes were made manifest unto you.

ALL things were we heedful to note at this banquet; but when it was over then came music into the hall from folk unseen, but not as if the musicians were many, only belike some three or four. And thereat the lady spake, saying. Knights, ye may deem our minstrels but few, but such is our mind that we love not our music over loud. & for the most part only three sing or play unto us at one time.

THERE AFTER the lady brought us to fair chambers, and we slept there in all ease, and we arose on the morrow & found the lady still blithe with us; yet I noted this, that she seemed to deal with Arthur as if she saw him now for the first time, and much he seemed to be to her liking.

WHEN we fared forth, and were no less diligent in searching the isle than erst, & found nought; and all went that day as before.

ON the morrow (that is, the third day) the witch seemed to have somewhat more memory of Arthur

than erst, & even yet more liking of him, so that she reached out her hand for him to kiss, which needs must he do, despite his loathing of her.

WHEN we had lain under the apple-tree a little while, Baudoin spake and said: Yesterday and the day before we searched the open land and found nought; now to-day let us search the house, and if we find nought, then at least it shall lie behind us. **S**he ye said it, and presently went back, & from chamber to chamber, and all was fair and goodly as might be, & we marvelled what would betide to it when the witch was undone and her sorcery come to an end.

O the Walling Tower we came, & up the stairs, and found the door open of the prison-chamber, & all there as thou hast told us, Birdalone; only we opened the great coffer, whence thou didst refrain thee, and found it full of hideous gear truly, as fetters and chains, and whips and rods, and evil tools of the tormentors, and cursed it all and came away, and Arthur said, Lo you, this stupid one! How eager is she to bid us what to do, & to tell us that our ladies are not in this evil house, since she leaveth all open to us.

Yet we went about the house without, and counted the windows heedfully to see that we had missed no chamber, and found nought amiss; and then we went in again and sought as low down as we might, to see if perchance some dungeon there were underground, but found nought save a very goodly undercroft below the great hall, which was little less fair than that which was above it. So came the evening and the banquet, and the end of that day; but the witch-wife led Arthur by the hand to the board, and afterwards to the chamber ere we slept.

IN the fourth day & the fifth it was no other-wise than erst; & when I fared to bed I felt confused in my head and sick of heart.

THE night of the next day (the sixth), as we went to our chambers, & the witch-wife and Arthur hand-in-hand, she stayed him a while, & spake eagerly to him in a soft voice; and as he came up to me afterwards he said: To-night I have escaped it, but there will not be escape for long. From what? said I. He said: from bedding her; for now it has come to this, that presently we must slay her at once and have no knowledge of our sweetlings, or I must do her will.

IN such wise passed four more days, & it was the twelfth morning of our sojourn there & we went forth on our search of every mead & every covert of the isle, and all day we found nought to our purpose, but as it grew toward sunset, and there grew great clouds in the eastern ort, piled up & copper-coloured, we came over a bent on to a little green dale watered by a clear brook, & as we looked down into it we saw something shine amongst its trees; so we hastened toward that gleam, & lo, amidst the dale, with the brook running through it, a strange garth we saw. for there was a pavilion done of timber and board, and gaily painted and gilded, and out from that house was, as it were, a great cage of thin gilded bars, both walls and roof, just so wide apart as no one full-grown, earl or queen, could thrust through.

WHITHERWARD then ran we, shouting, for we saw at once that in the said cage were three women whose aspect was that of our sweetlings, and presently we were standing by the said herse, reaching our hands out to them to come to us and tell us their tale, and that we would deliver them. But they stood together in the midst of the

said cage, & though they gazed pitiously on us thence, and reached out their hands to us, they neither spake nor came to the herse to us: so we deemed that they were bewitched, and our joy was dashed.

WHEN we went all about the cage and the pavilion to find ingate, & found it not; & then the three of us together strove with the bars of the herse, & shook and swayd them, but it was all to no purpose.

MOREOVER, while we were at this work the sun seemed to go out, & there came a heavy black mist rolling into the dale, & wrapped us about so that we saw not each other's faces, & the bars of the herse were gone from our hands as we stood there. Then came rain & thunder and lightning on to the black night, and by the glare of the lightning we could see the leaves & grass of the dale, but neither herse nor house nor woman. So we abode there in the dark night, & the storm all bewildered us, till the rain and clouds drew off and it was calm fair starlight again, but clean gone was the golden cage & they that stood therein; and we turned sadly, and went our ways toward the witch-house.

WHEN THE way said Arthur brethren, this me seemeth is but a going on with the shows which were played us on the water as we came hither; but whether she doth this but for to mock and torment us, or that she would beguile us into deeming that our friends are verily here, I wot not; but to-morrow, meseemeth, I shall can to tell you.

NOW came we to the perron of the house, & there stood the witch-wife under the stars to meet us. And when she saw us, she took hold of Arthur by the hand and the arm to caress him, and found that he and we were drenched with the rain and the storm, as might well be deemed; then she bade us up to our chambers to do on raiment which she had dight for us, & we went thither, & found our garments rich & dainty indeed; but when we came down into the hall where the witch abode us, we saw that Arthur's raiment was far the richest and daintiest. But the witch ran to him and cast her arms about him, and clipped & kissed him before the others, and he suffered it. So sped the feast again.

WHEN they went to bed, the said witch took Arthur's hand & spake a word unto him, and led him

away, and he went with her as one nought loth; but we twain were afraid lest she should destroy him when she had had her will of him. Wherefore we waked through the more part of the night with our swords ready to hand.

BUT when we were clad in the morn he came unto us, he also clad, and was downcast and shamefaced indeed, but safe and sound; and he said: Speak no word about our matter till we be out in the open air, for I fear all things about us.

SO WHEN we had gone forth & were under the apple-tree once more, spake Arthur: Now, lords, am I shamed forever, for I have become the leman of this evil creature; but I pray ye not to mock me: and that the more as the same lot may happen on you both, or either; for I can see for sure that the wretch will weary of me & desire one of you two. Let it pass. Somewhat have I found out from her, but not much. First, that she has forgotten her first lie, to wit, how she sent our ladies to the sister-witch: for I told her of the golden cage, and how we had missed it in the storm: and she said: Though I deem it a folly that ye should seek these thralls, yet would I help you

if I might since we are now become my dear friends. Though, forsooth, when ye meet them I deem that ye will find them sore changed to you. For, as I told you, they fled away from me, after I had chastised them for a treason, into the hidden places of the isle, whereas they had no heel to sail away hence. And I cared not to follow them, as I myself am queen & lady of all things here, and am enough for myself, save when love constraineth me, dear lord. Now, my rede is that ye seek the golden cage again & yet again, because I deem that these thralls have somehow learned some wisdom & they have enchanted the said cage for a defence against me, from whom they might not hide as they did from you; for of me have they stolen their wizardry, & I am their mistress therein.

THIS, therefore, is the new lie of her, and my rede is that we heed it nought. For my mind is that she it is that hath made the appearance of the cage & the women therein, and that she hath our poor friends somewhere underneath her hand.

AND thus we deemed most like; yet whereas we had nought to do with the time, which, now that we had searched the isle thoroughly,

THE END OF
THE
QUEEN'S
ENDING

hung heavy on hand, we deemed it good to go to the dale of the golden cage again, though we looked not to find the cage there any more. But this betid, that we found the little dale easily enough, and there stood the cage as we had seen it yesterday, but nought was there within its bright bars save the grass and the flowers, and the water of the brook a-running.

WE loitered about that place a while, & went back to the house in due time; and to shorten the tale, I shall tell that for many days it betid that we went every day to seek the golden cage, but after the first three days we saw it no more.

WE began sadness and weariness to overcome us as the days & weeks wore, and belike the witch-wife noted it that we were worse company than heretofore.

AND now on a day Arthur bade us note that the said witch was growing weary of him, and he bade me look to it; for, said he, she is turning her face toward thee, brother. My heart burned with rage at that word; I said nought, but made up my mind that I would try to bring the matter to an end.

THAT same night befell what Arthur had threatened; for the feast being done in the evening, the witch drew me aside while the music was a-playing, & caressed my hand and my shoulder, and said: I am yet wondering at you Champions, that ye must needs follow after those three wretched thralls, whom never will ye find, for they need ye not, but will flee from you if ye have sight of them, as they did that other day; & therein they are scarce in the wrong, whereas they may well think that if ye find them they should fall into my hands; for easily may I take them any day that I will, and then I have a cage against them, and may lawfully chastise them according to the law that has been given unto me; & then shall they be in grievous plight. Wherefore the rede We give unto you three now is the rede of friendliness that ye make yourselves happy in Our Island, and then will We do everything We may for your pleasure and delight; and if ye will that We make Ourselves even fairer than now We be, that may be done, & shall be a reward unto you for your yielding & obedience. And if ye will women thralls for your pleasure, that also may be gotten for you; for We be not wholly

without power in these waters, though we have no keel or ferry upon them. And now, thou fair lad, we give thee this last word: Ye Champions have been dwelling in Our house a long while, and that while have ever striven to thwart Us. We now counsel you to make an end of it, & it shall be better for you.

HE seemed to my eyes prouder and stupider than ever erst, despite her golden hair and white skin and lovely limbs; and I said to myself that now must we destroy the evil of that house even if we died for it, or else we were all undone; withal I saw somewhat of truth thrusting up through her much lying, and I deemed, even as Arthur did, that she had our friends under her hand somewhere.

NIGHT else betid that night; but on the morrow we went forth and strayed on till we were come into the southernmost quarter of the isle, and not very far from the water we came upon a wood or big thicket which was new to us. So we entered it, and as we went and noted the wild things of the wood going hither & thither, we espied afar off the shape of a man going amidst the thicket, wherefore we went warily towards him, lest he should see

us and flee from us. And when we drew a little nigher we saw it was a woman, though she was clad as a hunter, with legs naked to above the knee. She had a quiver at her back and a bow in her hand, and her coat was black of hue. Belike now she heard our going amongst the dry leaves, for she turned her face to us, & lo! it was the face of Atra.

WHEN she saw us, she gave a shrill cry and fell to running at her swiftest away from us, and we followed all we might, but we could not over-run her though we kept her in sight ever, till we had run all through the wood, and before us was the sheer side of a rocky hill & the mouth of a cave therein, and by the said mouth who should there be but Hurea and Viridia, as we thought, clad in gold and in green, but the fashion of their raiment not otherwise than Atra's. Their bows were bended and they had shafts in their hands, and as we came out of the thicket into the open lawn before the cave, Viridia nocked a shaft and aimed at us and drew, and the shaft flew over my head; therewith mocking laughter came from them, and they ran into the cave. Speedily we ran up to it, but when we came home thither, there was

Part V of the
Tale of the
Quest's
Ending

the sheer hill-side but never a cave nor an opening.

DISMAYED were we thereat; but more dismayed had we been but that we deemed that all this was but a cheat and a painted show put upon us by the witch to back up her lying. Nevertheless we fared the next day to seek the wood & the cave in the sheer rock, but nowise might we find either wood or cave.

NOW it was the night of the day hereafter, as we went to our chambers, that the witch-wife took me by the hand and led me apart, and said me many soft things of her accursed lust, whereof I will not say one again. But the upshot of it all was that she would bring me to her chamber and her bed. And whereas I was determined what to do, and had my war-sword by my side, I naysaid her not, but made her good countenance. And when we came to her chamber, which was full gloriously dight, and fragrant as with the scent of the roses and lilies of mid-June, she bade me to lie in her bed of gold and ivory and she would be with me anon. So I unlaid myself & laid me down, but I drew forth my sword, & laid the ancient naked blade betwixt my side and her place.

NON she cometh back again unclad, and would step into the bed; but she saw the sword, and said, What is this, Champion? Said I: These edges are the token of sundering between us, for there is a spell on me, that with no woman may I deal, save with mine only love, but I shall do her mortal scathe; so beware by the token of the grey edges of battle. She drew aback, and was as a spiteful & angry cat, & there was no loveliness in her; & she said, Thou liest, and thou hatest me; see thou to it, both for thyself and thy loving. And she turned about and strode out of the chamber; but I arose and clad myself in haste, and took my naked sword in my hand. But before I went, I looked around, & espied an ambry fashioned in the wall of the bed-lane, and the door was half open; & the said ambry was wrought of the daintiest, all of gold and pearl and gems; and I said to myself: Herein is some treasure, and this is a tide of war. So I opened the ambry, and within it was even more gloriously wrought than without, & there was nought therein, save a little flask of crystal done about with bands of gold set with great and goodly gems. So I took the said flask & went my

ways hastily to my own chamber, and there I looked at the said flask & took out the stopple; & there was a liquor therein, white like to water, but of a spicy smell, sweet, fresh, and enheartening. So I yet thought this was some great treasure, and that much hung upon it, could I find out unto what use it might be put. And I said: To-morrow we will put it to the proof. Then I put the said flask under my pillow, and laid my sword by my side & slept, and was not ill-content so far.

ON THE morrow, when I met my fellows, they asked me how I had sped, & I told them, Well, & that we would talk the matter over under our tree of counsel. So we went down into the hall, where we met the witch-lady; and I looked for it that she would be angry and fierce with me; but it went far otherwise; for she was blithe and buxom, and abounding in endearments more than I could away with. But this I noted, that her eyes wandered, & her speech faltered at times, and ever she seemed to be seeking somewhat; & withal that her caressing hands were seeking if they could aught atowed away in the bosom of my coat. But all was nought, for as we came to the door of the hall

I gave Baudoin the flask to guard until we should come to our apple-tree of rede. Wherefore she she-wolf went red and white by turns, and fumed, and fretted her bedizenments with unrestful hands, and when she should let us go our ways, she lingered and looked back oft, and was loth to depart ere she had gotten what she lacked. & that, forsooth, was the said flasket.

WHEN we were without the house, I bade our fellows go with me to another place than the wonted apple-tree of rede, and they understood my word, and I led them to a little grassy plain without the orchard, where was no covert for a wide space about it, nought but the one linden-tree under which now we sat. There I told them all the tale of the last night and of the flasket, & put before them all that was in my mind to do that evening at the banquet, and they both of them yea said it. But what it was, that shall ye hear anon when we carried the matter through; but I bade Baudoin still carry the flasket till the evening.

AFTER we spake of other matters; but soon we had good cause to rejoice that we had not talked our talk under the apple-

tree (whereas I doubted not that the witch would spy upon us there), for not long had we been at our talk ere, looking that way, we saw the evil creature by the hedge of the orchard and gazing over at us.

CC E arose then, & came to her as if nought had happened; & she bade us walk the garden with her, and we yea said it, and went with her, & paced about amidst the flowers and lay on the blossomed grass. forsooth, both to her and to us the time hung heavy on hand. And me seemed that the sleekness and fairness of her body was worsened since yesterday, & she was pale and haggard, and her eyes were wandering and afraid.

NOW she bade us come a little further into the garden & eat a morsel at noon; and we arose, and she brought us to where were vines trellised all about & overhead, so that it was like a fair green cloister; and there was a board laid & spread with many dainties of meat & drink. And she bade us sit. Verily we had but little stomach to that dinner; and I said to myself, Poison! poison! & even so my fellows deemed, as afterwards they told me. And I saw Baudoin loosen his sword in the sheath, and I knew that his mind was

to smite at once if he saw aught amiss. And I, who sat next to the witch, laid my hand on a little dagger which I wore at my girdle. She also saw this, and turned as pale as death, & sat trembling before us; and whatso we ate or drank at that board under the rustling vine-leaves, she gave unto us with her own hand: & then we wotted full surely that she had meant our deaths there & then, but was cowed by the fierce eyes of Baudoin & the threat of my hand.

CC IT SHALL it seemed that she might not bear it to sit there long amongst us. She rose up and smiled on us as ghastly as a corpse, & gave us leave, & went hurrying into the house. And right glad we were to be at rest from her. Yet as we ourselves durst not go far away from the house, lest some new thing might happen, neither could she leave us quite alone, but thence again that afternoon at some turn of the garden, or orchard, or meadow, we came upon her wan face & eyes full of all hate and staring pride, and she enforced her to smile upon us, and turned away with some idle word.

CC LAST the sun began to sink, and we went to the perron of the house, and

found her standing to meet us in her wonted way. But when we came up she gave no hand to any one of us, but went up the stairs before us, & we followed with no word spoken.

HERE was the hall with the lordly service on the board, & the wax-candles lighted all about, and the great vault of stone fair and stately over it. We went to the dais & the board and sat down, the witch-wife in her gold & ivory chair at the board's end, and I at her right hand and looking down the hall, my two fellows facing me, with their backs to the clear of the hall.

HERE we sat, and the meats and drinks were before us as dainty as ever eat; but we put forth no hand to them, but sat staring at each other for some two minutes it might be, and the witch looked from one to the other of us, & quaked that her hands shook like palsy.

WHEN I rose up and put my hand to my bosom (for Baudoin had given me the flasket ere we came to the perron): I spake in a loud voice, and it sounded wild and hard in the goodly hall: My lady, I said, thou art looking but pale now, and sick & down-cast. Drink now to me out of this precious flasket, and thou

shalt be whole and well,

AND therewith I held the flasket aloft; but her face changed horribly; she sprang up in her chair & reached out her arm to clutch at the flasket, screaming like an eagle therewith. But I thrust her back into the chair with my left hand; and therewith arose Baudoin & Arthur, and caught her by the shoulders, & bound her fast to the chair with cords that they had gotten thereto. But when she got her breath she yelled out: Ah, now shall all tumble together, my proudful house & I under it! Loose me, traitors! loose me, fools! and give me one draught of the water of might, and then shall I tell you all, and ye shall go free with your thralls if ye will. Ah! ye will not loose me? ye will not? Well then, at least ye, the fools, shall be under it, & they also, the she-traitors, the scourged & tormented fools that might not save themselves from me. O loose me! loose me! thou in whose arms I have lain so many a night, and give me to drink of the proud water of might!

She yelled; & now had all the fairness gone from her body: flaggy & yellow were her limbs, and she looked all over as her face, a lump of

stupid and cruel pride, and her words lost meaning & changed into mere bestial howling. But for me, since she so desired that water, I knew that it was good for us to drink, & I took out the stopple & drank, and it was as if fire ran through all my veins, & I felt my strength three-folded straightway, and most wondrous clear was my sight grown therewith; and I raised my eyes now & looked down the hall, & lo, there was Hurta, chained by the ankle to the third pillar from the dais; and over against her, Viridis; and next, to the fourth pillar, Htra. Then I cried in a loud voice that rang through the witch's hall: Lo what I see! And I ran round the head of the board, & thrust & dragged Baudoin & Arthur along with me, crying out 'Come come! they are found! they are here!' And I came to my sweetling & found her clad but in her white smock, which was flecked with blood all about, & her face was wan & pined, and the tears began to run when she saw me, but no word came from her lips though the kissing of them was sweet.

Then I turned about to my two fellows, & they stood bewildered, not knowing what was toward; and I came to them and made them drink

of the flasket, and their eyes were opened and the strength of giants came to them, and they ran each to his sweetling: but Baudoin, before ever he kissed Hurta, caught hold of the chain that bound her to the pillar, and by main force dragged it out. Wise was that, methought, for words were again come into the witch's howls, and I heard her: Ah, long may ye be playing with the chains, long! for now the house rumbleth toward its fall. Ah, the bitches are loose! Woe's me! to die alone! And once more she howled wordless, as both I and Arthur had our loves in our arms, and fell to following Baudoin out on to the perron and down into the fresh fragrant garden wherein now was the moon beginning to cast shadows.

SOON we then aloof from the house, & the rumbling whereof the evil hag had howled waxed into a thunder, & under our very eyes the great white walls and gold-adorned roofs fell together, & a great cloud of dust rose under the clear moonlit sky.

We looked & wondered, & our loves also, but no word they spake; but ere the other two had time to grieve thereat, I gave Viridis to drink of the water of

might, and she fell to sweet speech straightway of such sort and such wise as I will not tell you. Then I did the same by Hurea and Htra and forthwith the speech flowed from them to their friends.

WELL & HAPPY were we then in the early night-season, for the water of night gave them strength also, as to us, and healed all the stripes and wounds their bodies had suffered of the foul witch, & made their eyes bright, and their cheeks full and firm, & their lips most sweet & their hands strong and delicious.

WHEN we had stood gazing toward the melting of the beauteous palace for a little we took our dardlings in our arms again, where as the chains would have hindered their walking and went down to the lip of the water where lay the bending Boat, so that we might be anigh our ferry in case of need, for we knew not what might betide the isle now its mistress had perished. Then we fell to and sawed off the chains from the dear ankles with our swords, and took Hirdalone's lendings from the mail. And Hurea had her gown again and Viridis her smock, and my green surcoat over it & Htra wore the battle-coat of the Blackbquire. As for

their bare feet (for Htra would not have hers dight prouder than her sisters'), we so clad them with kisses that they were not ill-covered belike.

WHEN we aboard our ferry, and did blood-offering to the wight thereof, & so sped merrily and lovingly over the wide lake back on our homeward road. And we said This hath the dear Hirdalone done for us.

NOW my Viridis I will that thou fill up the tale by telling to Hirdalone, as ye told us, how it fared with you three and the emalone from the time that ye sped Hirdalone on her way till the moment when mine eyes first beheld you made fast to the pillars of the palace which has crumbled into dust.

Chapter X. How I fare I with the Hirdalones after the taking of the Blackbquire.

VIRIDIS took up the word without more ado, & said: I will do my best herein, and ye sisters must set me right if I err. When we had seen the last of you dear Hirdalone, that early morning we turned back again to the house as speedily and as covertly as we might lest the witch might spy our disarray & question us

Part The
Take the
Quest
End

thereover. Then we went to the wonder-coffer, & gat thereout raiment for that which we had given away, which was easy for us to do, whereas the witch-mistress was so slothful that she had given to us the words of might wherewith to compel the coffer to yield, so that we might do all the service thereof, and she not to move hand or foot in the matter. So when we were clad, and the time was come, we went into the hall, by no means well assured of our mistress.

WHEN we came before her, she looked on us in surly wise, as her wont was, and said nought for a while; she stared on us and knit her brows, as if she strove to call to mind something that ran to and fro in her memory; and I noted that, and for my part I trembled before her. But she spake at last: Me seemeth as if there is a woman in the isle besides you three; some mischief that I was minded to punish. Tell me, you! was there not a naked one who came into this hall a while ago, one whom I threatened with pining? **A**tra, who was the boldest of us, bowed the knee before her, and said Nay, our lady, since when do stranger women come naked into thine hall, and dare thee there?

SHID the witch: Yet have I an image of a naked woman standing down there before me: and if I have it in mine eye, so should ye. Tell me therefore, and beware, for We are not bidden to hold Our hand from you if We take you in misdeeds.

IF I quaked before, now much more I quaked, till my legs well-nigh failed me for fear; but Atra said Great lady, this image will be like be of that one whom a while ago ye had stripped & tied to a pillar here, & tormented while ye feasted.

THE lady looked on her hard, and again seemed striving to gather up the thrums of some memory, & then her face became smooth again, and she spake lightly: All that may well be; so do ye go about your due service, and trouble Our rest here no longer; for We love not to look on folk who be not wholly Our own to pine or to spare, to slay or let live, as We will; & We would that the winds and the waves would send Us some such now: for it is like to living all alone to have but such as you with Us, and none to cower before Us & entreat Us of mercy. So begone, I bid you.

WHIS for that time were we saved from the witch's cruelty; but our time came before long. The days wore heavily, nor kept we count of them lest we should lose heart for the weariness of waiting. But on a day as we stood on the steps of the perron & served my lady with dainties, of a hot afternoon, came two great white doves a-flying, who pitched down right before our mistress's feet; & each had a gold ring about his neck, & a scroll tied thereto, & the witch bade us take the doves and take off the scrolls and give them unto her; & she looked on the gold rings which the doves bore, & for a moment on the scrolls, and then she said Take ye the doves & cherish them, lest we have need of them; take also the two scrolls & keep them till tomorrow morning, and then give them into Our hands. And look ye to this, that if ye give them not unto Us it will be treason against Us, and We shall have a cast against you, & your bodies will be Ours.

WHEN she rose up slowly, and bade me to her that she might lean upon my shoulder & be helped up stairs, so slothful a beast as she was; and as we went up I heard her say softly to herself: Weary on it, now must I drink a sup of

the Water of Might that I may remember & do and desire. But dear is my sister, and without doubt she hath matters of import to tell me by these doves.

WHEN we were together alone I told the others hereof and we talked it over, & they deemed the tidings ill, even as I did; for we might not doubt but that the doves were a sending from the witch's sister who dwelt at the House under the Wood, & sore we misdoubted that they were sped to our mistress to tell her of thee, Birdalone, and mayhap pen of the Quest, so wise as we knew she was. As to the two scrolls, forsooth, they were open, & not sealed; but when we looked on them we could make nought of it; for though they were writ fairly in Latin script, so that we read them, yet of the words no whit might we understand, so we feared the worst. But what might we do? we had but two choices, either to cast ourselves into the water, or abide what should befall; & this last one we chose because of the hope of deliverance.

NEXT morning, therefore, we came before our mistress in the hall, & we found her pacing up and down before the dais; though her wont was at that hour to be sitting in her throne of gold

& there lying back on the cushions half asleep.

SO Atra went up to her, & knelt before her and gave her the scrolls, & she looked on her grimly, and smiled evilly, and said: Kneel there yet; & ye others kneel also, till I see what becometh you. So did we, and indeed I was fain to kneel, for I might scarce stand up for terror; and all of us, our hearts died within us.

AT the witch read those scrolls to herself, sitting in her throne, and spake not a long while; then she said: Come hither, & grovel before Us, and hearken! Even so we did; & she said again: Our sister, who hath been so kind unto you, & saved you from so many pains, here telleth Us, by the message of the two doves, that ye have betrayed Us and her, and have stolen her thrall and her Sending Hoat & sent her an errand for Our destruction; and therewith she delivereth you into Our hands, and ye are Ours henceforward: nor is it to be thought that ye may escape Us. Now, for your treason, some would slay you out right here & now, but We will be merciful, and let you live, & do no more than chastise you sharply now; and thereafter shall ye be Our very thralls to do as We will with: thereafter,

that is to say, when they whom ye have sent Our sister's thrall to fetch have come hither (as belike I may scarce stay them), & I have foiled them and used them, & sent them away empty. Now I tell you, that meanwhile of their coming shall ye suffer such things as We will; & when they be here We will not forbid you to be anigh them; but We shall see that there will be little joy to you in that nighness. Yea, ye shall know now to what market ye have brought your wares, and what the price of treason is therein.

VERILY then we suffered at her hand what she would, whereof it would shame me to tell more as at this present; and thereafter did she chain us to those three pillars of the hall where-as ye found us chained; and we were fed as dogs be, and served as dogs, but we endured all for the sake of hope; and when we durst, & deemed the witch would not hear us, we spake together and enheartened each other.

AT ON the fourth day of our torment came the witch to us, & gave us to drink a certain red water from out of a leaden flasket; & when I drank I deemed it was poison, and was glad, if gladness might be in me at such a tide:

& when I had drunk I felt an icy chill go through all my body, and all things swam before my eyes, & deadly sickness came over me. But that passed away from me presently, and I felt helpless and yet not feeble; all sounds heard I clearer than ever yet in my life; also I saw the hall, every arch and pillar and fret, & the gleam on the pavement from the bright sun that might not enter; and the witch I saw walking up and down the hall by the dais; but my sisters I saw not when I looked across to their pillars. Moreover, I might not see myself when I reached out my hand or my foot, though I saw the chain which made my ankle fast to the pillar; & withal, when I set my hand on my face, or any other part of my body, or what else I might touch, I felt there what I looked to feel, were it flesh or linen, or the cold iron of my fetter, or the polished face of the marble pillar.

NOW I knew scarce if I were alive or dead, or if I were but beginning to be dead; but there came upon me the desire of life, & I strove to cry out to the sisters, but though I formed the words in my mouth, and did with my throat as when one cries out aloud, yet no sound of a voice came from me, and more help-

p 1

less did I feel than erst.

SIT even therewith I saw the witch come toward me, and therewith all my body felt such fear of her that I knew I was not dead. Then she came before me & said; O shadow of a thrall, whom none can see but them unto whom wisdom hath given eyes to see wonders withal, now have I ridings for thee and thy sisters, to wit, that your lovers & seekers are at hand, and presently I shall bring them into this hall, and they shall be so nigh unto you that ye might touch them if I did not forbid it; but they shall not see you, but shall wonder where I have hidden you, & shall go seeking you to-day and many days, and shall find you not at all. So make ye the most of the sight of them, for in them henceforward ye have no other part or lot.

THEREWITH she spat out at me, & went over to my sisters, and said words of like import to those which she had said unto me. And presently she went out of the hall; and not long afterwards I heard voices speaking on the perron, & knew one for the voice of the witch, and the other for the voice of my lord Baudoin; and then again wore a little while, & I saw the witch come through the great door

211

Part V The
Case of the
Queen's
Ending

of the hall leading Sir Arthur by the hand, as if she were his dear friend, and Baudoin and Hugh my man, following them. And the said witch was clad full fair, and had laid by her sloth & stupid pride, as me seemed; & her limbs were grown round, grand sleeker, & her skin fairer, so that to them that knew her not she might well seem to be a goodly woman.

WHEN they sat to meat as my man hath told you, & then departed from the hall, & the witch also. But after a while she came back again & looked us, and grimly bade us go with her, & needs must we, though we could not so much as see our own feet upon the floor. And she set us to tasks about the house, and stood by while we toiled for her, & mocked us not without stripes, and in all ways was as rough & cruel and hard with us as she had been smooth and debonaire to our lords; but after noon she brought us back & chained us to our pillars again. And when the evening came & the banquet was, it was we who were the unseen players of the string-play, & we might play no other melody than what the witch bade us; else belike, could we have held converse, we might have played such tunes as would have smitten the hearts of our

loves, & told them that we were anigh. To make a short story of it, thus did she day by day, & no comfort or converse might we sisters have of each other, or of aught else save the sight of our beloved ones, & a glimmer of hope therewith. And, forsooth, for as grievously as my heart was wrung by the yearning of me for my love, yet was it a joy unto me to think that he went there desiring me, & that I whom he desired was not the poor wretched creature chained there in her nakedness, with her body spoiled by torment and misery, but the glad maiden whom he had so often called fair and love-some.

SO passed the days, & at last hope had grown so pale & wan, that she was no more to be seen by us than we were by our lords; and now it seemed to me that death was coming, so feeble & wretched as I grew. But the witch would not let us die, but sustained us from time to time with some little draughts of a witch-drink that revived us.

SO wore the time till that evening, when came hope together with the fulfilment of hope, so that one minute we durst hope for deliverance, and the next we were delivered.

FOR is there more to tell,
 Birdalone, my dear, save
 that we came safely to
 the Isle of the Young and the
 Old in the full morning-tide;
 and as our ferry drew nigh the
 green shore, there were the two
 younglings whereof thou didst
 tell us awaiting our landing,
 and when we stepped ashore
 they came to us bearing cakes
 and fruit in a fair basket, and
 they made much of us and we
 of them. And so we came to
 the old man, who was exceed-
 ing fain of us, and grand and
 courteous, till he became a little
 drunk, and then he was some-
 what over-kind to us women.
 Nevertheless, there in that plea-
 sant isle we rested us for three
 days, that we might somewhat
 calm and refresh our spirits
 with what was small & of little
 account. And when we depart-
 ed, the old man followed us
 down to the strand, & lamented
 our departure, as he had done
 with our lords erewhile; only
 this time yet greater was his
 lamentation, & needs must we
 kiss him, each one of us, or new-
 er had he been done. So he turn-
 ed up landward, bewailing the
 miss of us, but presently, be-
 fore we had seen the last of him,
 was cheerful again & singing.

SO we went on our way;
 & we also, we maidens,
 in our turn, saw those

woful images of the Isle of
 Queens and the Isle of Kings;
 and we came to the Isle of No-
 thing, and abode warily by our
 ferry, and so came away safe,
 & thus, as thou wottest, home
 to the castle to hear evil tid-
 ings of thee. Now is this all
 my tale.

BIRDALONE sat shyly
 and hushed when all was
 done; & then all they did
 somewhat to comfort her each
 after their own fashion; & now
 sorrow for the slain man was
 made softer and sweeter for
 them, whereas they had to lose
 not two fellows, but one only.
 Yet, despite of all, trouble and
 care was on Birdalone's soul
 betwixt the joy of loving & be-
 ing beloved, and the pain and
 fear of robbing a friend of her
 love. For Htra's face, which she
 might not hate & scarce might
 love, was a threat to her day by
 day.

*Chapter XI Birdalone and the
 Isack Squire fall together in
 the Hall of the Castle.*

NOW within a few
 days was the bo-
 dy of Baudoin
 laid in earth in
 the chapel of the
 castle; and in the
 solemnest of fashions was
 the burial done. When it was
 over, the two knights and Sir
 Hymeris turned them heartily

*Book the
 Twelfth
 Quene
 Endeth*

toighting the war against the Red Hold, and less than a month thereafter was the host: ing at the Castle of the Quest, and if the host were not very many (for it went not above sixteen hundreds of men all told), yet the men were of the choicest, both of knights and sergeants and archers. There then they held a mote without the castle, whereas Arthur the Black Squire was chosen for captain, and in three days they were to depart for the Red Hold.

ON THIS while Bird-alone had seen but little of Arthur, who was ever busy about many matters, & never had she had any privy talk with him, though sore she longed for it; yet indeed it was more by her will than his that so it was. But when it was come to the very last day before the departure, she said that she must needs see him before he went, and he perchance never to come back again. So when men were quiet after dinner she went into the hall & found him there, pacing up and down the floor. For indeed she had sent a word to him by Leonard the priest that he should be there.

SO she went up to him, and all simply she took him by the hand and led him

into a shot/window & set him down by her; and he, all trembling for love and fear of her, might not forbear, but kissed her face and her mouth many times; and she grew as hot as fire, and somewhat she wept.

WHEN she spake after a while Dear friend, I had it in my mind to say to thee many things that me seems were sage, but now neither will the thought of them come into my mind, nor the words into my mouth. And this is a short hour. And therewith she fell to kissing him, till he was well nigh beside himself betwixt desire and joy and the grief of departure, and the hardness of the case.

AT last she forbore and said Will it not be when thou art gone to-morrow as it was when ye were away upon the Quest, & I knew not how to bear myself, so heavy lay all the world and its doings and its fashion upon me? It will be hard to me, he said; evil and grim will be the days. She said: And yet, even now in these last days, when I see thee oft, every day my soul is worn with grief, and I know not what to do with myself. I shall come back, he said, and bear my love with me, & then belike we shall seek some remedy. She was silent

a while, & then she said: Mean-
while of thy coming, and I see
thee not at all for many days,
how will it be with my grief
then? Quoth he, More than
enough of grief no soul may
bear; for either death comes,
or else some dullness of the
pain, and then by little & little
the pain weareth. Then she
said: And how would it be if
thou come not back and I see
thee never again, or if when
thou come back thou find me
not, for that I be either dead
or gone away out of thy reach?
He said: I know not how it
would be. When thou sayest
thou shalt die, dost thou whole-
ly believe it in thy sense or
thy body otherwise than Holy
Church would? I will tell
thee, she said, that now I am
sitting by thee and seeing thy
face & hearing thy voice, it is
that only which I believe in; for
I may think of nought else of
either grief or joy. Yea, when I
wept e'en now, it was not for
sorrow that I wept, but for I
cannot rightly tell what. And
she took his hand & look-
ed fondly upon him.

SHE presently she look-
ed on his hand, & said:
And now meseemeth
that we twain are grown to be
such close friends that I may
ask thee what I will, and thou
be neither angry, nor wonder

thereat. I see on thy finger here
the ring that I brought with
me from the Isle of Increase,
& which thereafter thou hadst
of me when I gave thee back
also the shoon which were lent
unto me. Tell me how thou
hadst it back from Atra, as I
suppose thou gavest it unto
her. But how now I art thou
angry? for I see the blood come
up in thy face. Nay, beloved,
said he, I am not angry, but
whenso I hear of Atra, or think
of her closely, shame comes
on me and confusion, & may-
be fear. But now will I answer
thee. For even in those hours
which we wore on the Isle of
the Young & the Old, when all
we should have been so happy
together, she divined some-
what of my case or indeed why
do I not say it out, all there-
of. And she spake to me such
words (for she is both tender
and wise and strong of heart)
that I cowered before her and
her grief and pain; & she gave
me back the said ring, which
forsooth I gave to her in the
Sinking Boat in the first hour
that the Isle of Increase lay a-
stern of us. And I wear it now
as a token of my grief for her
grief. See now, love, since I
have answered thee this ques-
tion without anger or amaze,
thou needest not fear to ask
me any other; for this of all

things lies closest to my heart.

BIRDHLONE drooped her head, and she spake in a low voice: Lo now! the shadow of parting and the shadow of death could not come between our present joy; but this shadow of the third one cometh between us and is present between us. Woe's me! how little did I think of this when thou wert away and I was sick of longing for the sight of thee, and deemed that that would heal it all.

She spake not, but took her hand and held it; and presently she looked up again and said: Thou art good, and wilt not be angry if I ask thee something else; this it is: Why wert thou so grim with me that other day when ye found me in that evil plight in tow of the Red Tyrant, so that I deemed that thou of all others hadst cast me off? That was worse to me than the witch's stripes, & I kept thinking to myself: How simple was my trouble once, and now how tangled and weary!

WHEN HE MIGHT not refrain him, but threw himself upon her, and clipped her and kissed her all he might, and she felt all the sweetness of love, and lacked nought of kindness and love to him. And thereafter they

sat still awhile, and he said, as if her question had but that moment left her lips: This, forsooth, was the cause that I looked grim on thee: first, that from the time I first saw thee and heard thy tale, and of thy deeds, I had deemed thee wise above the wisdom of women. But this going forth of thee to the Black Valley, whereof came the slaying of Baudoin, seemed unto me a mere folly, till again I had heard thy tale of that also; and then the tale and thy speech overcame me. But again, though I was grieved and disappointed hereat, belike that had passed from me speedily, but then there was this also which would not let my soul rest, to wit, that I feared concerning that slain knight whose head the Red One had hung about thy neck; for how else, methought, might he have been so wroth with him and thee; & me seemed, moreover, that thou wert kind in thine heart to the dead man, even when we were come to thee; and then, seest thou, my desire for thee & the trouble of Baudoin's slaying, & the black trouble aforesaid. Lo now, I have told thee this. When wilt thou cease to be angry with me?

SHE said: I ceased to be grieved with thine anger when thine anger died;

yet strange, meesmeth, that thou shouldst trust me so little when thou lovest me so much!

AND she leaned against him and caressed him gently, and again was he at point to take her in his arms, when lo! the sound of men coming unto the screen of the hall, so then those two stood up and went to meet them, and there was the speech of their sundering done. Yet belike for a little while both those twain were happy.

Of Chapter XII The knights and their fell weather, the castle of the Red

ON THE morrow, when the day was yet young, the knights were ready for departure, & in the very gate they bade farewell to the ladies, who kissed them kindly one and all, and Viridis wept sore; and Htra constrained herself to do even as the others did; but pale she was and quaking when she kissed Arthur and watched him get a horseback.

AT the knights bade their ladies be of good cheer, for that they would send them tidings of how they sped every seven days at least, whereas it was

no long way thence to the Red Hold, save there were battle on the road, & they deemed their host which should beset the Hold would be enough to clear all the ways behind it for that same cause withal they had Sir Hymeris with them nor left a many men behind them, & they under the rule of three squires, whereof two were but young, and the third, who was made the captain of the castle, was an old & wise man of war, who had to name Geoffrey of Lea. There, withal, was the priest Sir Leonard, who went about now much hushed & abashed, & seemed to fear to give a word to Birdalene; albeit she deemed of him that his thoughts of her were the same as erst they had been.

SOW when the knights were departed, & all the host was gone out of sight, it was heavy time indeed in the Castle of the Quest till they should hear tidings of them again. Both Htra and Htra kept much to themselves, & did I know not what to wear away the time for now it was not to be looked for that they should venture out a gates. But as for Viridis, she waxed of better cheer after a while, but whatever betid she would not sunder herself from Birdalene, nay, not for an hour, &

*Part V The
Castle of the
Quest
Finding*

Birdalone took all her kindness kindly. though forsooth it was somewhat of a pain unto her. it shall be told wherefore ere long.

MICHAEL, as if to wear the time. Birdalone betook her diligently to her needlework, and fell to the cunningest of broidery; so that Viridis & the others wondered at her, for when they were done it seemed indeed that the flowers and creatures & knots had grown of themselves up on the cloth, such wondrous work it was.

DAVID OF OTTER, to his great joy, the very first day of the departure of the host she called Sir Leonard unto her, and prayed to go on again with the learning her fair scribe-craft; and therein also was she diligent hours of every day; and Viridis would sit beside her wondering at the deftness of her fingers, and crying out for joy as the page grew fair & well-learned under them.

THESE were a week, and at the end thereof came a messenger from the host and told how they had come before the Red Hold and had summoned them thereof to yield, which they had utterly denied to do, but defied the host; wherefore the host had

now beset the hold, and more folk were daily flocking unto them; but that the said hold would be hard to win by plain assault, whereas it was both strong and well-manned; but few of the host had been slain or hurt as yet, and of the chieftains not one.

RIGHT glad were they of the castle because of these tidings; though, forsooth, the men-at-arms knew well enough that the time would soon come when some fierce assault would be made, and then, forsooth, would be sore peril of life and limb unto the chieftains.

Chapter XII. *How the host thought to fulfill the promise made unto Hera.*

WITHIN MORE a week, & once more came the messenger, and did them of the castle to wit that there had been nought more done at the Red Hold, save skirmishing at the barriers, wherein few were hurt on either side; and also that the engines for battering the walls were now well-nigh all dight, and they would begin to play upon the hold, and in especial one which hight Wall-wolf, which had been set up by the crafts of Greenford.

HIS TIDINGS also was deemed good by all, save it might be by Htra, who, as Hirdalone deemed, pined & fretted herself at the delay, and would fain that, one way or other, all were over. Htra spake but little to Hirdalone, but watched her closely now oft would she gaze on her wistfully, as if she would that Hirdalone would speak unto her, and Hirdalone noted that, but she might not pluck up heart thereto.

MORE a third week, & again came the messenger, and told how three days ago, whenas Wall-wolf had sorely battered one of the great towers which might the Poison-jar, & overthrown a pan of the wall there beside, they had tried an assault on the breach, and hard had been the battle there, and in the end, after fierce give & take, they of the hold had done so valantly that they had thrust back the assailants, and that in the hottest brunt the Black Squire had been hurt in the shoulder by a spear-thrust but not very grievously, but withal that he sent, in so many words forbidding the ladies to make any account of so small a matter. And quoth the sergeant, most like my lord will wear his armour in four days' time, al-

so now we have reared another great slinger, which we call Stone-fretter, and soon, without doubt, we shall be standing victorious within that den of thieves.

NOW though these tidings were not so altogether ill, yet were those ladies sore troubled thereby, & especially Htra, who swooned outright when she had heard the last word thereof.

AS FOR Hirdalone, she made as little semblance of her trouble as she might, but when all was quiet again she went to find Tindis, and brought her to her chamber and spake to her, saying Tindis, my sister, thou hast been pitreous kind unto me from the first minute that thou sawest me naked & helpless, and fleeing from evil unto worse evil, nowise mightest thou have done better by me hadst thou been verily my sister of blood, & I know it that thou wouldst be loth to part from me.

TINDIS wept and said: Why dost thou speak of parting from me, when thou knowest it would break my heart?

Said Hirdalone To say it as short as may be, because the parting must now come to pass. Tindis

waxed pale and then red, & she stamped her foot and said: It is unkind of thee to grieve me thus, and thou doest wrong herein

HARKEN, dear sister, said Birdalone: thou knowest, for thou thyself wast the first to tell me thereof that I am the supplanter in our fellowship, and that I have undone Atra's hope. This I did not of mine own will, but it came unto me; yet of mine own will I can do the best I may to amend it; & this is the best, that I depart hence before the Red Hold is taken and my lords come back; for if they come back and I see my lord Arthur, so fair and beauteous as he is, before me, never shall I be able to go away from him. And to thou. I have promised Atra by all the kindness she did me when we were come to the Walling Tower, & I naked and quaking & half-dead with terror, that if occasion served I would do my utmost to help her, even if it were to my own grief. Now behold this that now is, is the occasion, & there will not be another; for when my love comes home hither & beholdeth me, think thou how all the desire which has been gathering in his heart this while will blossom & break forth toward me; & may happen he will

make but little semblance of it before other folk, for proud & high of heart is he; but he will seek occasion to find me alone, and then shall I be with him as the lark in the talons of the sparrow-hawk, and he will do his pleasure of me, and that with all the good-will of my heart. And then shall I be forsworn to Atra, & she will hate me, as now she doth not, and then is all the fellowship riven, and that by my deed.

YET was Viridis wrath, & she said: Messemeth this is fool's talk. Will not the fellowship be all the more riven if thou depart and we see thee no more?

NAY, said Birdalone; for when I am gone thy love shall be no less for me, though as now thou art angry; and Atra will love me for that I shall have held to my promise to mine own scathe; and thy man and Hurta will lay it to me that I have done valiantly and knightly. And Arthur, how can he choose but love me; and maybe we shall yet meet again.

AND therewithal she did at last bow down her head and fall to weeping, & Viridis was moved by her tears and fell to kissing and carressing her.

AFTER a little Birdal-
lone lifted up her head
& spake again: More-
over, how can I dare to abide
him? didst thou not see how
grim he was to me when they
delivered me and brought me
back? and he with his own lips
told me so much, that it was
because he doubted that I had
done amiss; and now if I do a-
miss again, even if it be at his
bidding, will it not be so that
he will speedily weary of me &
curse me & cast me off? What
sayest thou, Viridia mine?

WHAT is to say, said Vi-
ridia, save that thou
hast broken my heart?
But thou mayest heal it if thou
wilt take thy words back, and
tell me that thou wilt not sun-
der thee from us.

BUT Birdalone brake out
weeping and lamenting
aloud, and she cried out:
Nay, nay, it may not be; I must
depart, and Atra hath smitten
me amidst of my friends. And
Viridia knew not what to
say or to do.

LAST came Birdalone to
herself again, and she
looked sweetly on Viri-
dia and smiled on her from out
her tears, & said: Thou seest,
sister, how little a loss thou
wilt have of me, a mere wild wo-
man. And now nought availeth
either me or thee but I must be-

gone & that speedily. Let it be
to-morrow then. And when the
messenger comes at the end
of this week, send word by him
of what I have done; and look
thou to it but both our lords
will praise me for the deed.

SHELD Viridia: But whith-
er wilt thou, or what wilt
thou do? To Green-
ford first, said Birdalone, and
after whither the Good Lord
shall lead me; and as for what
I will do, I am now deft in two
crafts, script and broidery to
wit; and, wheresoever I be, folk
shall pay me to work herein for
them, whereby I shall earn my
bread. Hearken also, my sister,
canst thou give me any deal of
money? for though I wot lit-
tle of such matters, yet I wot
that I shall need the same. And
I ask this whereto, as e'en now
I said, I deem our lords shall
praise my deed, & that, there-
fore, they would not that I
should depart hence as an out-
cast, wherefore they shall not
begrudge it to me. Moreover,
for the same cause I would thee
speak to the old squire Geof-
frey of Lea, and tell him that
I have an errand to Greenford,
and crave of him that he lend
me one of the two younglings,
Arnold or Anselm, and two or
three men-at-arms to bring me
safely thither; since now, for-
sooth, I need no more adven-

tures on the road.

SHE smiled as she spake:
& now all the passion of
anguish seemed to have
left her for that while; but Vir-
ridis cast her arms about her
neck & wept upon her bosom,
and said: Woe's me! for I see
that thou wilt go whatsoever
I may say or do; I strove to be
angry with thee, but I might
not, & now I see that thou con-
strainest me as thou dost all
else. I will go now straightway
and do thine errand.

THUS then they part-
ed for that time; but it
was not till the day af-
ter the morrow that Birdalone
was albout. Virridis told of her
departure both to Hurea and
Atra; & Hurea lamented it, but
would not do ought to stay her;
for she was waxen weary and
listless since the death of her
man. As for Atra, she spake but
little concerning it, but to Vi-
ridis praised Birdalone's vali-
ance & kindness. Yet unto her-
self she said: Verily she under-
stood my word that I spake to
her about the occasion of her
helping. Yet woe's me! for she
shall carry his love with her
whithersoever she wendeth; &
a happy woman is she.

BUT when Geoffrey the
squire knew that the la-
dies, all three, were at
one with Birdalone as to her

departure, he doubted noth-
ing, but bade Arnold, his mate,
take four good men with him,
and bring the Lady Birdalone
unto Greenford & do her bid-
ding there. Albeit, he deemed
no less but they would bring
her back again.

**Chapter XLV Birdalone leaves
the Castle of the Quest**

IN THE morrow
morn then, Bird-
alone spake fare-
well both to Hu-
rea & Atra but
as for Virridis,
she sent her word that she had
no heart thereto, and yet she
sent her a word of comfort, to
wit, that she deemed that they
would one day meet again. Hu-
rea, in her parting words, part
praised her, part chid her; say-
ing that she did well and kind-
ly and valiantly, as her wont
was. Yet, said she, when all is
said thou mightest have abid-
ed this tangle & trouble, which
at the worst had not been so
evil as death between us. Yea,
sister, said Birdalone, but
might not death have come of
my abiding?

AS she spake, in came Atra,
with her head somewhat
drooped, meek & hum-
ble, her cheeks red, her hands
trembling; and she said: Wilt
thou take now my word of fare-
well and blessing, and the kiss



of peace betwixt us, and bear away the memory of our kindness together?

BIRDALONE stood up proud & straight, and was somewhat pale as she suffered Htra to kiss her cheeks and mouth, and said: Now hast thou forgiven me that weird dragged me in betwixt thy love & thy goodhap; and I have forgiven thee that I am led away by weird into the waste and the wilderness of love. farewell. Therewith she went her way to the gate, & the others followed her not.

WITHOUT abode her Arnold and the four men at arms, and her palfrey & a sumpter horse bearing two goodly coffers, where in Viridia had let load raiment and other havings for her; and

Arnold came up to her smiling, and said: My lady Viridia hath given me a pouch wherein is money to bear for thee to Greenford & hand over to thee there when we be asse; and she hath bidden me to be in all wise obedient unto thee, lady, which needed not, whereas now and from henceforth am I by mine own will thy very servant to do thy pleasure always and every where.

SHE thanked him and smiled on him kindly, so that his heart beat fast for joy and love of her; and therewith she gat into the saddle & they rode their ways together, and Birdalone looked back never till the Castle of the Quest was shut from their eyes by the neeces of the little hills.

Part V. The
Tale of the
Quest's
ending

Here ends the fifth Part of the Water of the Wondrous Isles, which is called The Tale of the Quest's Ending, and begins the Sixth Part of the said tale, which is called The Days of Absence. ❧❧

THE MICH OF THE MONDROXIN TALENCE
THE BLICH DARE THE DYES OF ABSENCE

hapter 7. In this chapter we shall see
how the old & the new were
the same in the same



THE ROAD TO GREEN-
FORD nought befell to tell of;
they came thither when the sun
was at point to set, for they
had ridden diligently all day.

AS they rode the streets
of the good town, they
noted of them, that
though it was evening, where-
in folk do much disport them
abroad, there were women and
children enough in the streets
or standing at their doors, but
of carles very few, and they for
the more part grey-heads.

NOW did Arnold bring
Burdalene to the town
hall, wherein yet sat the
deputy of the burgrave, who
himself was in the leaguer at
the Red Fold; this man, who
was old and wise and nothing

feeble of body, made much of
Burdalene and her folk, & was
glad of them when he knew
that they had the seal and let-
pass of Geoffrey of Lea where-
fore he gave them to eat and
drink and lodged them in his
own house and made them the
best of cheer.

AT betimes on the mor-
row did Burdalene send
back Arnold & the four
men-at-arms, with no tale but
that such was her will: & bid-
ding farewell to the said Ar-
nold, she suffered him to kiss
her hands and gave him a ring
from off her finger so that he
went on his way rejoicing.

SOON as she saw him
and his men well on the
road, she went to the
old man, the vice-ruler of the
town, who was of the alder-
men thereof, and did him re-
wit that she would wage two
or three carles who could deal
with horses and beasts, and
withal handle weapons if need
were to be both as servants &
guards for her as she had er-
rands in that country-side, &
belike might well have to go
from town to town thereabout.
He took her asking kindly, but
said it was none so easy to find
men who for any wage would
fare forth of Greenford at that
hour whereas well-nigh all

THE FIRST BOOK
OF THE HISTORY OF
SENCE

their fighting men were lying before the Red Fold as now. Howsoever, ere noontide he brought before her a man of over three score, but yet way-worthy, and two stout young men, his sons, & told her that these men were trusty & would go with her to the world's end if need were.

SHE TOOK these men readily, & agreed with them for a good wage; and whereas each one had bow and arrows and short sword, she had but to buy for them jacks, sallets, and bucklers, and they were well armed as for their condition. Withal she bought them three good horses & another sumpter horse; which last was loaded with sundry wares that she deemed that she needed, and with victual. Then she took leave of the alderman, thanking him much for his good will, & so departed from Greenford at all adventure, when the day was yet

THE alderman had asked her whither away, & she had told him that she was bound for Mostwyke first, & thereafter for Stafford-on-the-Strand; whereas she had heard talk of these two towns as being on one and the same highway, & Mostwyke about a score of miles from Green-

q 2

ford; but when she was well out a-gates she came to a little road on the right hand which turned clean away from Mostwyke, and she took the said road; & when she had followed it some three miles, she asked the old carle whither it led. He looked on her & smiled somewhat, and she on him in turn; and she said: Wonder not, my friend, that I am not clear about my ways, for I shall tell the sooth that I am a damsel adventurous, & am but seeking some place where I may dwell and earn my livelihood till better days come; and this is the whole truth, & thou shalt know it at once, to wit, that I am indeed fleeing, and were fain to hide the footsteps of me, and I bid you three to help me therein. But ye must know that I am fleeing, not from my foes, but from my friends; & if ye will, as we go by the way, I will tell you all the story of me, and we will be friends while we are together, yea, and thereafter if it may be.

NOW she said this because she had looked carefully on these men, and here seemed that they were good men and true, & not dull of wit. Forsooth the old man, who hight Gerard of the Clee, was no weakling, & was nought loathly to look on, and his two

227

sons were goodly and great of fashion, clear-eyed, and well-carven of visage; they hight Robert and Giles.

When spake old Gerard. Lady, I thank thee heartily of thy much grace unto me; now would I get off my nag & kneel to thee in the highway therefor, but that I see that thou wert fain to make as much way as may be to-day; wherefore, by thy leave, I will tarry my homaging till we rest our horses by the wayside. She laughed, and praised his wisdom; and the young men looked on her and worshipped her in their hearts. Forsooth, the fellowship of these good and true folk was soft and sweet to her, and soothed the trouble of her spirit. And she enforced herself to talk cheerfully with them, and asked them many things, & learned much of them.

Now went on Gerard to say: Lady, if thou wilt hide thy ways from whomsoever it may be, thou hast happened on no ill way; for though this road be good to ride, it is but a byway through the sheep-walks that folk may drive their wains hereby in the wet season of winter & spring; & for a great way we shall come to but little save the cote of the sheep-carle, or a hamlet or

two for the space of two days' riding; & on the third day a little town, hight Upham, where are but few folk save at the midsummer wool-fair, which is now gone by.

When there is a highway cometh into this road from out of the tilled country & Appleham, a good town, and goeth through it toward the tillage, and the City of the Bridges and the liberties thereof; and all the land is much builded & plentiful; but, if thou wilt, we will not take either highway, but wend over the downland which lieth north-east of Upham, and though it be roadless, yet is it not ill-going, and I know it well and its watering-places, little dales and waters therein all running north-east, wherein be certain little thorps here and there, which shall refresh us mightily. Over that downland we may wend a four days, and then the land will swell up high, and from the end of that high land we shall behold below us a fair land of tillage, well watered and wooded, & much builded; & in the midst thereof a great city with walls and towers, & a great white castle & a minster, and lovely houses a many. In that city mayest thou dwell and earn thy livelihood if thou canst do aught of

crafts. And if thou mayest not, then may we find somewhat to swink at for a wage, & so maintain thee & us. But the said city is called the City of the five Crafts, and the land round about it is the frank thereof & oftencost, frank and city & all, it is called the five Crafts all simply. Now what sayest thou hereof, my lady?

HE said I say that we will go thither, and that I thank thee & thy sons of thy good-will, and so may God do to me as I reward you well therefor. But tell me, good Gerard, how it is that thou art so willing to leave hith & kin to follow a gangrel wife along the ways? **S**aid Gerard Dame, I think that the face & body of thee might lead any man that yet had manhood in him to follow thee, even if he left house & all to go with thee. But as for us, we have no longer a house or gear, whereas they of the Red Hold lifted all my bestul, and burned my house & all that was therein a month ago. **Y**ea, said Birdalone, and how befaleth it then that ye are not before the Red Hold to avenge thee? **D**ame, said he, when the munter was I was deemed somewhat over old, wherefore the sheriff took me not, but suffered my sons also to abide behind to earn a living for me;

q 3

may God be good to him therefor, and St. Leonard! But as to my kindred, I must tell thee that I am not inned hereabout, but in a good town hight Uterhay, & that when our alderman sent for me to bring me to thee, I was more than half-minded to get me back thither. Now sooth it is that the best way thither, though it may be indeed the safest rather than the shortest, lies through the five Crafts, for the road goes thence to Uterhay a three score miles or so, making the longer of it, as it skirteth ever some way off a perilous forest, a place of sore dread & devilish, which hight Evilshaw, on the edge whereof lieth Uterhay, a merry cheaping-stead & a plentiful, & the home of my kindred. Wherefore now is the City of the five Crafts handy to us: because when thou hast done with us, as I hope it may be long first, then are we others nigh home, & may all simply wend our way thither.

BIRDALONE thanked him again full heartily; but therewithal as they rode along there seemed to stir in her some memory of the earliest of her days in the witch's house, and she began to have a longing to betake her to Uterhay and the skirts of Evilshaw.

**Chapter II Of Birdalene
& her fellowship, their faring
over the Downland &c**

WHIS rode they
along & loitered
not though they
talked blithely
together & Bird-
alone wondered
to herself that she might so
much as hold up her head for
bitter thoughts of the days &
the longings but late passed
away, but so it was, that it was
only now and again that they
stung her into despair and si-
lence, and for the most part
she hearkened to the talk of
the old man & the lads about
the days of Greenford & the
alarms of lifting and unpeace,
and the ways of the chapmen
and the craftsmen.

IN hour after noon they
rested in a little dale of
the downland where was
a pool and three thorn bushes
therby & when they had light-
ed down the old man knelt be-
fore Birdalone and took her
hand & swore himself her man
to do her will whatso it were &
then he stood up and bade his
sons do likewise; so they two
knelt before her in turn, some-
what shy & abashed, for all that
they were such stout, bold fel-
lows, & found it hard to take her
hand, & then when they had it
in theirs, hard to let it go again.

SCORE of miles & five
they rode that day, and
had no roof over them
at night save the naked heav-
en, but to Birdalone that was
but little scathe: they made a
shift to have some fire by them,
and the three men sat long a-
bout it that even while Bird-
alone told them somewhat of
her life; and as she told of the
House under the Wood & the
Great Water, Gerard had some
inkling of whereabouts it was;
but was nought so sure, be-
cause as above said in this tale
seldom did any from the world
of men venture in Evilshaw,
or know of the Great Water
from its banks that gave unto
the forest.

IN like wise they rode the
next day & came at even-
tide to a thorp in a fair
little dale of the downland, &
there they guested with the
shepherd folk, who wondered
much at the beauty of Birda-
lone, so that at first they scarce
durst venture to draw nigh un-
to her until Gerard & his sons
had had some familiar con-
verse with them; then indeed
they exceeded in kindness to-
ward them, in their rough up-
land fashion, but ever found
it hard to keep their eyes off
Birdalone, and that the more
after they had heard the full
sweetness of her voice, where-

as she sang to them certain
songs which she had learned in
the castle of the Quest. though
it made her heart sore: but she
deemed she must needs pay
that kindly folk for their greet-
ful & blithe ways. And there-
after they sang to the pipe
and the harp their own down-
land songs; & this she found
strange that whereas her eyes
were dry when she was sing-
ing the songs of love of the
knight hood, the wildness of
the shepherd music drew the
tears from her, would she,
would she not. Homelike and
dear seemed the green willow
dale to her, and in the night ere
she slept and she lay quiet a-
midst of the peaceful people,
she could not choose but weep
again, for pity of the bitter-
sweet of her own love, and for
pity of the wide world withal,
& all the ways of its many folk
that lay so new before her.

Chapter III. They come
to the City of the five Crafts,
and Birdalene meets with the
Doorwife.

WHEN they made not
so much way that
they came to the
five Crafts on
the fourth day,
but lay under the
bare heavens in a dale below
the big swell of the downland,
whereof Gerard spake. But be-

times in the morning Birda-
lone arose and stirred up her
men, and they gat to horse, &
rode the hill before them till
they came on to the crest there-
of. Then Birdalene cried aloud
with joy to see the lovely land
before her, and the white walls
and the towers of the great
city, whereas Greenford was
but small beside it.

WHEN they rode down into
the frank, & entered the
gates of the city a little
after noon, & again was Bird-
alone in all amaze at the going
to and fro in the streets and
the thronging of the markets,
& the divers folk, as chapmen
and men at arms, and crafts-
men and lords, who used the
said city; & to say sooth, some-
what her heart sank within her,
& it seemed to her that it would
be hard and troublous to have
to deal with so much folk, and
that they must needs go past
her on the right hand and the
left without heeding her life.

WHEN SO EVER, Ger-
ard, who knew the city,
brought her to a fair
hostel, where she was well lodg-
ed, she and her men. & straight-
way, then, before she went out
into the streets again, she fell
to getting together what she
had of fine broidered work and
of fair script, and to finishing
what she had unfinished. And

hence

she sent forth Gerard and his sons to find out where was the market for such goods, and if she would have leave to sell the same therein, or anywhere in the town; and Gerard found the hall of the embroiderers, and therein the master of the craft, and he received the carle courteously when he heard that there was fine work come to town, and did him to wit that none in any such craft might have freedom of the market save by leave of the guild of the craft but said he the guilds were open-handed and courteous, and were nowise wont to refuse the said leave, were the work good and true; & he bade Gerard withal tell his mistress that she were best to bring samplings of her work to the Guild-hall so soon as she might. So the very next day went Birdalone thither, & found the master a well-looking tall man of some five-and-forty winters, who looked on her from the first as if he deemed it were no ill way of wearing the time. To this man she showed her work and though he found it not easy to take his eyes off Birdalone herself, yet when he looked at her handiwork, he found it better than very good, and he said to her: Dameel, here is what will be sought for at a great price by

the great lords and ladies of the land, & the rich burghesses, and especially by the high prelates; & so much of it as thou hast a mind to do is so much coined gold unto thee; & now I see thee what thou art, I were fain that thou gathered good to thee. But as diligent as thou mayst be, thou hast but one pair of hands, wonderful soothly, and yet but one pair. ¶ He broke off at that word, for he was verily staring at her hands, & longing to see more of her arms than the wrists only, so that he scarce knew what he was saying. Then he turned red and said: Soothly I wot that no other hands save thine may do such needlework, or make the draughts for them. But thou wilt need women-servants to help thee both in dighting the house for thee (for this big old carle here will be scarce meet thereto) and as apprentices to help thee about the work itself; & if thou wilt, I shall seek the best ones out for thee. Moreover I must tell thee, that though I know for sure how that no woman in the world may work such needlework as thine, yet whiles there cometh hither a woman of middle age, a woman worn by trouble, pious, meek, & kind; and by St. Lucia! now I look on thee again, she might be some-

what like unto thee, were she young and fresh-looking and strong as thou art. Now this woman I say, & thereof I marvel, doeth needlework that is somewhat after the manner of thine, and which seemed to us excellent till I had seen thine. Good livelihood she earneth thereby, & is diligent therein; but she hath no heart to get apprentices, or be made one of our guild, both of which were lawful to her as to thee, lovely damsel. But now I shall counsel her to be made of our guild along with thee, if thou wilt have it so, & then may ye both have three apprentices each, & may make in our city a goodly school, so that our guild shall be glorified thereby, for there will be none such work in the world. Now sayest thou?

SHE thanked him much, & yea said him, & thought in her heart that such work which would keep her hands and her head both busy, would solace the grief of her heart, and wear away the time, that she might live till hope might peradventure arise in her.

THEN said the master: There is one thing else, that is, thy dwelling-place, and if thou wilt I shall hire thee a house in the street of the Broiderers, a goodly one:

sooth to say, that same is mine own, so thou mayst deem that I tell thee hereof to mine own gain; and that may be (and he reddened therewith); but there is this in it, that if thou lackest money I shall let thee live therein without price till thou shalt have earned more than enough to pay me.

BIRDALONE thanked him well, but she did him to wit that she was nowise penniless; and presently she departed well pleased, though she deemed that the said master was wellnigh more friendly than might be looked for. And the next day he came to her in the hostelry, & without more ado brought her to the house in the street of the Broiderers, & she found it fair and well plenished, and so she fell to work to get all things ready.

ON the next week was the day appointed when she should be received into the broiderers' guild, and the day before came the master aforesaid to see Birdalone. Sooth to say, he had not failed to come to see her every day, on one pretence or another, since the first day they had met, but ever he did to her with all honour & simply. But on this day he brought with him the woman skilful of her hands, to

THE
LORD
SCENE

show her unto Birdalone, who received her gladly, and there-
after Master Jacobus left them
alone together.

THE said woman looked
worn and aged indeed,
but was not of more
than five & forty winters even
by seeming, after the first look
at her; she was somewhat tall
& well knit, her face well shap-
en, & her hair yet goodly. There
was a kind look in the eyes of
her, as if she might love any-
one with whom she lived that
would be kind to her. Meek, or
rather over-meek, of mien she
was, and it seemed of her that
she had been sore scared & op-
pressed one while or another.

When Master Jacobus
was gone, Birdalone set
her down on the settle
beside her, & spake to her full
sweetly and kindly, & the wo-
man spake little in turn save
answering simply to her ques-
tions. Birdalone asked where
she was kinned, & she answer-
ed: In Utterhay. Then said
Birdalone: Within these last
few days I have heard that town
named twice or thrice, and ne-
ver before, as meseemeth, and
yet, hearing the name from thy
mouth, it seemeth to stir some
thing in me, as if I had been
there one time and longed to
be there again. Is there aught
in the place whereof folk tell

wide about, so that I might
have heard it told of and not
noted it at the time? Nay,
lady, said the dame, save per-
chance that it is on the verge of
a very great and very evil wood,
otherwise it was once a merry
town and of much resort from
the country-side.

BIRDALONE looked on
her, & saw that the tears
were coming from her
eyes and running down her
cheeks as she spake; so she
said to her: Why dost thou
weep, mother? Is there aught
I may do to assuage thy grief?
Said the dame: Thou art so
kind to me, and thy voice is so
dear and sweet, that I cannot
choose but weep. Meseems it
is because love of thee hath
taken mine heart, & therewith
is blended memory of past sor-
row of mine. Thou askest me
if thou mayest do aught to as-
suage my grief; dear lady, I am
not grieved now, that has gone
by; nay, now I am more than
not grieved, I am made happy,
because I am with thee. But
since thou art so debonaire with
me, I will ask thee to do some-
what for me; and that is, to tell
me of thy life gone by; I mean,
sweet young damsel, of thy life
when thou wert a little child.

WHEN Birdalone kissed
her and said: It goes to
my heart that thou lov-

eat me; for soon as I set eyes on thee my heart went out to thee; and now belike we shall be dear friends; and that is a thing that shall avail me much, to have a friend who is so much older than I, so that nought can come between us, of the love of men & other griefs. ¶ Yea now, said the dame, smiling somewhat sadly; now do I see the water standing in thine eyes, and thy voice quavers. Is it so, thou lovely kind damsel, that thou hast been grieved by love of a man? Who then may prevail in love if thou prevail not? ¶ And she fell to fondling Birdalone's hand; but Birdalone said: It is over-long to tell of all my life, mother, though I be so young; but now I will do as thou badest me, & tell thee somewhat of my days when I was little.

AND therewith she fell to telling her of her days in the House under the Wood, and the witch and her surliness and grimness, & of her love of the wild things, and how she waxed there. And she spake a long while, for the memory of those days seemed to lead her along, as though she verily were alive now in them; & the woman sat before her, gazing on her lovingly, till Bird-alone stayed her tale at last & said: Now have I told thee more

than enough of a simple matter, & a life that was as that of a wild creature of the woods. Now shalt thou, mother, tell me somewhat of thee, & what was thy grief of Utterhay; for thou shalt find that the telling thereof shall solace thee. Ah! so think young folk, said the woman sadly, because there are many days left for them to hope in. But though the telling of my sorrow be a fresh sorrow to me, yet shalt thou hear it. It is but of the loss of my babe; but she was of all babes the fairest and the sweetest.

GOD she fell to telling Birdalone all that concerning the witch at Elterhay & the poor wife that ye have heard in the beginning of this book, until the time when she left the house to buy meat for the witch; for she herself was the said poor wife. And then she told how she came back again & found her guest gone and the child withal; and though she had wept for love of Birdalone, she wept not at telling of this grief, but told it as a tale which had befallen some other one. And she said. And so when I had done running up and down like a wild thing, & asking of the neighbours with lack of breath and fierceness of speech who had taken my child away from me:

DATE: 11/11/11
PAGE: 1
RECEIVED

and when I had gone up to the wood & even some way into it, and when I had wandered up & down again, & night was falling, I came back at last again to my poor house so weary with my woe, that I scarce knew what had befallen me. And there up on the board lay the victual & drink which I had brought, and the money which the witch had given unto me; and despite of grief, hunger flamed up in me at the sight, and I threw myself on to it and ate and drank, and so came to myself, that is, to my grief. But the next day I ran about hither & thither, and wearied folk with my asking & my woe; but it was all of none avail. The child was gone away from me. There is little more to tell of me, sweet lady. If I were to live, needs must I take the poor price of my little one, to wit, the witch's money, & deal with folk for my livelihood; wherefore I bought me cloth & silks, having now the wherewithal, and set to work on broderie, for even then was I a cunning needle-woman. So were God & the saints good to me, & inclined the folk to me, that they were good and piteous, & I lacked not work nor due livelihood; but after a while I wearied of Otterhay, where my dear child should have been running about before my feet, and hav-

ing by this time gotten a little money together, and being exceeding deft in my craft, I came on hither to live, and, praise be to St. Ursula! I have found it easy to live; and praise be to Allhallows withal that I have found thee, who art so kind & lovely; and thou by seeming of the very age my child should be if she be living: or how old art thou, dear lady?

BIRDBLONE laid her hand on her breast, and she was turned pale, but she said in a low voice I deem that I am of twenty summers.

WHEN they both sat silent, till Birdalone might master the fluttering of her heart, and she said: Now meseems I have a memory even earlier than those I told thee erst. A woman took me out of a basket & set me on the back of an ass, and I looked about, and I was in a grassy lawn of the woods; and I saw a squirrel run up a tree-trunk before me, and wind round the tree & hide him; and then I stretched out my hands & cried out to him; and then came the woman unto me, & gave me wood-strawberries to eat out of her hand.

WHEN RAKE out the poor-wife thereat, pale and trembling: Tell me now, my child, hast thou any memory of what the woman was who set

thee on the ass and gave thee the strawberries? Birdalone looked on her, and scanned her face closely, & then shook her head, and said Nay, it was not thou, mother. Nay surely; nay, surely, said the woman; but think again. Said Birdalone, speaking slowly Was it my mistress then? She was a tall woman, somewhat thin & bony, with goodly red hair and white skinned, but thin lip-ped. Quoth the poorwife: No, no; it is of no use; nought such was she. Then Birdalone looked up and said eagerly: Yea, but it was her other shape belike: therein was she a tall woman, dark haired, hook-nosed, and hawk-eyed, as if of thirty summers. A stark woman. Hast thou seen such? dost thou remember her?

THE woman sprang up and cried out, and was like to have fallen, but Birdalone arose and held her in her arms and comforted her, & set her in her seat again & knelt before her; and presently the poorwife came to herself and said: My child, thou sayest do I remember her; how shall I ever forget her? she was the thief who stole my child.

THEREWITH she slid from off her seat, and knelt by Birdalone, & stooped low down on the floor

as if the tall maiden were but a little one and she fell to kissing her & patting her, her face and her hands, and all about; & said, sobbing and yet smiling: Suffer me a little, my child, mine own lovely child! for in good sooth I am thy mother, & it is long since I have seen thee: but hearken, when I come quite to myself I shall pray thee not to leave me yet awhile, and I shall pray thee to love me.

BIRDALONE clipped & kissed her, and said: I love thee dearly, & never never shall I leave thee.

THEN they stood up, and the mother took Birdalone by the shoulders, & held her a little aloof, and devoured her with her eyes; and she said: Yea, thou hast grown tall, & belike wilt grow no taller: and how fair & lovely thou hast grown; & thou that wert born in a poor man's house! no wonder that any should covet thee. And I, I wonder if ever I was as fair as thou art; forsooth many called me fair for a little while; and now behold me! Nay, child and darling, let not thy face grow downcast, for now shall I know nought more of fear & grief; and is it not like that I shall grow fairer of flesh, & shapelier, in the happy days we shall dwell together? And therewith she

took her to her arms, & it seem-
ed as if she might never have
enough of clipping & embrac-
ing her, and she would look at
Birdalone's hands & her feet
and her arms, and stroke them
and caress them; and she won-
dered at her body, as if she had
been a young mother eaten up
with the love of her first-born.
And as for Birdalone, she was
as glad of her mother as might
be; & yet in her heart she won-
dered if perchance one of the
fellowship might stray that
way, and be partaker in her joy
of this new-found dear friend;
and she said, might it be Viri-
dis; but in her inmost heart,
though she told it not to her-
self, she longed that the Black
Squire might find her out at
last.

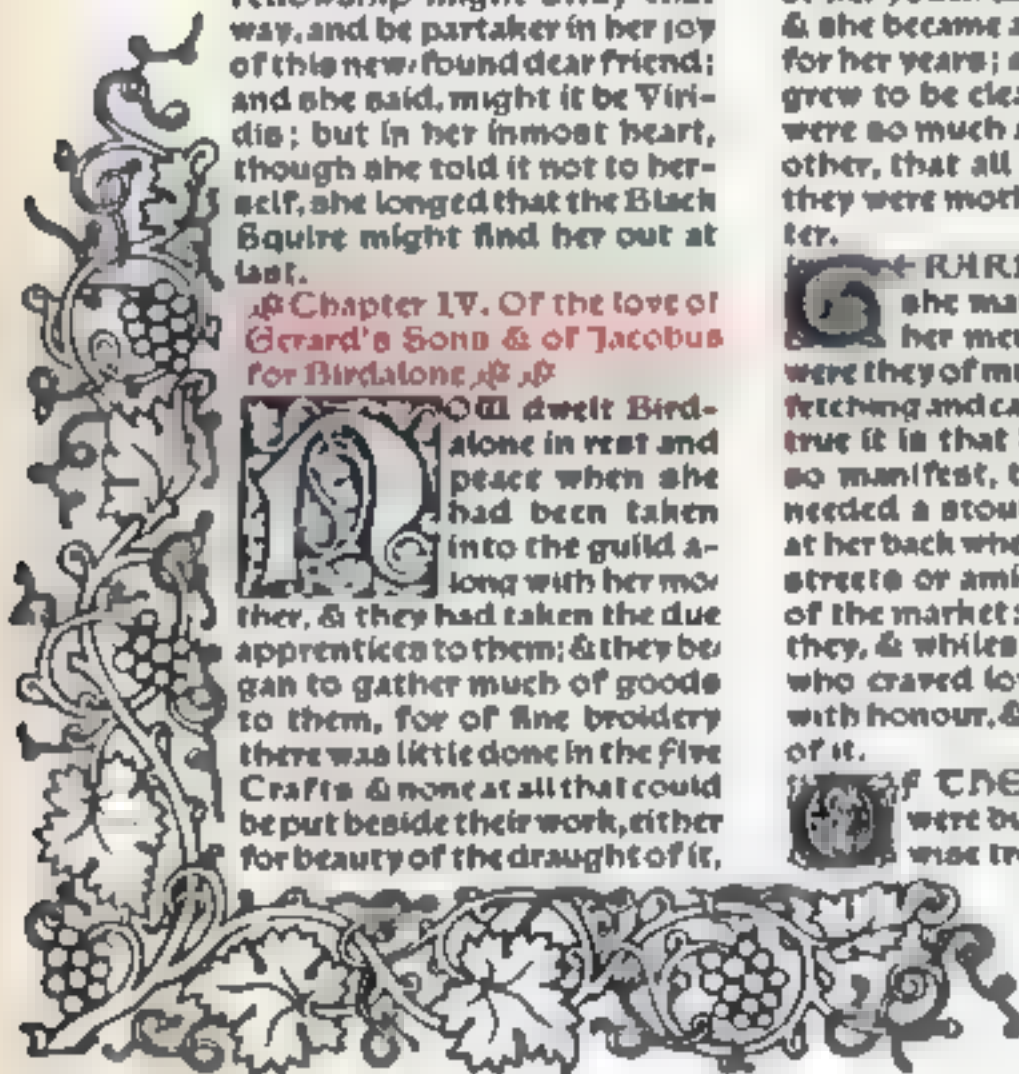
Chapter IV. Of the love of
Gerard's Sons & of Jacobus
for Birdalone.

NOW dwelt Bird-
alone in rest and
peace when she
had been taken
into the guild a-
long with her mo-
ther, & they had taken the due
apprentices to them; & they be-
gan to gather much of goods
to them, for of fine broidery
there was little done in the five
Crafts & none at all that could
be put beside their work, either
for beauty of the draught of it,

or for skill of handiwork. She
declared unto all folk how that
the poor wife (who had to name
Hudrey) was her very mother,
from whom she had been stol-
en in her youngest days; but
she told none any tale of how
she was stolen. And the twain
dwelt together in the greatest
loving-kindness; & it was with
Hudrey as she had forecast,
that now her days were happy,
and she living in all ease and
content, that the goodness
of her youth came back to her.
& she became a fair woman as
for her years; and therewith it
grew to be clear that the two
were so much alike one to the
other, that all might see that
they were mother and daugh-
ter.

WHEN **GERARD** & his two sons
she maintained yet as
her men; and not only
were they of much use to her in
fetching and carrying, but also
true it is that her beauty was
so manifest, that she whiles
needed a stout lad weaponed
at her back when she was in the
streets or amidst the throng
of the market: and many were
they, & whiles of the highest,
who craved love of her, some
with honour, & some with lack
of it.

THESE, forsooth,
were but two that any-
wise troubled her, and



the most trouble was this, that she might not fail to see that the love of her had entered into the hearts of the two Gerard sons, Robert & Giles; so that times were when she deemed she must even send them away, but when it came to the point she had not the heart there-to; though none other remedy there seemed, so sorely as their souls were wounded by longing for her. It is not to be said that they ever spake to her thereof, or wittingly wearied her with signs of love; but they could not so easily cover it up but that it was ever before her eyes. But she suffered it all for friendship's sake and for their true service, and in all friendliness did what she might to solace their grief. Forsooth so good and true she found that father, kind, and the young men so goodly and kind, that she said to herself, had she not another man lying in her heart, she might well have chosen one of those twain for her very speech friend and true lover.

THE second wooer that troubled her was the master, Jacobus, who, when but three months were worn of her dwelling in her house, did all openly crave her love & offer her marriage, he being a man unwedded. Sore was her heart that she must needs

gainsay him, so kind and courteous as he had been to her at their first coming together; though this indeed is sooth, that straightway, so soon as he saw her, he fell into the captivity of her love. Howsoever, gainsay him she needs must, & he took thenaysay so hardly that he was scarce like a man before her, and wept & prayed & lamented many times over, till she wearied of it, and well nigh fell to loathing him. So that it came to this at last, that one day she spake to him and said that she might no longer bear it, but must seek another house & leave him. There then was the tordo, for he fell on his knees before her, & kissed her feet, would she, would she not, and cried out in his grief, till at last for pure weariness of his folly she gave way unto him, and said that she would still abide there; whereon he rose up from her & went away with all the grief run off him for that time, & as glad a man to look on as you might see on a summer's day.

AT the next morning he came unto her again, and she thinking all was begun afresh, made him no glad countenance; but he stood up before her and spake friendly, and said how that she was in the right of it, and that if they

134
135
136

both dwell in one house together they were like to have but a weary time of it, both she and he. But, said he, I will not that thou shouldst depart out of this house, for a goodly one it is, and full meet for thee; it is for me to depart, and not for thee. I tell thee, forsooth, that I had from the first meant this house as a gift from me to thee. And therewith he drew from his pouch a scroll, which was a deed of gift of the said house, duly sealed & attested, and he gave it into her hands; but she was sore moved thereat, & at the demeanour of him that morning, and she let the scroll fall to the floor and wept for pity of him, and reached out both her hands, & he kissed them, & then her lips also, & thence he sat down beside her. But she said: Alas! that thou wilt give me what I may not take, and wouldst have of me what I may not give.

Now he waxed hotter, & said: This once I command thee to do my will, & take my gift. It will benoughe to my gain if thou take it not; for I may not live in this house when thou art gone from it; and I swear by Hilhallows that I will not let any have it to hire, nor will I sell it, since thou hast made it holy by dwelling therein.

So was she sore moved by his generous fashion, and she said. I will take thy gift then, and live here in honour of thee & thy friendship: for well I wot thou hadst no mind to buy me with thy gift.

She spake, & he stood up stark and stern, & so departed, and kissed her not again; though meseems she would have suffered him had he offered it. Nay, belike had he at that moment pressed his wooing somewhat masterfully, it is not so sure but she might have yeasaid it, and suffered him to wed her & lead her to bed; though it would have gone ill both with him & with her thereafter.

HENCEFORTH dwell Birdalone with her mother & her maidens and her men in that house, & it became famous in the five Crafts because of her beauty & her wisdom, which minished not, but waxed day by day; but therewithal as the time wore, waxed her longing & sadness. But all this she hid in her own heart, and was debonair to all about her, and so good to poor folk that none had a word save of blessing on her beauty & her wisdom.

of the death of
Hudrey in her house.
She is warned in a Dream to
seek the Black Squire, and is
minded to leave the City of
the five Crafts, & seek again
the Castle of the Quest.

BIRDALONE dwelt Bird-
alone in the five
Crafts in such
rest and peace as
her heart would
let her; and dear
& good friends she had about
her; her mother first, whose
love and desire for love of her
made all things soft and dear
unto her. Gerard and the Ger-
ardsons were next, who were
ever faithful and true unto her,
and deft both of hand and of
mind, so that they wrought
many things for her avail. Then
came the master, Jacobus, who
held himself unwedded for her
sake, and though he no longer
dwelt in the same house with
her, might scarce endure to
miss the sight of her for two
days running: a dear friend
she deemed him, as forsooth
he was, though while he tor-
mented and wearied her, and
belike had wearied her more,
but for the sorrow which lay
on her own heart, whereof it
came that she might not think
of any man as of one who might
be a lover, and so felt safe even
with so kind a friend & so stub-

born in his love as was this
one. Moreover he never again
craved love of her in so many
words, but only in his goings
& comings so did, that it was
clear how he had her, and the
love of her, ever in his heart.

MORE thus a five years;
and then came a sick-
ness on the city, and
many died thereof; & the said
sickness entered into Birda-
lone's house and slew Hudrey
her mother, but spared all else
therein. Thereby at the first was
Birdalone so overwhelmed that
she might heed nought, neith-
er her craft nor her friends, nor
the days to come on the earth
for her. And moreover when
she came more to herself, which
was not for many days, & ask-
ed why her friend Jacobus had
not been to see her the last
days, she was told that he also
was dead of the pestilence; &
she sorrowed for him sorely,
for she loved him much, though
not in the way he would.

NO now did the city
and land of the five
Crafts begin to look
unfriendly to Birdalone, and
she fell to thinking that she
must needs depart thence, as
she well might do, whereas she
had foison of goods: and at
first it was in her mind to go
with Gerard and his sons unto
Atterhay; but then she deem-

Part I The
Love of Al-
gence

ed the thought of her mother, & how she would be ever thinking of the loss & the gain, and the loss once more stood in the way, and she turned one thing and another over in her mind and might not face it.

IN a night, as she slept, came to her dreams of her days in the house under the Wood (as very seldom be it did) and the witch-wife was speaking to her in friendly fashion (as for her) & blaming her for fleeing away & was taunting her with the failure of her love and therewith telling her how fair a man & lovesome was the Black Biquir. & what a loss she had of him & Birdalene was hearkening and weeping for tenderness sake, while the witch was unto her neither fearful nor irksome & forsooth nought save a mouthpiece for words that both grieved Birdalene and yet were an eager pleasure unto her. But in the midst thereof, and ere the dream had time to change, Birdalene awoke, and it was an early morning of later spring, and the sky was clear blue and the sun shining bright, & the birds singing in the garden of the house, & in the street was the sound of the early market-folk passing through the street with their wares, and all was fresh and lovely.

SHE awoke sobbing and the pillow was wet with her tears, and yet she felt as if something strange & joyous were going to befall her, & for joy of the love of life the heart beat fast in her bosom.

SHE arose all darling naked as she was, and went to the window & looked out on the beauty of the spring while the sound of the market-wains brought to her mind the thought of the meads and the streams of the river & the woodlarks beyond the city and she felt a longing for them, as a while she knelt on the window-seat half dreaming & asleep again till the sun came round that way and its beams fell upon her bosom & her arms & she stood up and looked on the fairness of her body, and a great desire took hold of her heart that it might be loved as it deserved by him whom she desired. And thus she stood there till she became ashamed, and hastened to do on her raiment but even as she was about it it came upon her that what she had will to do was to seek to the Castle of the Quest, and find out where was her love if there he were not & so to seek him the world over till she found him. And such a flood of joy possessed her when she thought this, and so

eager to begone she was, that she deemed every minute wasted till she were on the road.

NEVERTHELESS, in a while, when her mind was steadied, she knew that she had somewhat to do ere she might be gone, & that here, as oft, it would be more haste less speed.

She abode a little, and then came into her hall duly dight, & found Gerard and his sons there to scree her; and she brake her fast, & bade them sit by her at table, as oft she did; and she spake to them of this and that, and Gerard answered lightly again; but the two Gerardsons looked at one another, as though they would speak & ask a question from time to time, but forbore because they durst not. But Gerard looked on them, & deemed he wotted what was in their minds; so at last he spake: Our lady, both I, & me, seemeth my sons also, deem that there is some tidings toward which are great unto thee: for thine eyes sparkle, and the red burns in thy cheeks, and thine hands may not be quiet, nor thy feet abide in one place; wherefore I see that thou hast something in thy mind which strives to be forth of it. Now thou wilt pardon us, our dear lady, that we ask concerning

this, because it is in our love for thee that we speak: lest there be some change toward which shall be a grief to some of us.

OY men, said Birdalone, flushing red, sooth it is that there is a change at hand, and I shall tell you straightway what it is. Years ago I told you that I was fleeing from my friends; now the change hath betid that I would seek them again; & needs must I leave the five Crafts behind to do so. And moreover there is this ill word to be said, which I will say at once, to wit, that when I am but a little way gone from the five Crafts I must wend the other deal of my journey birdalone, as my name is.

AL those three sat silent and aghast at that word, and the young men grew pale; but after a while spake Gerard: Our lady most well beloved, this word which thou hast spoken, to wit, that thou needest us no longer, I have looked to hear any time this five years: and praise be to the saints that it hath come late and not soon. Now there is no more to be said but that thou tell us what is thy will that we should do.

BIRDALONE hung her head awhile for sorrow of sundering from these men; then she looked up and

said: It seemeth, my friends, as if ye deem I have done you a wrong in sundering our fellowship; but all I may say hereon is to pray you to pardon me, that I needs must go alone on my quest. And now what I would have you do, is first of all to fetch hither a notary and scrivener, that he may draw up a deed of gift to you, Gerard & Gerardsons, of this house & all that is therein, saving what money I may need for my journey, and gifts such as I shall bid you to be given to my workwomen. Ye must needs ye assay this, or ye are forsworn of your behest to do my will. But furthermore, I will have you to let the workwomen of mine (and the head one ruling) to hire the aforesaid house, if so they will; for now are they skilled, and may well earn good livelihood by the work. But the next work is simple; it is to furnish for me the array of a young man, with such armour as I may cawily bear, to dight me for my road. Forsooth ye wot that not unseldom do women use the custom of going arrayed like men, when they would journey with hidden head: and ye may happen upon such gear as hath been made for such a woman rather than any man; but thou shalt get me also a short bow & a quiver of arrows, for verily

these be my proper weapons that I can deal with deftly. Now my last command is that, when all is done, maybe to-morrow, or maybe the next day, ye bring me out of the city & the frank of the five Crafts, and bring me somewhat on my way over the downs, for loth am I to part from you ere needs must. Then they knelt before her and kissed her hands, & they were full of grief; but they saw that so it had to be.

AFTER Gerard spake with his sons apart, & in a while came to Birdstone & said Our lady we will do your will in all wise; but we shall tell thee, that the five Crafts will look but strange to us when thou art gone, & that we have a mind to betake us to Utterhay & the land of our kindred. Wherefore we pray thee to give this house that hath been so dear to us unto thy workwoman & her mates; for we need it not, nor the hire thereof, but shall do well enough with what money or good thou mayst give us. Is this according to thy will, or have I spoken rashly?

SHE said: Ye are good & ungreedy, & I bless you for it; be it as ye will, & this the more, as I were fain that ye go to Utterhay; for whiles I have deemed that I myself am drawn thitherward.

wherefore it may be that we shall meet again in that place.

NO when she had so spoken, she might not refrain her tears & the Gerardoons turned away, for they were ashamed, both that they should see her weep, or she them. But at last she called to them & said: Now make we the speediest end we may of this, for sorry work is the tarrying of farewell; so I pray you, my friends, to go about the work I have bidden you.

SO all was done as she would, & the day after the morrow was Birdalone abiding the coming of Gerard and his sons with the horses; & despite of the sundering of friends & the perils that belike lay before her, the world seemed fair to her, and life beginning anew. And she made no doubt that she would soon be at the Castle of the Quest, & there find all things much as she had left them; & there at least would be the welcome of her dear friend Vindis.

Chapter VI. Of the Sundering of Birdalone from Gerard and his Sons.

RESENTLY were the horses come with Gerard & his sons, and Birdalone gat to horse amongst them.

She was armed in a light hauberk, and over it a long and loose surcoat that came down beneath the knee of her; & a sallet she had upon her head, wide but light, so that not very much of her face was to be seen. She had made up her mind to this tale upon the road, when she was among folk, that she was under a vow not to do off her helm for a seven days' space. Withal she had covered up the lovely shapeliness of her legs with long boots of deer-leather, and her surcoat was wide-sleeved; she was well hidden, and whereas she was a tall and strong woman, she might well pass for a young man, slender & fair-faced. She was girt with a good sword, and Gerard had gotten her a strong horse, man's bow and a quiver full of arrows, wherewith, as afore-said, she knew well how to deal; wherefore she was by no means without defence.

SO THEY went their ways through the streets and out a gates; and it must be said, that were not Birdalone's thoughts turned toward the Castle of the Quest, and what she should meet there, her heart had been somewhat sore at leaving the city which had cherished her so well these years past; nay, as it was, the shadow of the southern gate,

Part VI. The
Day of the
Quest

as she past thereunder, smote somewhat cold upon her, and she silently bade farewell to the City of the five Crafts with some sorrow, though with no fear.

WORTH they rode then through the frank and up on to the shepherd country, & whereas their horses were of the best, & they had no sumpter/beast with them till they came to Upham, where they must needs have victual, they made but five days of it to the place where the road turned aside from the country of Mostwyke. There then they drew rein, & Birdalone lighted down from her horse, and they all, and they lay upon the grass and ate and drank together.

WHEN they were done, spake Birdalone & said: Dear friends, this is the hour & the place when we must needs part: for ye shall go back again to five Crafts, & do what I have bidden of you, & do your will, and wend your ways with your livelihood unto Uterhay. But as for me, I must go my ways first unto Greenford, & thence to seeh my friends from whom erst I was fleeing when ye first became my friends. Now perchance ye will say that I have taken you up in my need, and cast you aside at my pleasure; but I may only say that there

be at present two deals of my life, and of one of them have ye been partakers, & of the other ye may not be. forsooth that is a grief unto me, as I suppose unto you is it a greater one. But unto me also were it heavier but that my heart tells me it shall not ever be so: for as I said to you some days ago, I have a hope that we shall yet meet again, be it in Uterhay or in some other place. And now I pray you to pardon me wherein I may have done amiss unto you, and begrudge it not that there be others, who indeed were first-comers in regard to you, and whom I love better than you: for of your truth & your goodwill and loving-kindness will I bear witness wheresoever I may be.

WHEN spake Gerard: Do ye speak, my done, for I have no grudge against her, nor ought to bewail me as to her, save, it may be, that I am now so well on in years that it may well befall that I shall not live till the time of the meeting in Uterhay. But I will pray thee this, dear lady, that if thou come to the place where I lie dead thou wilt kiss my burial-stone, & sing due masses for me. Nay, she said, but this is the worst shall betide betwixt us.

WHEN SPAKE Robert Gerardson: I am not deft of speech, but this parting makes me bold to say this: that from the time when first I set eyes on thee I have loved thee in such wise that never mayst thou love me as much as I love thee, if thou hast anywhere, as I deem thou hast, a lover of thy body, whom thou lovest. Now I have seen that for a long while thou hast known this, and hast ever because of it been as meek and kind with me as thou mightest be. And this hath partly grieved me the more, because it hath eked my longing for thee; & yet it hath comforted me the more, because it hath made me deem better of thee, and deem thee worthier of worship and holier; therefore have thou all my blessing for it. And now I know that thou sundereast from us that thou mayst go seek thy very bodily lover; & I say, that if the sundering had been for any lighter cause, grieved at heart should I have been; but since it is even so, once more I bless thee, & ever shall I be happy in the thought of thee; and if ever we meet again, still shalt thou find me as now I am in heart and in soul.

SHE turned to him, not dry-eyed, and said: I know that what thou sayest is sooth; and thou hast

guessed right as to my goings: and I take thy blessing with love and joy.

WHEN were they silent; but Giles Gerardson was struggling with words, for he was slow to speech: at last he said: I say much as saith my brother: but see thou, our lady, how ill it had gone if thou hadst loved one of us with an equal love; woe worth the strife then! But now I will crave this of thee, that thou kiss me on the lips, now whenas we part; & again, that thou wilt do as much when first we meet again hereafter. And I tell thee right out, that if thou gainsay this, I shall deem it unfriendly in thee, and that those lovely words which thou didst speak e'en now were but words alone, & that thou art not as true as I have deemed thee.

SHE laughed amidst her tears, and said: Dear lad, doom me not till I have been found guilty! I shall no-wise naysay thee this, for I love thee, & now and ever shalt thou be unto me as a brother, thou & Robert also; for even so have ye done by me. But thou wottest, dear lad, that whiles and again must sistersunder from brother, and even so it has to be now.

WHEN they sat silent all four; & thereafter Bird-alone arose and did off

1311 V1 The
2194 + 41
16111



her ballet, and kissed and embraced Gerard and his sons, & bade them farewell. & she and the young men wept. Then she armed herself & gat to horse & went her ways towards Greenford, having nought with her but the raiment and arms that her body bore, and her horse, and some gold pieces & gems in a little pouch. So rode she; & the others turned back sadly toward the five Crafts.

Chapter VII. Birdalone cometh to Greenford, and hears of the Wasting of the Castle of the Quest. ¶

In came Birdalone riding in to Greenford an hour before sunset on a day of the latter end of May; & she had no doubt but to go straight to the hostelry. & that the less as she had not abided there before, as hath been told. To them that served her she told the tale of her vow, that she might not do off her ballet that seven days: and some frowned her, & some deemed her a woman, but whereas she seemed by her raiment to be of condition none meddled with her. Moreover, as she told her intent to ride on betimes in the morning, it mattered the less unto them: withal she gave out that she came from foreign

parts, as sooth it was.

In the evening she sat in the hall, & with her were three chapmen traveling with their wares, and two good men of the town sitting; and they were talking together, & were courteous and blithe, & amidst their talk they threw many a glance at the slim and fair young squire, as Birdalone seemed, and were fain to speak unto him, but refrained them for courtesy's sake. For her part, Birdalone longed sore to ask them somewhat of the Castle of the Quest, but the words clave to her throat for very fear; and she sat restless and ill at ease. However at last said a townsman to a chapman: Art thou for the Red Hold, Master Peter, when thou art done here? Birdalone turned very pale at that word; and Master Peter spake: Yea, surely neighbour, if the folk leave aught in my packs for others to buy. He spake in a jovial voice, as if he were merry, & the others all laughed together, as though they were well pleased & in good contentment. And now, deemed Birdalone, would be her time to speak if she would learn aught; so she constrained herself at last, and spake, though in a quavering voice: Me seems then, masters, this good town is thriving as now? This I ask

because I am a stranger in these parts this long while, and now I am come back hither fain were I to find the land in good peace; for I may chance to take up my abode hereby.

THE GOODMEN turned to her & smiled kindly when they heard the sweetness of her voice; & one of them said: Sir of the ballet, ye shall be content with the peace in this land, & the thriving of its folk; the very villeins hereabout live as well as franklins in most lands, & the yeomen and vassours are clad as if they were knights of a good lord's household. Forsooth their houses are both goodly and easy to enter; and well is that, whereas there lacks never good meat and drink on the board therein. And moreover their women are for ever seeking whatso is fair and goodly, whatso is far-fetched & dear-bought, whereof we chapmen also thrive, as thou mayst well deem. Ah! it is a goodly land now!

THE OTHERS nodded and smiled. But Birdalone spake, hardening her heart thereto for very need:

LIKE then there is a change of days here, for when I last knew of the land there was little peace therein. And that will not be

so long ago, said a townsman, smiling. For I doubt we should see no grey hair in thine head if thy ballet were off it. Birdalone reddened: It will be some five years ago, said she. Yea, yea, said the townsman, we were beginning to end the unpeace then, & it was the darkest hour before the dawn; for five years ago we and the good knights of the Castle of the Quest were lying before the walls of the Red Hold. Forsooth we cleared out that den of devils then & there. What betid unto it after ye won it? said Birdalone. & she trembled withal. Said the townsman: Heard ye never of the Black Squire, a very valiant knight, since thou sayest that thou hast known this country-side? She bowed a yeasay, for this time she found it hard to speak.

WELL, said the townsman, we held garrison in the Red Hold for some three months, and there after we craved of him to come and be our captain therein; for, even after the Hold was won, there was yet a sort of runagates that haunted the country-side, men who had no craft save lifting and slaying. And forsooth we knew this Lord Arthur for the keenest & deftest of men at arms; so he year-

said our asking, and did all he might herin, & forsooth that was all there was to do; for he was ever in the saddle, and at the work. forsooth he was not a merryman, save when he was at his busiest: & little he spake in hall or chamber, else had he been better beloved. But at least by no man better might the land have been served.

HERE was silence a little, & Birdalone waxed deadly pale; then she strove with herself and said: Thou sayest he was & he was: is he dead then? Said the townaman: Not to our knowledge. When he had brought the land into good peace, which is some three years and a half ago, he went his ways from the Red Hold all alone, and we saw him no more. But some folk deem that he hath entered into religion.

BIRDALONE'S heart sickened, & she thought to herself that now all was to begin again; yet she felt that the worst was over since he was not dead, and she was able to think what she should do. So she said: May happen he hath gone back to the Castle of the Quest? Nay, nay, said the townaman, that may not be; for waste is that house now; there is none dwelleth there, save, it may be, now and

again a wandering carle or carline abideth there a day or two.

Said Birdalone: How hath that befallen? or where is gone Sir Hugh, the Green Knight?

Said the townaman: We knew the Green Knight well; frank and free and joyous was he; all men loved him; and his lady and speech/friend, none ever saw a lovelier, and as kind as was he. But we might not keep them with us; they are gone into their own country. Sir Hugh left the Castle of the Quest some three months after the Black Squire came to us for captain, and he gave over the castle to Sir Geoffrey of Lea, an old & wise man of war. But not many months thereafter we heard that he also had departed, leaving it ungarnished of men; & we deem that the cause thereof is that something uncouth is seen & heard therein, which folk may not endure. Is it not so, my masters?

THEY all ye said that, and the talk went on to other matters. As for Birdalone, though her hope to come amongst friends was utterly overthrown, yet she saw not what to do save to go her ways to the Castle of the Quest, and see if perchance she might find any tidings there. And she said to herself, that if the worst came to the worst, she would

her self dwell there as an hermit of love or maybe, to face those uncouth things and see if any tidings might be compelled out of them

Chapter V. The first stone cometh that the first time, next hereth the first time from Leonard & the other three by the sea on the 15th of May

She arose betimes on the morrow, & was out of Greenford so soon as the gates were open, and at first made all speed that she might toward the Castle of the Quest, & nothing hindered her, for the land was verily in good peace, and she might have come there if she would before sunset for all whom she met furthered her. But as the day waned her courage waned with it, so that at last she stayed some six miles short of the house, and craved shelter at a yeoman's stead there, which was granted her with all kindness, and they made much of her, & she told them her vow of the ballet, and they deemed nought save that she was a young man.

She departed early in the morning with their good speed, and while the day was yet young came into the meadows before the castle & saw the towers thereof rising

up before her: then she checked her horse, and rode on no faster than a foot's pace, yet as slow as she might ride, needs must she get to the gate while the day was yet young.

She came thid alone by that bower wherein she had slept that first night she came to the castle, & she reined up to look on it, and as she sat there gazing, came a man out from it clad as a man of religion & her heart beat quick, and she was like to fall from her horse, for there came into her mind what the townsmen had said, that the Black Squire had gone into religion. But the hermit came towards her with a cup of water in his hand, and he cast his hood aback from him, and she saw at once that it was Leonard the priest, and though it was not the friend whom she sought, yet was she glad that it was a friend, but he came and stood by her, and said: 'Hail, wayfarer! wilt thou drink of our well and rest thee a while?' So she took the cup & drank of the water, looking kindly on him while he wondered at the beauty of her hand, & misdoubted him. Then she gave him back the cup & lighted down off her horse, & took the ballet from her head, and spake: 'I may not pass by a friend without a word, think if

THE FIRST
PART II
CHC

thou hast not seen me before?

WHEN he knew her, and might not refrain him, but cast his arms about her & kissed her, weeping; and she said: It is sweet to me to find a friend after what I have been told of yonder house. Yea, said he, & art thou going up thither? Certes, said she, and why not? Said he: They are gone, and all gone! How and whither? said she. But I must full certainly go thither at once; I will go afoot with thee; do thou tether my horse till thou comest back.

She said: But wilt not thou come back? I know not, she said; I know nought save that I would go thither; let it be enough that I suffer thee to go with me, and on the way thou shalt tell me what thou canst of the tale.

WHEN went Leonard and tethered the horse, and they went together afoot to the gate, & Birdalene told what she had heard of Arthur and Hugh; and Leonard said: This is true, and there is not much else to be said. When the Black Squire came back from the leaguer of the Red Hold, & had heard before of thy departure, he was heavy of mood and few spoken, & wandered about as one who might find no rest; yet was he not stern

with Atra, who for her part was no less heavy hearted: soothly a sad company we were, and it was somewhat better when my lord Arthur went his ways from us; and indeed eager he was to be gone; and it could be seen of him that he was fain of the toil and peril which they of Greenford offered him. Then in some four months spake my lord Hugh that he also would be gone to a place where were both a land & folk that would look friendly on him; so he went with my lady Viridis and my lady Aurea, and they had Atra also with them; and me also they would have had, but my heart failed me to leave the place where I had been so glad & so sorry with thee; death had been better; wherefore in yonder bower as in an hermitage I serve God and abide my time. But though I wot nought of where is gone the Black Squire, I know whereto those four are gone, & it is but a seven days' ride hence, & the land is goodly & peaceable, & if they be not dead, most like they be there yet. How sayest thou then, thou dearest and kindest, wilt thou thither to them? for if so, I may well lead thee thither.

BIRDALONE shook her head. Nay, she said, I deem that I am drawn clew whither, but soon I shall

tell thee. Le now the date. But ere we enter tell me of hartle of frey of Lea, & why it was that they might not abide the uncouth things. Or if there were any such. Spake Leonard. Things uncouth there were. & I was called upon to lay them. & I did as biddeth Holy Church in all wise but prevailed not against them, & still were they seen and heard, till folk might endure it no longer.

QUANT what use were these things, said Birdalone. As I see they yet seeme heard. Said Leonard: Strange it is, but last night I went into the great hall where they most ty betid, & laid me down there, as whiles I do, for I fear them not, and would see if they yet appear. but all night came nothing at all. As to the likeness of them. Then he stopped, but said presently: Hard it is to tell thee of them but needs must I. There be two of these things. and one is an image of a tall woman of middle age, red-haired, white-skinned, & meagre, and whiles she has a twiggen rod in her hand, and whiles a naked short sword, and whiles sought at all. But the voice of her is curving and blisful hemming and all-saying.

QUANT Birdalone. This is then a fetch of my witch-mistress of whom I told

thee erst and the image of her what is the other. Spake Leonard: I were faine not to tell thee. Yet needs must thou, said Birdalone. Dear lady, said Leonard, the other is an image of thee, and even most like unto thee; but whiles clad in a scanty grey coat and bare-foot, and whiles clad in a fair green gown goodly broidered, and broidered shoon; & whiles all mother-naked.

QUANT what voice cometh from mine image? said Birdalone, smiling, yet somewhat pale withal. Said Leonard: One while a voice of sweet singing, as of a bird in the brake, and that is when thou art clad, and again, when thou art naked, a voice of shrieking and wailing, as of one enduring torments.

SPAKE Birdalone: And when did these wonders begin? Said he: Not thicaster his husband and the other friends were gone hence.

QUANT Birdalone a little; then she said: I see herein the malice of my witch-mistress: she would not send hence for, as while Hugh was here, lest he should turn to seeking me with all his might. But when they departed, she would have the castle waste, and then she sent them, wotting that there

Part V. C. C.
Sence

by she would rid her of Sir Geoffrey of Lea; while, on the other hand, I was nought so much unto him that he would spend all his life seeking me. But now I deem I know so much of her that I may bid thee to look on her as dead if these fetches come not again within a little while. Then mayst thou send & do Sir Geoffrey to wit thereof, and belike he will come back again; & fain were I thereof, for it will be merrier if the Castle of the Quest be dwelt in once more.

Yet I verily, said Leonard, but far merrier yet wert thou to dwell there. Nay, she said, but now I see that it is not fated for me. Let us go in, for I would get to what I would do.

So therewith they passed under the shadow of the archway, and Birdalone stayed not but went straightway into the hall, and through it; and the priest, who lagged somewhat behind her speedy feet, cried out unto her: Whither wilt thou? what chamber wilt thou visit first? But she stayed not, and spake to him over her shoulder as she went follow me if thou wilt; I have but one place only to come to ere I leave the Castle of the Quest, save I must needs turn back on my footsteps.

WHEN Leonard came up with her, and she went her ways out of the hall, and out on to the water-swale of the castle, & so to the little haven of the water-gate. There Birdalone looked about her eagerly: then she turned to Leonard & pointed with her finger and said: Lo thou! there yet lieth my ferry of old time, the Sending Boat; now wot I wherefore I was drawn hither. And her eyes glittered and her body quivered as she spake.

Yet forsooth, said Leonard, there it lieth; who of all folk in the castle had durst to touch it? But what hath it to do with thee, O kindest lady?

FRIEND, she said, if this day weareth, & I am yet within these walls, then meseemeth there must I abide for evermore; & there perchance shall I meet that seeming of myself, maybe for this night, maybe for ever, till I die here in this castle void of all that I love, and I over young for it, friend. And I know now that there is hope within me; for I bethink me of a dear friend over yonder water of whom I have never told any, nor will tell thee now, save this, that she is the wisdom of my life. Wherefore now I will try this ferry & wot if the wight thereof will

yet obey the voice of the speaker of the spell, who has shed of her blood to pay therefor. Put not forth a hand therefore nor speak a word to let me, but take this farewell of me, with my pity & such love as I may give thee, and let me go, and think kindly of me.

WHEN she went up to him, and laid her hands upon his shoulders, & kissed him, and turned about without more ado and stepped into the boat; then she sat down and stripped her arm of its sleeve, and drew forth a knife and let blood of her arm, & then arose and smeared stem and stern therewith, and then sat down with her face to the stern and sang:

The red raven/wine now
Hast thou drunk, stern & bow;
Wake then and awake,
And the Northward way take:
The way of the Glendens
forth over the flood,
for the will of the Senders
is blent with the blood.

WHEN she abode a little, while Leonard stood staring on her speechless with grief & blinded with his bitter tears, till the boat began to move under her, & presently glided out of the little haven into the wide lake; then she turned her face back unto

him and waved her hand, & he knelt down and blessed her, weeping. And so she vanished away from before him.

Chapter LX. Birdalone findeth the Isle of Nothing greatly bettered, and is kindly entertained there. ¶



When it was scarce noon when she departed, and the dark night came upon her in the midst of the water, and she fell asleep in the boat ere the night had grown very old, and woke up in the morning not exceeding early, maybe about six o'clock then she looked ahead and thought presently to see the ill-favoured blotch of the Isle of Nothing on the bosom of the blue waters, whereas it was a fair and cloudless morning of latter May. Sure enough she saw land ahead and it lay low down on the water, but she deemed from the first that it was green of hue, and as she neared it she saw that it was verily as green as emerald. Thereat she was a little troubled, because she thought that mayhappen the Sending Boat had gone astray, & that if the wight thereof were not wending the old road, maybe he was not making for the old haven. for now indeed she told herself right

Part VI. The
Days of Ab-
sence

out that her will was to go back again to the House under the Wood, and see what might be- tide there, and if she and the wood-mother together might not overcome the witch.

BUT whatever might hap- pen nought could she do but sit in her place & wend as the Sinking Boat would, & in an hour's space she was right under the lee of the land, & she saw that it was shapen even as the Isle of Nothing had been aforetime. But this made her wonder, that now the grass grew thick down to the lip of the water, & all about from the water up were many little slim trees, and some of them with the May-tide blossom yet on them, as though it were a fair and great orchard that she was hearing; & moreover, beyond all that she saw the thatched roofs of houses rising up.

PRESENTLY then the Sinking Boat had brought her to the land, & she stepped ashore, but was wary, and gat her bow bent and set an arrow thereto ere she began to go up from the water. Yet she thought within herself, it will be nought ill if I be come amongst folk, so long as they be peaceful, or else how might I live the journey out to all the isles and so home to the House under the Wood?

SHE turned her face to where she had seen those roofs, which now she saw no longer because of the thick leaves of the little trees, and so went along a narrow path, which grew to be more & more closely beset with trees, & were now no longer apple and pear and quince and medlar, but a young-grown thicket of wood-land trees, as oak & hornbeam and beech and holly.

ATLAST as she went she heard voices before her, so she stole warily to the edge of the copse, finger on shaft; and presently could see clear of the saplings & out on to a wide space of greensward, beyond which was a homestead of many houses and bowers, like unto that of a good yeoman in peaceful lands, save that the main building was longer, though it were low. But amidst the said greensward was a goodly flock of sheep that had been but of late washed for the shearing, & along with the sheep four folk, two carles and two queans, all of them in their first youth, not one by seem- ing of over a score and two of summers. These folk were clad but simply, man and woman, in short coats of white woollen (but the women's coats a little longer than the men's), with- out shoon or hosen; they had

garlands of green leaves on their heads, and were wholly unarmed, save that one of the men bore an ashen wand in his hand. As for their bodies, they were goodly of fashion, tanned indeed by the sun's burning, but all sweet of flesh were they, shapely and trim, clean-made, and light and slim.

BIRDALONE'S heart yearned toward them. & she stepped straightway from out of the cover of the coppice, & the sun flamed from her sallet and glittered in the rings of her hauberk, so that the folk might not fail to see her; the sheep fled bundling from her past their keepers, who stood firm, but seemed somewhat scared, & moved not toward Birdalone. She gave them the side of the day & stood still herself, but the man with the ashen wand said: Hail, thou man; but we would have thee come no nearer a while, though thy voice be sweet: for we know what things they be which thou bearest, & that thou art a warrior. Wilt thou hurt us?

BIRDALONE laughed as sweetly as the blackbird sings, and she did off her sallet and shook the plenteous hair down over her, & then drew forth her sword and dagger & cast them to earth, and laid her bow and quiver of arrows upon

them, and said: Now wilt thou come to me, or ye shall come to me, whereas I am unweaponed, and no warrior, but a woman, and ye are four to one, and two of you carles; wherefore now ye may bind me or slay me if you will; but in any case I pray you first to give me a mouthful of meat.

WHEN she had done her speech she went up to the fairest of the women & kissed her; but the two carles made no more ado but came to Birdalone and kissed her one after other, and that as men who needed nought to compel them therein, and each thereafter took a hand of her and held it and caressed it. But the other woman had run into the house as soon as Birdalone spoke, & came back again with a green bowl full of milk and a little loaf, not white but brown; and there blundered about her legs as she came a little lad of some three winters old, naked and brown, who was shy of the gleaming new-comer, & hid him behind the woman one while, & the other while came forth to see the new thing. But the woman said: Dear woman, here is for thee some of the ewes' milk, and a bite of bread, and a little deal of cheese; the said milk is yet warm, so that it is not yet clotted; but if thou wilt come with us thou mayest speedily

drink cows milk & we be now
at point to go milk them.

BIRDALONE thanked
her with a heart full of
content, and was not ill-
pleased to get her hands free
from the two carles; so she sat
down & ate her breakfast while
they talked with her, and told
her of diverse work of theirs;
as to how their trees were wax-
ing, and new tillage they had
done the past spring, & how it
befell to the kine & the goats; of
their children also they spake,
& how there were already four
thereof, and one of the wom-
en, the meat-bringer already
quicken'd with child once more.
So that ere we die, quoth the
carle who was speaking, we looke
to see many grandchildren, &
shall have some stout carles &
queens here. And by that time
will some of the trees be well
grown, so that we may fell tim-
ber and make us some keel that
will wend the lake, & help us in
fishing; or we may go to other
lands; or whiles folk may come
to us, even as thou hast, thou
dear-handed, sweet-voiced wo-
man. But wilt thou abide here


WHEN she said the other, but
that is looking forward
a long while, that build-
ing of ships. What is nearer &
well to think of is, that these
apple and pear trees be so well

fruited, small as they be, that
this harvest we shall be able to
make us cider and perry; yea,
and no little deal thereof. But
art thou minded to abide with
us ever? That were dear to us;
and belike thou wouldest bear
us children, thou also.

WHEN SPAKE the meat-
fetching woman, & laugh-
ed withal: Nay, thou al-
so lookest aloof a pretty deal;
whereas what is now to do is to
go milk the kine, & to take this
guest with us, so that she may
drink somewhat better than
ewes' milk though the cider be
not ready to hand. But tell me,
our dear guest, art thou verily
going to abide with us a long
while? That were sweet to us, &
we will do all we may to plea-
sure thee.

NAY, said Birdalone, it will
be no better be but that I
depart on the morrow;
and all thanks do I give you for
your kindness.

THE woman kissed her,
and she arose, and all
they went together to
the milking of the kine some
half mile inland; and they pas-
sed through much of orchard,
& some deal of tillage, where-
in the wheat was already grow-
ing high; and so came they to
a wide meadow through which
ran a little stream, and therein
was a goodly herd of kine. So



they fell to the milking, & made Birdalone drink of the sweet cowes milk, & then went and lay down under the shade of the little young trees, & talked & were merry together. But the men were both of them somewhat willing at first to kiss Birdalone and toy with her, but when she let them know that she desired it not they refrained them without grudging.

IN this while of their talk they asked Birdalone nought of whence and whither, & she would not ask them, lest it might stir their asking, & then she would have to tell them some deal of her story: & telling it was now become unto her somewhat weary work.

IN a while they arose all, and the men and one woman went their ways to deal with the acreland, but the meat-fletcher went back with Birdalone into the house; & she showed her all that was therein, which was for the more part, forsooth, the four babes afore said. The others came back in the eventide bearing with them fison of blue harebells, and telling joyously how they had found them anigh the coppice edge in such a place: & thereafter they were merry, & sang and talked the evening away, & showed Birdalone at last to a

fair little chamber wherein was a bed of dry grass, where she lay down & slept in all content.

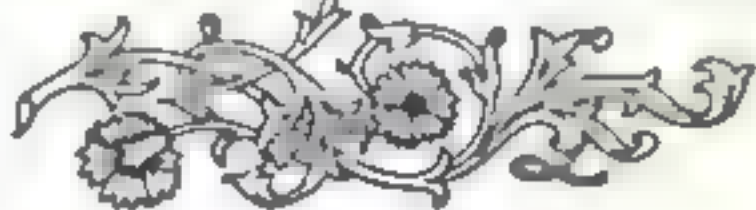
Chapter X of Birdalones flitting from the Isle of Nothing.



IN THE morrow Birdalone arose betimes, & would not tarry despite all the kindness of that folk and the change which had come over the Isle of Nothing; so the friends saw her down to the boat all together, & bore down with them a deal of bread and cheese and late apples of the last year, for her provision on the road, & a pail of milk withal; and men and women they kissed her at departure, and the meat-fletcher said: If by any means thou mayst find a keel which will carry thee hither, at some time, I would thou wouldst come, for even if thou be old, and we passed away, yet here shall be our children or our grandchildren to welcome thee; and we will tell them the tale of thee that they remember it and long for thee.

WHEN Birdalone kissed her again & made much of her, and so stepped into the boat, and fell to her sacrifice to the wight thereof; and those others stared at her & wondered, & spake nought

Part VI The Days of Absence



unto her till she was gone gliding over the face of the waters; but as they walked back to the house, they spake amongst themselves that this must be some goddess (for of Holy Church they knew nought) who had come to visit them in her loveliness; and in after times, when this folk waxed a many, and tilled all the isle and made ships & spread to other lands and became great, they yet had a memory of Birdalone as their own very lady & goddess, who had come from the fertile and wise lands to bless them, when first they began to engender on that isle, and had broken bread with them, & slept under their roof, & then departed in a wonderful fashion, as might be looked for of a goddess.

As for Birdalone, she came not back ever, nor saw that folk again, and now she sped over the water toward the Isle of Kings.

Chapter XI. Concerning the Isle of Kings Birdalone findeth there a score & two of fair Damuels who would fain have

BIRDALONE came ashore at the said isle at the day-dawn, and saw but little change in the isle when it grew light, and still

the castle stood looking down awfully on to the meadows. But when she had set foot on the land, she handled her bow lest the worst might befall, and looked about her, deeming that this time she would not go her ways to the dread show that was arrayed in the castle, if forsooth those dead folk yet abode there.

So now as she looked across the meadow, she saw one with light and fluttering raiment come forth from the trees, & look toward her whereas she stood flashing & gleaming in the sun like an image of the God of Love turned warrior. Now Birdalone deemed for sure that this was a woman; she saw her come a little nigher to her, and then stand looking at her under the sharp of her hand; then she turned about and ran back to the brake whence she came; & presently Birdalone heard the sound of voices coming thence, and in a little while thereafter came forth from the said brake a rout of women (one score and two as they were told thereafter) & walked over the meadow straight unto her. She stood where she was, so as to be nigh unto her ferry in case they willed her unpeace; for though they were weaponless by seeming, they were a many.



WHEN they were come
near they stood about
her in a half ring, whis-
pering & laughing each to each.
Birdalone saw that they were
all young, & that none of them
might be called ungoodly, and
some were full fair. They were
bright and fine of array. Most
bore gold and gems on fingers
& neck & arms; they were clad
in light, or it may be said wan-
ton raiment of diverse colours,
which had only this of their fa-
shion in common, that they
none of them hid overmuch of
their bare bodies; for either the
silk slipped from the shoulder
of her, or danced away from
her flank; and she whose feet
were shod, spared not to show
knee and some deal of thigh;
and she whose gown reached
unheard from neck to heel,
wore it of a web so thin and fine
that it hid but little betwixt
heel and neck.

BIRDALONE stood gaz-
ing on them and wonder-
ing, and she had a mind
to think that they were some
show sent by her old mistress
the witch for her undoing, and
she loosened her sword in its
sheath and nocked an arrow.

WHEN then ran forward
two of the damsels &
knelt before her, & each
took an hand of her, and fell to
kissing it, and she felt their

hands that they were firm and
their lips that they were soft
and warm, & they were doubt-
less alive and real. Then spake
one of them and said: Hail our
lord! Now can words say how
we rejoice in thy coming this
happy morn. Now do all we
give ourselves to thee as thy
slaves to do as thou wilt with.
Yet we pray thee be merciful
to us and our longings.

THE REMAIN ALL the
sort of them knelt down
on the grass before Bird-
alone and joined their hands as
praying to her. And Birdalone
was full ill at ease, and wotted
not where she was. But she
said: Hail! and good days and
fulfilment of wishes unto you,
fair damsels! But tell me, is
this the Isle of Kings, as I
deemed; for strange it is for
me to see ye womenfolk here?

SHE who had spok-
en afore: Yea verily this
is the Isle of Kings; but
long ago are the kings dead, &
yet they sit dead in the great
hall of the castle yonder, as
thou mayst see if thou, who
art a man and a valiant warrior,
durst follow up yon mountain
path thereto; but we, weak wo-
men and little hearted, durst
not go anigh it; and we trem-
ble when whiles a nights com-
eth down thence the sound of
clashing swords & clattering

shields, and the cries of men in battle. But, praise be to the God of Love, nought cometh down from thence unto us. Therefore do we live peaceful lives & pleasant here, lacking nought but thee, lord; and lo now thou hast come unto us, and we are happy in our inmost hearts.

NOW was Birdalone perplexed & knew not what to do; but at last she said, Gentle maidens, I pray you pardon me, but I must depart straightway; for I have an errand, and life or death lieth on it. In all else than my abiding here may ye have your will.

THEREWITH did she move a little way toward her ferry; but forthwith all they brake out weeping & walling and lamenting, and some of them came up to Birdalone and cast themselves down before her, and clasped her knees, and took hold of her skirts, and besought her piteously to abide with them. But she put them aside as well as she might, & stepped aboard the Sending Boat, and stood amidst it waiting on their departure; but they went not, & stood along on the lip of the land crying out & beseeching with much clamour.

THEN Birdalone waxed somewhat wrath at their noise and tumult, & she

drew forth her knife and bared her arm and let blood from it. But when they saw the whiteness & roundness of it, & how fine and sleek it was, straightway they changed their tune, and cried out: A woman, a woman, a fool of a woman! & they laughed in scorn and mockery. And the speaker of them said, Now there is but one thing for thee to do, and that is to come forth from thy boat and strip off thy stolen raiment, and we shall make thee as fine as ourselves, & thou shalt come with us, and with us abide the coming of our lord. Nay, thou art so fair and lovely, that thou shalt be the Lady and Queen of us, and we will do after thy commands, and thou mayst chastise us if we fail therein. But now if thou wilt not come forth of the boat un-compelled, we shall pluck thee forth of it.

AND therewith she set her foot on the gunwale of the boat, & two or three others did the like. But now had Birdalone her sword naked in her hand, and she waxed as red as blood, & cried out: forbear I bid you! Yea verily I am a woman; but I will not take this offer either, whereas I have an errand, as I told you. And so stern it is, that if ye now let my departure I will not spare to smite with this sword who-

so first cometh aboard my ferry
and though I be not a man,
yet shall ye find that in this
matter I shall be little worse,
whereas I am armed and ye be
naked.

Neither drew back &
stood quibing & jerring
at her but she heeded
it no whit but reddened stem
& stem of the bending boat,
and sang her spell, and forth
glided the ferry while the dam-
sels stood and stared aston-
ished. As for Birdalene, as she
sped on her way she might not
refrain her laughter. Thus she
wended the wet highway.

Chapter XII. Birdalene com-
eth ashore—the sun sets, and
the moon sets, and Birdalene
returneth home.

It was not yet day
break when Bird-
alone came ashore
again & the moon
was down, and it
was dark, where-
fore she durst not go up on
the land but lay down in the
ferry & fell asleep there. When
she woke again it was broad
daylight the sun was up, and a
little ripple was running over
the face of the water. She step-
ped ashore straightway, and
looked up the land and to the
right hand and the left, & saw
at once that it was indeed the
Isle of Queens, and the house

stood firm and lovely as of old
time then she longed some-
what to tread the green mea-
dow a little, for yet young was
the day, and she saw nought
stirring save the thrush & a
few small beasts. However, she
said to herself that she would
go nowhere nigh to the good-
ly house wherein abode those
images of death. Yet her body
longed so sore for the spring-
tide freshness of the grass, &
was so bewoed of the flowery
scent thereof, that though she
durst not go unarmed, she did
off her foot-gear & went steal-
ing softly barefoot and with
naked legs over the embroide-
red greenward, saying aloud
to herself. If run for the ferry
I needs must, lighter shall I
run so dight.

NONE THE LESS, she
had gone but a little
way ere a terror took
hold of her though she saw no
child of Adam anigh, and she
turned and ran back swiftly to
her old place and sat down un-
der a twisted oak tree hard by
the bending boat and abode
there panting and quaking &
scarce daring to look up from
the grass for a while. Then her
heart came back to her and she
laughed, and said to herself
I am a fool, for I need fear
nought on this Isle of Queens
save women like myself.

THE VI. The
Isle of Queens

YET she sat there a lit-
tle while longer without
stirring; then she stood
up and looked keenly around,
& as aforesaid, exceeding far-
sighted she was; but still she
saw neither man nor maid nor
suckling child.

WHEN HER eyes sought
the lips of the Lake, and
rested on a little bright
some stone's throw ahead of
the Sinking Boat, where, a lit-
tle back from the water, slim
willows made a veil betwixt the
water of the meadow; and she
looked, and saw how pleasant a
place it were for a one to stand
and look on the ripple just left,
while the water dripped from
the clear body on to the grass.
And her bare feet felt to tell-
ing her clad sides of the sweet
coolness of the water, & wait-
ed for no naysay, but lightly
bore her toward the willowy
bight. And when she was there,
she did off her sallet & ungirt
her, and laid her sword on the
grass, and did off her surcoat
and hauberk, & so was a woman
again in one white coat above
her smock. Then she looked
heedfully betwixt the willow-
boughs, and saw no more than
before, nought but a little
whitethorn brake, now white
indeed with blossom, some fif-
ty yards landward from where
she stood. So she laughed, &

did off her other raiment & slid
swiftly into the water, that em-
braced her body in all its fresh
kindness; & as for Birdalone,
she rewarded it well for its past
toil by sporting & swimming
to her full.

WHEN SHE came forth
from the water, and
clad herself in no great
haste, and did on her hauberk
and sallet and sword, and so
went back to her place, and sat
down and began to do on her
foot-gear.

WHAT as she looked up from
her work a moment, lo!
a tall man coming toward
her, and just about the willows
whereby she had bathed. Her
heart beat quick and her face
changed, yet she hastened, &
was shod & stood up in knight-
ly array by then he stayed his
steps some five paces from her,
& gave her the acle of the day
in courteous wise, & she strove
to think that he had not seen
her, or at least noted her o-
therwise dight; yet her heart
misgave her.

WAS a grizzled-haired
man of over fifty sum-
mers by seeming, but
goodly enough and well knit;
he was clad in a green coat more
than a little worn, but made
after the fashion of knight-
hood; he had nought on his
head but an oak-chaplet, and

no weapons but a short sword by his side and a stout staff in his hand.

HE gave back his greeting in a quavering voice; and he said: Welcome again, young man. Art thou come to dwell with us? Truly thou art trim now, but ere some few months thine attire will be not so much fairer than ours, and thine hauberk will be rusted, for here be no joyous tiltings nor deeds of arms, & no kind ladies to give the award of honour, so that if we fight among ourselves it will be because we have fallen out, and spitefully. Yet (& he laughed, mockingly, as she thought) thou mayst bring us luck, and draw some fair damels unto us, for that is what we await in this isle, which is barren of their fair bodies, despite of its deceitful name.

HEREAT Birdalone reddened, deeming that he divined her womanhood, but she enforced her to speak hardily, and as manly as she might, and said: Yea, fair sir, & if I be the God of Love, as thou deemest, & not merely a poor squire (Louis Delahaye, at thy service), how many damels shall I send thee if there must needs be one to each man of you? Quoth he: Thou must make up the tale to a score or

more, or some of us must lack. Sooth to say, at this time thou needest not haste overmuch for all the tale, whereas there is but one other of the company near at hand, a mere foolish young man; the others are gone to the leeward side of the isle, to fetch us venison & fish, both of which are more plenty there than here; wherefore are we two somewhat lonesome in this stead, all the more as we be overnigh to the sorcery in the great house, which we durst not enter; for though nought cometh out thence down unto us, yet hear we a night/tides, first songs, and then cries and shrieking come out therefrom.

WHEN HE STAYED his speech, and drew a little nigher to Birdalone, and then grinned, & said: forsooth we can spare him, we twain. And he looked on her hard, and the colour came into her cheeks, and she laughed uneasily, as a dainty lady when she heareth some unmeet tale.

EXIT again the old carle drew nigher to her, and said: Thou seemest to have a good bow and store of arrows; if thou wouldst lend them to me for a little, & come with me into the wood hard by, I might shoot thee some venison with little toil to thee, whereas, forsooth, thou loost

Part VI The
Tale of the
Squire

est scarce like one who is meet
for ever much toil. Again she
reddened, and spake nought
this time; & he said. Deem not
there be no deer this end of the
isle because I said that the oth-
ers were gone to fetch home ve-
nison; only the deer be tamer
there and more, and we have
but evil shooting gear, where-
as thou art well found therein.
Wilt thou not come? we shall
have merry feast after the hunt.

NOW HAD Birdalone
come to her wits again,
and she answered like
a merry youth, with a flavour of
mockery in her speech: fair sir,
thou shalt not deem that I need
much help in slaying the dun
deer; for I do thee to wit that
I shoot not ill in the bow; nei-
ther am I heavy-footed. But I
will not hunt in your park to-
day, for I have an errand which
callith me away, so that I shall
depart hence presently. Be-
sides, wise elder, there is thine
errand to see to; and if I be the
God of Love, as thou sayest,
I must not keep thee & thy val-
iant fellows languishing mate-
less; so with thy leave I will
now depart, that I may send
you a score of fair damsels for
your company.

NOW she turned about
& made a step toward
her boat; but the carle
drew nearer, laughing, and he

said: Truly sayest thou that
thou art not heavy-footed, for
never saw I feet lighter or fair-
er than glided over the mea-
dow e'en now; nor a fairer body
than came lily rosy-tinted pearl
fresh out of the water while I lay
hidden in yonder thorn/brake
that while. Wherefore trouble
not thyself to bring any more
damsels than thyself, fairest
Goddess of Love, for thou art
enough for me.

NOW THEREWITH he
ran forward, & stretch-
ed out a hand to her; but
in that nick of time had she her
sword naked in her hand, & the
carle drew back before the glit-
ter thereof, & cried out. No, ho!
is it to be battle, my mistress?
Deemest thou that thou wilt
slay me as lightly as the dun
deer, & thou with thy bow un-
strung at thy back? Now shall
I show thee a trick of fence; but
fear not that I shall hurt thee
to spoil thee.

HE advanced on her with
his staff aloft, and her
heart failed her, and she
quaked, & lightly he beat down
her guard & did the sword out
of her hand, and again he turn-
ed on her to take her, but she
sprang aside & ran from him,
but ran landward perforce, as
he was betwixt her & the boat,
and he followed heavily, & had
nought to do in the race.

WHEN she had not gone a twoscore yards ere she heard a great shout, and another man came running over the meadow; a slim young man was this, and worse of attire than the old carle, for so tattered was his raiment that he was half naked; but he was goodly of fashion, fresh coloured and black haired. Birdalone stayed her feet when she saw him, for though she doubted not to outrun him, yet whether should she run, since her ferry was behind her?

The young man came up to her, and the old carle met him all panting, and the young man said: Now now, Antony! what battle is this? & wherefore art thou chasing this fair knight? And thou, fair sir, why fleest thou this grey dastard?

Said Antony: Thou art but a young fool, Otter, this is no man, but a woman, and I have taken her, and she is mine.

When LL said Otter, lady she is as much mine as thine nay, more, if she will give herself unto me. But if she will not, she shall go whither she will in thy despite. Or art thou a woman?

AR, yea, said Birdalone, & I pray thee, by thy mother's head, suffer me to

depart; for heavy and full of need is the errand that I am about.

O thou shalt then, said Otter; lead back to thy place, & I will walk with thee. So did they; and Birdalone went beside the young man quaking; but he put out no hand unto her; & sooth to say she deemed that she had seldom seen so fair a young man, but it were Arthur or Hugh.

Now he as Antony was girt with a short sword, but he let it be in its sheath; and as they went, Antony drew his blade again and hove it up to smite Otter, but as it befell Birdalone saw him, and turned round sharp upon him and gat hold of his wrist, and therewith Otter turned also, and caught the old carle by the nape as he turned away, & put a foot before his & shoved mightily, so that he went noseling to the earth.

Then turned Otter about again, laughing, & he said to Birdalone: By Saint Giles! thou art well nigh too valiant for a woman, & I would that we two might be together; and then between us we might achieve the adventure of the dead ladies up yonder. She hung her head, and said: fair sir, it may not anywise be; yet I thank thee, I thank thee.

SO came they to the wa-
 ter-side and the Send-
 ing Boat, & Birdalone
 stayed her feet there, and the
 young man said: What is this
 keel, that seemeth unto me as
 if it were a ferry for malefac-
 tors wending to a death of tor-
 ment, so grey and bleared and
 water-logged & sun-bleached
 as it is, and smeared over with
 stains of I know not what?

SHELD Birdalone: Such as it
 is, it is my ferry over the
 water to where I would
 be. **S**trange! said Otter; to
 my mind it is like to our for-
 tunes on this isle, we who were
 once knights & merry squires
 and are now as gangrel men, &
 of ill conditions, thinking of
 nought save our first desires,
 even those which we share with
 the wolf and the kite.

SHE said: But art thou
 of evil conditions, thou
 who hast just delivered
 me from trouble? **H**e smiled
 grimly: Damsel, said he, I have
 not delivered thee yet from me,
 though I have from him. But
 tell me, art thou a sorceress?
Not a black one, said Bird-
 alone, but I will tell thee at once
 that I have been bred by a witch
 most mighty, and some deal
 of lore have I learned. **A**nd
 therewith she told him of the
 Sending Boat, & how she would
 have to speed it on the way.

HE looked on her a little &
 then turned away, & saw
 her sword lying on the
 grass, so he went to it & pick-
 ed it up and brought it to her,
 and said: Thou mayst yet need
 this keen friend. **S**o she took
 it and thrust it back into the
 scabbard, quaking somewhat
 because of him; so feeble and
 frail as she felt before him. **T**hen
 he said: If thou deemest
 thou hast somewhat to reward
 me for, I have a boon to ask of
 thee, & granting that, we shall
 be quits again. **Y**ea, she said
 faintly, and what is the boon?
He said: Art thou pressed
 to depart now, this minute?
Nay, said Birdalone, not for an
 hour if there be no peril here
 from other men, and... and...
And if I be true to thee and
 will let thee go? said he, laugh-
 ing; hah! is that not thy word?
 fear not, I swear by thine eyes
 that thou shalt depart whenso
 thou wilt. Now then, the boon I
 crave is, that thou wilt sit down
 here beside me and tell me the
 tale of thy life that has been.
Said she: It wearies me to
 think thereof; yet hast thou a
 right to crave somewhat of me,
 and this is not hard to grant.

AND she sat down by him;
 but he said: Do this al-
 so for me, take off thine
 headpiece, since now that we
 know thee for a woman it ser-

with thee nought. So did she,
& began her tale straightway,
and told him all thereof, save
as to the wood-wife, and he sat
hearkning & watching her face;
and when she had made an end,
he said: Now shall I ask none
other boon of thee, though I
long sore for it; but best it is
that we sunder straightway,
else maybe I might yet be for
hindring thee.

WHEN HE WILTH he stood
up, & Birdalone also, and
he looked on her eagerly,
and said: I am now to bid thee
farewell, & it is most like that
I shall never see thee again,
wherefore I will ask thee yet to
let one thing come from thy
mouth; for I deem thee the
dearest of all women I have
ever seen. What shall I say?
said Birdalone, smiling on him
kindly; must thou needs put
the word in my mouth? Thou
hast been friendly with me
here when need was to me of
friendliness; wherefore I say,
I would I might see thee again,
and thou better beatead than
now thou art.

THE young man's face
brightened, & he said:
Spake I not that thou
wert the dearest of all? This
was even the word I would have
put in thy mouth. But now see
thou, one goeth on from one
thing to another, and I must

now ask thee, is there aught
which thou hast a mind to give
me ere I depart, some keepsake
which I durst not ask for?

SHE flushed red and said
I will with a good heart
give thee my bow and ar-
rows for a keepsake; whereas
the old carle told me that ye be
ill furnished of shooting-gear.

NOT SHE would have
taken her bow from
her back but he laugh-
ed aloud, and said: Nay, nay, I
will not have that, for there be
those who gird them to a sword
& know not how to use it, but
few will cumber their shoul-
ders with bow and quiver who
cannot shoot therewith; I deem
it like that thou art a fell bow-
man. Keep thy bow therefore
and if thou wilt go without any
other gift, even so be it.

AND HE MADE as if he
would turn away; but she
put forth both her hands
and took him in them, and lifted
up her face & kissed him kind-
ly, and then turned away to her
ferry; while Otter stood still &
said in a merry voice: Now is it
better than well, for thou art in
all ways what I would have thee,
& there is nought like unto thee.

And therewith he turned a-
way & departed ere Birdalone
had stepped into the Sending
Boat, and she blushing like a
rose the while. Then she durt

Part VI The
Days of
Sence

due sacrifice to the wight of the
witch: ferry & sped on her way
without any hindrance.

Chapter XIII *Concerning the
Isle of the Young and the Old,
but the name of the island
was not known.*

IN MIND all this
had worn some
hours, but yet it
was barely noon,
wherefore it was
yet dark by then
Birdalone made the Isle of the
Young & the Old; so she step-
ped out of the boat, & lay down
on the grass & abode the dawn
sleeping. And she awoke with
the clatter of shrill voices, and
she rose up and looked, and lo
a multitude of children all a-
bout her both men and women
children, & as it seemed, from
five years old upward to fifteen.
They cried and crowed merrily
when they saw her stand up, &
pressed on her to see her the
nearer & to touch her hands or
her raiment. They were but lit-
tle clad, & the younger ones not
at all, but were goodly young-
lings and merry. So great was
the noise they raised, that loud
were the thunder which had not
been hushed thereby: & Bird-
alone stood looking on them,
smiling, & knew not what to do.
Anon she turned to a tall thin
lad of some fifteen winters, &
said unto him: Wilt thou now

take me unto the house, & the
place where dwelleth the old
man? Quoth he: I neither
know of an old man, nor right-
ly what it means, the word. Am
not I old enough for thee? I am
the oldest of these here. But
belike thou art hungry: where-
fore if thou come to the place
where we sleep at nights, and
where we shelter us from the
storm & the rain when need is, I
will give thee to eat: for we have
both bread and milk & cheese,
and raisins of the sun.

SO he took her hand and
led her along, and asked
her by the way concern-
ing her armour and weapons,
& of the fashion of battle, and
she told him thereof what she
would.

WHEN they came to the
place where erst had
been the cot under the
ruin of the great ancient house:
but now was gone all that ruin
& the great grey walls, though
the cot was left: & all about it
were low bowers built of small
wood and thatched undeftly.
But the lad smiled when he saw
it, as if the sight thereof made
him happy: & he said: All these
have we made since I have dwelt
here, and no other home have I
known.

AND he led her into the
cot, & set her down to eat
and to drink, & through

the open door she could see the children swarming, & they that were might thrusting each other this way and that to catch a sight of her.

QUEN she said: fair child, how gattest thou this victual if there be no older folk to help you? Said he: We dig the ground and sow it, and the wheat comes up, & we reap it in harvest, & make bread of it; and we have goats and kine, and we milk them, and turn the milk with a little blue flower, which is fair to see. And there are in this isle little hills where the grapes grow plenty; and some we eat and some we dry for store. Lo thou, such be our ways for victual. But tell me, said he, thou sayest old, and I know not the word; art thou old? She laughed: Not very, said she, yet older than thou.

SAID the lad: Thou art fair & dear to look on, and thy voice is sweet; wilt thou not abide with us, & teach us what it is to be old? Nay said she, I may not, for I have an errand which driveth me on: wherefore I must be gone within this hour.

FORSOOTH, she was growing eager now to be done with her journey and come to the House under the Wood, whatever should befall her there. Moreover she

deemed it would not be restful to her to abide among all these restless children, with their ceaseless crying & yelping if rest she might, she would rest, she deemed, in the Isle of Increase Unsought, if there were no ill things abiding there.

WHEN SHE awoke, when she had but hearkening the sound of the lad's prattle for a while, for as to the sense thereof she might not heed it overmuch. The youngling would not leave her, but led her holding her hand down to her ferry again. She kissed him in thanks for his meat, & he reddened thereat but said nought. All the whole rout of little ones had followed her down to the water, and now they stood, as thick as bees on a honeycomb, on the bank, to watch her departure. But if they were keen to see her doings before, how much keener were they when it came to the baring of her arm and the smearing of the Sending Boat. To be short, so keen were they, and pushed & shoved each other so sturdily, that more than one or two fell in to the water, and Birdalone was frightened lest they should drown; but they swam like ducks, and got on to the land when they would, which was not so very soon, for some of

Part VI The
Days of Ib
Galle

them hung unto the gunwale of the boat, & hove their faces up to look over into it, and left not hold till the ferry was fairly under weigh and beginning to quicken its speed.

SO LEFT Birdalone the isle, & nought befell her on the way to the Isle of Increase Unsought.

*THE SHIP THAT
BOAT disappeareth from the
Isle of Increase Unsought, &
Birdalone seeketh to escape
thence by swimming.*

IT was as before that Birdalone came to the shore of the isle while it was yet night: but the wizard keel was so loathsome to her, that she stepped out of it and laid her down on the land for what was left of the night: yet hard she found her bed, and neither grassy nor flowery.

FOR all that, she slept, for she was weary, and it was broad day & not very early when she awoke. She stood up trembling, for she foreboded evil, so near as she was to the dwelling of her old mistress, and she looked up to where in time past was the fair and wicked house, & saw that all was changed indeed, for no longer was the isle gaudy with meadow and orchard and gar-

den, but was waste & bare, and nought grew on it save thin & wiry grass, already seeding even ere June was born, & here and there hard and ugly herbs, with scarce aught that might be called a flower amongst them. Trees there were yet, but the most of them stark dead, and the best dying fast. No beasts she saw, nor fowl; nothing but lizards and beetles, & now and again a dry grey adder coiled up about a sun-burned stone. But of great carrion flies, green and blue, were there a many, and whiles they buzzed about her head till she sickened with loathing of them. All this she found on her way as she went up toward the place where erst was the great perron. But when she came to the top there was no sign either of the stairs or the house, or aught that ever was builded; there was nought but the bare bent top, ungrassed, parched by wind, scorched by sun, washed by rain.

SHE wandered about the isle, to places where she had not been herself, but which she deemed she might have known by the telling of the Green Knight's tale, had there been no change since those days; but now was all changed, & the whole isle was a mere waste, and withal poisonous of aspect to her mind.

as if many corpses lay underneath the wretched stones of it. Nevertheless, though it seemed so evil unto Hirdalone, she lingered on it, wandering about till she was tormented, for she had no will to depart at such time as she would be like to come to her old abiding-place by night and cloud, wherefore she dallied with the time, and came not back to the haven of her ferry till it was nigh sunset, & the westering sun was in her eyes when she came there; & she said to herself that this was the cause why she might not see the Sending Boat.

She cleared her eyes & looked on the thin grass awhile, and then down over the edge of the land, and still she saw not her boat. She turned pale, and a pang of anguish went to her heart; but she walked a little east, deeming that perchance she had erred as to the place of the haven on that dull and empty shore; but yet there was no boat. Then she turned back wild with terror, and sought where erst she had missed it, and found neither boat nor the world's end. And she deemed that there might be some devilish malice of the wight of the Sending Boat, to torment her with fear, & she walked along the land's edge up and down, and down

and up, further each time, and still there was no boat.

WHEN she stood still and strove to think, & might not, nor might she do aught, but spread abroad her hands & moaned in her agony; for now indeed she felt herself in the trap, and she said that all her past life of hope & desire and love and honour was all for nought, & that she was but born to die miserably in that foul ruin of an isle envenomed with the memories of bygone cruelty and shame.

BUT in a little while she came somewhat to herself, and she said: At least this hideous land shall not mock my dying anguish; I will give myself to the water and let it do with me as it will.

THEN WITH she cast off her helm & hauberk first, and her weapons, & her pouch with the treasure that could buy nought for her now, and thereafter all her raiment, till she was as naked as when she first came aland there that other time. Again she moaned, and put up her hand to her bosom and felt a little gold box lying there betwixt the fragrant hills of her breasts, which hung to a thin golden thread about her neck; and a thought came into her mind, and she stooped adown and

Part III The
1. 1. 1. 1.
Scene

drew from her pouch flint and fire-steel, and then opened the said golden box & drew thence the tress which Nabundia the wood-wife had given to her those years ago, & all trembling she drew two hairs from it, as erst she did on the Isle of Nothing, and struck fire and kindled tinder & burnt the said hairs, and then hung the golden box with the tress therein about her neck again; and she said: O wood-mother, if only thou couldst know of me and see me, thou wouldst help me!

HEREAFTER SHE sought along the bank for bread which she had taken from her store that morning, and she found it, & compelled herself to eat of it for the strengthening of her body, and then she stood and abode tidings, and by then the sun had just sunk below the rim of the lake, and the stars began to twinkle, for the night was cloudless, and exceeding fair, and very warm.

A visible token came to her, but her heart grew stronger, & she seemed to see herself yet alive and in hope on the other side of the water; and she said: Who wotteth what Weird may do, or where the waters may bear me? and there is no swimmer stronger than I.

SO then without more ado Birdalone slipped into the water, which lay before her as calm and plain as a great sheet of glass, and fell to rowing with her arms & her legs as though she were but swimming from Green Eyot to the mainland, as so oft she had done in the other days.

Chapter XV. Birdalone lacketh little of Drown-ness, but hath access to the Land.

SHE swam Birdalone, not as one who had a mind to drown her for the forgetting of troubles, but both strongly and wisely; and she turned over on to her back, and looked on the stars above her, & steered herself by them thitherward where as she deemed was the land under the wood. When she had been gone from the evil isle for an hour or so, there rose a fair little wind behind her, which helped her forward, but scarce raised the water more than a little ripple.

SHE swam on, & it was some three hours ere she began to weary, & then she floated on her back and let the wind & water have its way with her; and now the night was as dark as it would be ere dawn.

THUS it went for another hour, that whiles she swam on and whiles she floated; and now her heart began to fail her, and the great water was no longer unto her a wet highway, but a terrible gulf over which she hung fainting.

NEVERTHELESS she did not give up doing what she might: she floated supine a long while, & then, when she had gathered a little strength, turned over again & struck out, still steering her by the stars. But she had scarce made three strokes ere her arms met something hard and rough; & at first in her forlornness she deemed she had happened on some dread water monster, and for terror of it she sank down into the deep, but came up presently blinded and breathless, and spread abroad her arms, and again they came on the thing aforesaid, and this time found that it was nought alive, but the bole of a tree sitting high out of the water. So she clomb upon it with what might she had left, and sat her down, and saw in the dim light that it was big, and that there was a fork betwixt two limbs reaching up into the air, and she thrust herself in between these two limbs & embraced one of them, so that she might scarce tum-

ble off, & a great content and happiness came over her that she had thus escaped from the death of the deep; but there-withal weariness overcame her, & she slept, whether she would or not; and the bole went on over the waters no slower than might have been looked for, whether it were by the pushing on of the south wind, or by the hand of Weird that would not have her die.

LONG she slumbered, for when she awoke it was broad day and the sun was shining high in the heavens, & she cleared her eyes and looked around, & saw before her the land, but yet blue in the offing. And the tree/bole was yet speeding on towards the shore, as if it were being drawn there by some bidding of might.

NOW indeed grew Bird-alone happy, and she thought if any had helped her it must have been the wood/mother once again; and she said to herself that she should soon meet with that helper; nor heeded she that she was naked and unfurnished of any goods, whereas she deemed indeed that it was but to ask and have of her friend.

FOR a while indeed she knew not whither she was wending, and if her

Part VI The
Forest of
Birch

face were verily turned toward the land under the wood; but as the morning wore the blue distance began to grow green, and then she saw that a great wood was indeed before her, and thereafter, as it cleared yet more, she knew the land she was nearing for the meadows of the House under the Wood, and it was not long thence ere she saw clear and close Green Eyot and Rocky Eyot, though the house was yet hidden from her by the green shores of the first of those two isles.

SHORTLY to tell it, her tree/bole floated with her past the outer nose of Green Eyot, & came ashore in that same sandy bight where erst she was wonted to make her body ready for the water. She stepped ashore all glad to feel the firm warm sand underneath her foot/soles, & as one drunk with joy she was when the tall flowery grass of the latter May was caressing her legs as they shook the seed/dust off the bents, and smote the fragrance out of the blossoms; and she might scarce at first lift her eyes from their familiar loveliness. Glad she was indeed, but exceeding worn and weary with the long voyage, and all the longing & fear & hope which had encompassed her that while. She lifted up

her eyes but once, and saw the witch's house standing where it was wont, but no shape of man moving about it; then she turned aside to a little brake of thorn & eglantine in the meadow hard by, & laid her down on the grass in the shade thereof, and almost before her head touched the ground she fell asleep, & slept there long and peacefully.

Chapter XVI. Birdalone find-
eth her Witch/mistress Dead

IT was some while after noon when she wakened, & the sun was shining bright & hot. Homewhile she felt the burden of fear upon her, even before she was fully come to herself, and knew not what it was that she feared; but when she called to mind that it was even the meeting with her old mistress, her flesh quaked indeed with the memory of bygone anguish, but valiantly she arose and faced the dwelling of the witch despite her naked helplessness. So she went she looked up unto it, & saw no smoke coming from the chimney, but marvelled little therewith since it was not yet cooking-time and the weather hot. She drew nigher, and saw someone sitting on the bench without the door whereas the

witch was wonted; & her heart beat quick, for she saw presently that it was none other than her mistress. Moreover, near to her stood three of the milch-kine lowing uneasily and as in reproach, even as such beasts use when their udders be full and they desire to be milked.

BIRDAHLONE stayed a minute, and her legs high failed her for fear, and then because of the very fear she hastened on till she came within ten paces of the said witch; & sore she missed her bow and arrows, and the cutting blade of her feigned squirrelhood, lest the carline should arise and come raging and shrieking at her.

WHEN spake Birdalone in no feeble voice, and said: Dame, I am come back unto thee, as thou seest, in even such plight as I fled from thee; & I have a mind to dwell in this land: what sayest thou? The witch neither moved nor spake at her word; and the kine, who had held silence when she first came up, and had turned from her, fell to their peevish lowing again.

BIRDAHLONE drew a step nigher, and said: Dost thou hear me, dame, or art thou exceeding wroth with me, & art pondering what vengeance thou wilt take on me?

Still no answer came from the carline, and the kine kept on lowing now & again. Once more Birdalone drew nigher, and spake loudly & said: Tell me at least, is it peace between us or unpeace?

SHE now when she looked she saw that the eyes of the witch were open and staring, and her lips white, and her hands hard withen; and she cried out and said: Is she dead? or will she waken presently and beat me? surely she is dead. And she put forth her hand and touched her face, and it was stone-cold, and she found that she was dead beyond any question.

SHE was a great weight lifted off her heart, and she turned about & looked on the meadows and up to the trees of the wood & down to the rippling stream before her, and fair and sweet & joyous were they gotten unto her; and she looked at the kine who were drawing up towards her, and she laughed merrily, and went to the out-house hard by and took forth a milking-pail and a stool and fell to milking them one after the other, and the beasts went off down the meadow lowing in a changed voice, for joy to wit, this time. But Birdalone knelt down and drank a long draught of the

sweet warm milk, & then arose & went swiftly into the house, and saw nought changed or worsened so far as she could see. There was her own bed in the corner, and the mistress's, greater and much fairer, over against it; & the hutch by the door wherein the victual was kept; she opened it now, and found three loaves there on the shelf, and a meal-tub down below, and she took a loaf & broke it & fell to eating it as she walked about the chamber. There was her bow standing in a nook beside the hutch, & the quiver of arrows hanging on the wall above it. There was the settle lying athwart from the hearth & she smiled, & fitted her wrists to the back of the carven bear which made its elbow, whereto the witch was wont to tie them when she chastised her

WHEN she went to the coffers that stood against the wall behind it, and threw up the lid of one of them, and found therein a smock or two of her own, yellowed by the lapse of time, & her old grey coat, ragged as it was when last she wore it, and now somewhat moth-eaten withal, & she drew forth both smocks and coat and laid them on the settle. Then she opened another coffer, & therein were gay and gaudy gowns & gear

of the witch's wear; but lying amongst them, as if the witch had worn them also, her green gown & shoon which her own hands had brodered. But she said: Nay, ye have been in ill company, I will wear you not, though ye be goodly, at least not till ye have been fumigated and hallowed for me.

THEREWITH she turned back to the settle and did on her her old smock and her ragged grey coat, and said: To-day at least will these be good enough for to-day's work. And she knit her brow withal, and walked with a firm step out a doors and stood a while gazing on the dead corpse of her enemy; and she thought how that here was that which once was so great a thing unto her for the shaping of her life-days, and which so oft came to her waking thoughts after she had escaped from her hands (though, as aforesaid, she seldom dreamed of her a night-time) & moreover an hour ago she yet feared it so sore that she scarce might stand for the fear of it; & now it was nought but a carven log unto her

BUT she told herself that the work was to be done; so she dragged the body away thence, and across the brook, and a little way into the meadow, & then she went back

and fetched mattock & spade
from the outhouse, where she
knew they lay, and so fell to
digging a grave for the corpse
of her dead terror. But howso
hard she might toil, she was
not through with the work ere
night began to fall on her and
she had no mind to go on with
her digging by night. Where-
fore she went back into the
house, and lighted candles,
whereof was no lack, & made
her supper of the bread & the
milk; & then sat pondering on
her life that had been till the
passion arose in her bosom,
and the tears burst out, & long
she wept for desire of others
and pity for herself. Then she
went to the bed she had been
erst wont to, and laid her down
and fell asleep. And her mis-
tress walked not nor meddled
with her peace, nor did Birda-
lone so much as dream of her,
but of her mother and Master
Jacobus in the fair city of the
five Crafts: and in her sleep
she wept for thinking of them.

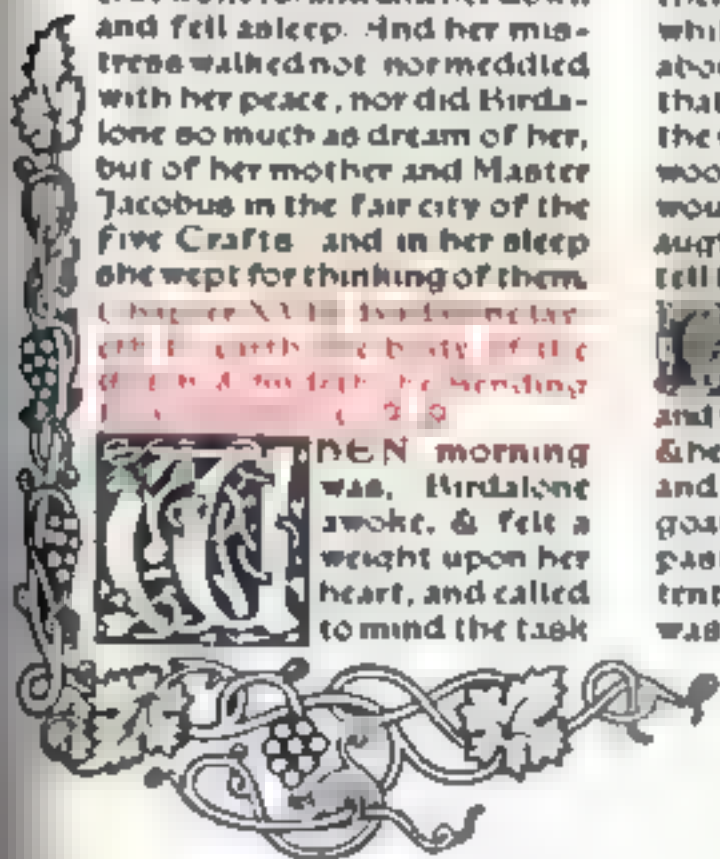
*Chapter XXII. Birdalone
ereth with the body of the
dead to sleep, he sending
her to the grave.*

WHEN morning
was, Birdalone
awoke, & felt a
weight upon her
heart, and called
to mind the task


which lay before her. So she
arose and clad herself, & went
straight to the grave begun,
& toiled hard till she had dig-
ged it out deep, and sithence
she dragged the witch thither,
to and heaped the earth upon
her. Then she bathed her in
the nearest pool of the brook,
and went back into the house
and made her breakfast on the
bread and milk & it was then
about mid-morning. Thereaf-
ter she went about the house,
& saw to the baking of bread,
and so out to the meadow to
see to the kine and the goats,
and then stored the milk for
making butter and cheese, and
did in all wise as if she were to
dwell long in that stead; but
thereafter she rested her body,
whiles her thought went wide
about. But she said to herself
that she would not go up to
the Oak of Trest to meet the
wood-mother that day, but
would abide the night, in case
aught befell that she should
tell her.


WHEN the sun was
getting low she roun-
ed herself & went out
and walked about the meadow,
& hearkened to the birds song,
and watched the kine and the
goats as they fed down the
pasture: and now a soft con-
tent came over her, that all this
was free unto her to hold in

*Chapter XXI. The
dead body of the
witch.*





peace, and to take her pleasure in, as much as one lone child of Adam might do.


 Last she wandered down to the sandy bight of the lake and stood gazing on Green Eyot, where the osiers and willows were grown wild & long in all these years, and she said that she would swim over to it on the morrow. But now her feet took her eastward thence toward the haven of the Bending Boat amongst the alders; for in her heart she would fain know if there were any tidings for her.

 O she went softly along the path by the water, where she had sped so swiftly that last time, & came at last to the creek-side, and looked down on to the water somewhat timorously. There then she saw what she deemed was the very boat itself lying as she had known it; but when she looked again she saw that it lay from stem to stern all loose staves with the water betwixt, and the thwarts and ribs all sundered and undone, so that never again might it float upon the waves. Then she said in a soft voice: Art thou dead then, as thy mistress is dead? was it not so that thou wert at the point of death, & she also, when thou failedst me at the

Late of Increase Unsought?

 No voice came to her as she spake; & she said again: Must I then bury thee as I have buried thy mistress? Nay, that will I not until thou compeltest me; belike in a short while little of the staves of thee shall be left now that the life is out of thee. Let thy ghost & hers foregather if ye will.

 SHE spake the last word, she saw a stir about the stern which lay furthest in up the creek, and while she quaked with failing heart, lo! a big serpent, mouldy and hairy, grey and brown-flecked, came forth from under the stern & went into the water and up the bank & so into the dusk of the alder-wood. Birds lone stood awhile pale & heart-sick for fear, and when her feet felt life in them, she turned & stole away back again into the merry green mead and the low beams of the sun, pondering whether this evil creature were the fetch of the wight who drave the ferry under the blood of the sender.

 SHE hastened back again to the house, and lit a fire on the hearth, and fell to cooking her somewhat of grout to her supper; and she watched the fire, thinking withal: Now if some poor soul be abroad, they may see

the smoke and seek hither, and I may comfort them with food and shelter and converse: or when night darkens, they may see the litten windows & come to me; wherefore shall the fire burn yet & the candles be lighted, for as warm as is the evening, even as if it were Yule tide and the snow deep without, & the wind howling in the woodland trees. And therewith she wept for longing of them that she loved.

BACK in a little she dried her tears, and reproached herself for her much softness & she ate her supper when she had lighted a candle (for it was now dark), & again sat looking at the hearth, till she said: Now am I getting soft again, & who knows but my softness may tempt the ghosts to come in to me. I will give my hands somewhat to do.

WHEREWITH HER eye caught sight of the rents and rags of her old grey gown, and she smiled somewhat ruefully as she called to mind her gallant knight's array, which lay now on the shore of the evil and ruined isle, and her goodly attire of the days of the five Crafts; & the rich raiment wherein her friends of the Castle of the Quest had clad her. Then she arose and

sought needle and thread and some remnants of green cloth, and did off the ragged coat and fell to patching and mending it, and so sat at her work in amock/ sewing till the night was old and she was weary and sleep overcame her, & she lay down in her bed & slept dreamlessly till the sun was high next morning.

*Chapter XXII. Of the
mystical maid who
lived in the forest of the
Quest.*

WHEN Birdalone arose & bathed her & broke her fast, & then went about her work with the beasts and the dairy; but all that time seemed long to her till she had bow in hand & quiver on back and was wending her way to the Oak of Tryst; and swift were her feet, & her heart beat quick with hope of pleasure.

WHEN SOOT had no longer tarrying had she, for scarce had she set her down beneath the oak, ere the wood-mother came forth from the thicket even as the first time when Birdalone saw her, and presently she had her arms about Birdalone & was kissing & clipping her. Then they sat down together in the shade of the great tree, & the wood-mother made much of her friend

with few words and those but simple, while Birdalone wept for joy.

WOOD last spake Birdalone: Wood-mother, my dear, I look in thy face, and I see thee that thou art nowise changed, so that thou callest to my mind the Birdalone that met thee here when she was straying from the House of Captivity like to a bird with a string to its leg.

HABUNDIA smiled on her and said: So it is that now thou lookest older than I. Rounder & fuller is thy body & thy limbs greater and fairer, and thy flesh sleeker: lovelier art thou in all wise, and such as I have thought of thee during these years, save that thy face is grown wiser & sadder than might be looked for. Mother, she said, I am grown older than I should be by the tale of the years, for I have had joy and grief, & grief and joy, & grief again; & now that the years have worn, the grief abideth and the joy hath departed, save this joy of thee and the day of the meeting I have so often thought of.

SHID THE wood-wife: Were I to hear the story of thee, I deem it most like that I would fain buy thy joy with thy grief, both that which has been and that which

is to come. And now I will ask thee right out to tell me all thy tale, as much as thou canst; & all thou canst tell to me, who am thine other self: and I wot moreover that thou hast not told of me to any whom thou hast met in the world since we were last together: is it not so? In faith and in troth so it is, said Birdalone. Said Habundia, after she had looked hard on Birdalone a while: Now there is this I find in thee, that though thou callest me wood-mother still, thou art not my daughter as thou wert erewhile, nor I thy mother; and I know not whether to be glad or sorry thereof, since thou art even as much my friend as ever thou wert. But much do I rejoice herein that thou hast not told any one soul of me.

SHID Birdalone: I must tell thee that part of the tale I shall tell thee is how I have found my mother in the flesh, & loved her sorely; and then I lost her again, for she is dead.

BOTH the wood-wife, smiling on her lovingly: Then should I be even more thy mother than erst I was: there will be something else in thy tale, sweetling.

THEN Birdalone flushed very red, and she smiled pitcously in Habundia's

face; but then she put up her hands to hide the change there in which the anguish of longing wrought, & her shoulders shook and her bosom heaved, and she wept bitterly; but the wood-wife still looked on her smiling, & said softly at last: Yea, how sweet it were to be pricked with thy pain

BUT in a while Birdalone grew calm again and the very smile blossomed out in her face, and they kissed together. Then Habundia rose up and looked on her, & said at last & laughed out withal: One thing I must needs say, that thou hast not fetched thee raiment of price from the knight-hood and the king's houses; or have I not seen thy grey coat of old time, while thou wert living amidst the witch's cruelty? Yea forsooth, said Birdalone; thou needest not to ask this. Verily not, said Habundia, nor why thou art not clad in the fair green gown which thou didst broider; for whiles I have seen the witch flaunting it on the woodenugly body of her, and thou wouldst not wear it after she had cursed it with her foulness. Is it not so? Yea, it is even so, said Birdalone; dost thou love me the less therefor? Habundia laughed again: Were I a man of Adam's sons, said she, I

might make thee many words on the seemliness of thy short coat, and the kindness of it, that it will be for ever slipping off one or other of thy shoulders. But now am I at least enough thy mother, and thou art dwelling even so much in my house, that the next time we meet (& that shall be to-morrow) I shall fetch thee raiment which shall make us forget that thou camest back again to this land as naked as thou didst depart thence

BIRD-ALONE reddened and hung down her head, but the wood-mother sat down beside her & kissed her and said: But now forget all save thy tale, and tell all as closely as thou mayest, for I would lose nought thereof. Yea, said Birdalone; and where shall I begin? Said Habundia: I know nought thereof save the beginning, that thou fledst away naked and escaped the witch; & the ending, to wit, that the Sending Boat failed thee at the last of the Glonder Isles, & that thou calledst on me not wholly in vain, whereas the witch was dead, and therefore there was nought to stay me from sending thee one of my trees & the wight thereof (whom belike I may show to thee one day) to save thee from the bottom of the deep water.

At that word Birdalone threw herself on the wood-wife & clipped and kissed her, and thanked her for the helping with all the dearest words she might. But the wood-mother laughed for joy, and stroked her cheeks and said: Now I deem thee my daughter again, whereas thou thankest me with such sweet passion for doing to thee as a kind mother needs must without any thought thereof. And I bid thee, my dear, never again to go so far from me as that I may not easily help thee and comfort thee from out of my realm wherein I am mighty. And now tell me all in thy dear speech.

THEREWITH Birdalone began her story without more ado, even as ye have heard it afore. Yea and many more things than we can set down did she tell, for full filled she was with the wisdom of the wood. And between whiles the wood-mother fed her with dainty meat and drink, such as Birdalone had never ere tasted the like of. And by then she had got so far as her flight from the Isle of Increase Un-sought, the sun was set & the twilight begun. And the wood-wife said: Now shalt thou go home to thine house; and have no fear of witch or evil thing,

for I am not far from thee and will watch over thee. Sweet is thy tale, my daughter, & dear are thy she-friends; & if ever it may be that I may do them any pleasure, fain were I; and that especially to thy Vindie, who meseemeth is both sweet and wise even as thou thyself art. Nay, dost thou begrudge my loving her? Nay, nay, said Birdalone, laughing; but I rejoice in it. And hereafter when I tell thee how sorely they paid for helping me, I will bid thee to love them yet more than now thou dost. Therewith they parted, & Birdalone came to her house; and on the way she made as it were a feigned tale in mockery of her old trouble, that there would be the witch-mistress awaiting her to whip her. So that when she came to the door she was half-frighted with her own mock, lest the witch might now at last have taken to walking.

AT all was quiet when she entered with the last of the twilight, and she rested that night in all peace, as in the best of her days in the five Crafts.

of her beloved when she was shown unto him on the day of days, thrust her light & eager pleasure aside; and she took up her shoes from the ground (for she had not done them on), and sat down beside the wood-wife and fell a-toying with the marvel of them; and thus without more ado began her tale again, whereas she had left it last even, when she had told of how the Sending Boat was speeding her over the waters toward the Isle of the Young and the Old.

Chapter XX. Birdalene telleth Nabundia of her Love for Arthur, & getteth from her promise of help therin.

WHEN THEY sat there that day, & until the sun was down, & by then had Birdalene but little to tell of her story, for she was gotten therein to the days of the five Crafts. Many times had she wept & turned to Nabundia for solace as she told, not without shame, but without any covering up, all the tale of her love for Arthur the Black Squire, and how she was surprised by the love of him, & of his wisdom and grace & loveliness. And the wood-mother was ever as sweet & kind unto her as could be, yet might ano-

ther than a lover have seen that much of all this was strange unto her, and she looked upon Birdalene as a child who has broken her toy, & is hard to comfort for the loss of it, though there be a many more in the world. But when it grew dusk as aforesaid, and it was time to part, she spake to Birdalene, and said: True it is, my child, that thou hast lived long in these six years' time, neither do I wonder at the increase of thy beauty, and the majesty thereof; for fair is the life thou hast lived, although thou hast been grieved & tormented by it at whiles. And now I know what it is for which thou lonigest; & herein again will I play the mother unto thee, & seek about to fetch thee that thou wouldst have; so be not over-anxious or troubled; and thou mayest be good herein, as my fair child should be; for this I have noted in thee, that Love is not so tyrannous a master but that his servants may whilen think of other matters, and so solace their souls, that they may live despite of all.

WAS Birdalene arisen, and stood before her friend confused & blushing. But Nabundia put her two hands on her shoulders and kissed her, and said: Go home now and sleep, and

come again to-morrow and let us hear the last of thy tale: & when that is done, maybe I shall be able to do something for thine avail.

So they parted, and on the morrow Birdalone came again and told the remnant of her story, which was not so long now that the Black Squire was out of it. And when she had done, Rabundia kept silence a while, & then she said. One thing I will tell thee, that whereas ere while it was but seldom indeed that any son of Adam might be seen in the woodland here, of late, that is, within the last three years, there be many such amongst us; and to our deeming they be evil beasts, more pitiless & greedy than any bear; and but that we have nought to do with them, for they fear us and flee from us, we should have destroyed them one & all. And now that I have heard all thy story, it seemeth unto me not so unlike but there may be the remnants of the bands of the Red Fold, & that they have drifted hither fleeing before the might of thy friends of the knight-hood. Wherefore now, trust me that I will look into this, but I must needs be away from here for a little; so hold thy soul in patience though thou hear nought of me, and dwell

quietly at home for seven days' space, and then come hither and find me. farewell now, my child!

So they kissed & departed, and Birdalone went home to the house, and wore the days thereafter doing what was needful about the stead, & wandering through the meadows, and swimming the waters about Green & Yot; and the days were not unprofitful unto her.

Chapter XXI How the Child entered the Chase, and under that befell there a good

When it was the sixth day since those two had met, Birdalone arose in the morning & stood in the door of the house, and she looked toward the bent which went up to the wood & saw one coming down it, and knew it for Rabundia clad in her huntress' rament & bearing something over the left arm, for her bow was in her right hand. So Birdalone ran to meet her, and embraced & kissed her, & was merry over her, and said: Dear mother, thou farest far from thy fastness to-day. Said Rabundia: There is nought in the meadows now save the neat & the goats & thou; of none of that

Page 71
Line 11
C. 11

folk am I afraid. But mayhap-
pen thou shalt be afraid to
come with me into the depths
of the wild-wood, for thither
would I lead thee. I will be
afraid of nought with thee be-
side me, said Birdalone. But
come now and look upon the
house that I have won for me.
And she took her hand and led
her along; and the wood-wife
said no more till they were a-
cross the brook and standing
by the porch.

WHEN SAID Birdalone:
Thou hast a green gown
over thine arm; is that al-
so for me? Yea, certes, said
Habundia; the old rag which
thou hast on thee, and which
thou lovest so sore, is not fine
enough for my company, and
the glitter-gown I gave thee
may be too fine for the thorns
and the briars, and moreover
thou mayst be over-easily seen
if thou bear that broidered sun-
shine mid the boughs. Where-
fore go in now and do on this
other coat, though the faery
have made it, & then come out
to me with thy bow & thy qui-
ver & I shall find thee sandal-
shoon and girdle withal.

MY wood-mother, said
Birdalone, hallow my
house by entering it, &
eat a morsel with me and drink
the wine of the horned folk ere
we go our ways.

HABUNDIA shook her
head & knit her brows
somewhat as she look-
ed hard on the house, then
she said I know not, Adam's
daughter, I have little to do
with houses, & doubt if a house
be safe for me. And this one
that the witch builded and be-
like she buried some human
being at one of its four cor-
ners. Tell me, fair child, sawest
thou ever here at night/tide the
shape of a youngling crowned
with a garland straying about
the house?

NY, NEVER at all, said
Birdalone. Said the
wood-wife: Then may-
be thou hast hallowed it with
the wisdom and love of thee,
and I may venture; and more-
over I note that it is all builded
of trees and the grass of the
earth; and thou art free to use
them by my leave. But if aught
befall of my coming under thy
roof, heed it not too much, but
think, whatsoever my aspect
may be, I am thy wood-mother
and wisdom-mother that lov-
eth thee. And I bid thee also
wish with all thy might that
my aspect may not change to
thee. Also, if I eat, thou wert
best not to sign the meat as
Adam's sons are wont. Lead
in then; for now am I grown
wilful, and will enter whatever
betide.

BIRDALONE marvelled at those words, but she fell to wishing strongly that her friend might not lose her lovely youthful shape either then or ever, and she took her hand, which trembled somewhat, & led her over the threshold and when they were under the roof her seemed that the wood-mother dwindled in a wondrous way, though her face was as sweet and her limbs as shapely as ever; & she laughed shrilly yet sweetly, and spake in a thin clear voice: Birdalone, my dear, wish strongly, wish strongly! though thou shalt see nothing worse of me than this. And she was scarce three feet high, but as pretty as a picture.

THE REHT indeed was Birdalone affrighted, but she wished all she might, and stooped down to kiss this little creature; and therewith again the wood-wife seemed to wax again as great and tall as ever she was, & her voice came full and strong again, as she laughed and said: Now is it all over for this time, and I see how well thou lovest me, and I pray thee love me no less for this wonder thou hast seen in me. But now it were better that I never go under a roof again. And she took her arms about Birdalone & clip-

ped her lovingly; and glad was Birdalone to feel her so strong and solid again.

WHEN THEY SAT to the board and ate a simple meal of bread and cheese and wood-berries, and drank milk withal & the wood-mother was merry, and the smiles danced over her face as she looked on Birdalone with all loving-kindness, so that Birdalone wondered what was toward but so light-hearted and happy she grew, that she deemed it might be nought save good.

BUT when they had eaten then Birdalone did off her old coat, which she said was meet enough for her daily toil, and did on the fair green hunting-gown & the sandal-shoon, & girt her with the fair girdle which Nabundia had fetched her, & drew up the laps of her gown there through till her legs were all free of the skirts. And Nabundia looked on her, and laughed and said: Now are these white & smooth legs as bad as the gleam-gown for the lying hid but it may be better be and thou must draw thy skirts down & stumble, if needs must be, when we come to the ambushment.

BIRDALONE reddened as she laughed at the word, & took down her

Part III The
Tale of the
Wood-wife



bow and hung her quiver at her back & thrust her sharp knife into her girdle, and forth they went both of them, and were presently past the bent which went up from the meadows & in amongst Nabundia's trees.

Chapter XXII. Birdalene vendeth the Wild-wood in fel-

low.

Mill as they went their way light-ly through the wood spake Nabundia and said Birdalene, my child, fair is the gold ring with the sapphire stone that the third finger of thy right hand beareth; seldom have I seen so fair a stone as that deep blue one; hangeth any tale thereby? Said Birdalene Did I not tell thee thereof wood-mother, how that my beloved who is lost gave it unto me the very last time I saw him, woe worth the while? Nay, said Nabundia, I mind not the tale. But deemest thou he would know it again if he saw it? Yea, surely, said Birdalene, hanging her head; for when first he gave it, the gift was not to me, but to another woman. And she held her peace, & went on with hanging head and all the glee faded out of her a while.

Last she turned to Nabundia, and said: I have now bethought me to ask thee whither we be going and on what errand; for at first I was so glad at heart, I know not why, & it was so merry to bewending the wood with thee freely, that I had no thought in me as to whither and wherefore. But now wilt thou tell me?

Said the wood-wife: Now if I were to tell thee we were going a hunting? Birdalene said: Then I should ask thee what like the quarry were. And suppose it were men? said the wood-wife. Birdalene turned somewhat pale. My mother, she said, if we be going against some of those men of the Red Bands, I am not happy over it. I am no warrior, & fear strokes. Said Nabundia, laughing: Yet art thou a fell archer; & thou mayest shoot from an ambush of the thick leaves, since June is in to day. But neither would I slay or hurt any man, said Birdalene, but it were to save me from present death.

NABUNDIA looked on her with a sly smile and said, Well may bethough we take cover and get within wind of our quarry thou shalt not need to speed an arrow to him. Have patience therefore.



for this is a strange beast which I have marked down; he is not ill to look on, and his voice, which we may well hearken, for while he singeth, is rather sweet than surly. What meanest thou, mother? said Birdalone, growing red & then paler yet; what man is it? since thy calling him a beast is a jest, is it not?

NAY, said Habundia, I neither name him nor know him; only I deem him by no means to be one of the Red Band, for the rear, he may be a man in a beast's skin, or a beast in a man's skin, for aught I know; whereas he seems, so far as I have seen him, to be not wholly man-like or wholly beast-like. But now let us hold our peace of him till we be come nigher to his haunt.

So they went on their way, & Birdalone said but little, while the wood-wife was of many words and gay. They made all diligence, for Birdalone was not soon wearied, and moreover as now she was anxious and eager to see what would befall, which she might not but deem would be something great.

THEY went without stay till past noon, when they were come to a little shady dale wherethrough ran a

clear stream, there they rested and bathed them. & thereafter sat under the boughs & ate the dainty meat which the wood-wife provided, howsoever she came by it; and when they had rested a while, the wood-wife turned the talk once more unto Arthur the Black Squire, and would have Birdalone tell her all nicely what manner of man he was; and Birdalone was nothing loth thereto; for had she her will she had talked of him day-long.

CHAPTER XXII. The dead wife of the Black Squire, the knight of the Red Band, and in the old wood.

NOW they go on again, no less speedily than before, & rest but little, until it was hard on an hour before sunset. And now Habundia began to go warily, as if they were come anigh to their journey's end and the thing that they sought. They were come by now to a long bent of the forest well grown with big-boled oak-trees, not very close together, so that short fine greensward was all underneath them; & Habundia went heedfully from bole to bole, as if she would be ready to cover herself if need were; and Birdalone went after her, and was



now flushed of face, and her eyes glittered, & her heart beat fast, & her legs trembled under her, as she went running from tree to tree.

So came they nigh to the crown of the bent, & before them were the oak-trees sparser & smaller as they went down the further side, which seemed by their sudden shortening to be steeper than the hither side; & betwixt them showed the topmost of thorn and whitebeam and logwood, intertwined with eglandine & honeysuckle & the new shoots of the traveller's joy. There the wood-wife put forth her hand to bid Birdalone stay, who came up to her friend & stood before her eager & quivering; and anon came the sound of a man's voice singing though they could hear no words in it as yet amidst the rustle of the trees and the tumult of song which the blackbirds & thrushes raised in the dale below them.

WHEN spake the wood-wife softly: Harken, we are right & the time is good, our beast is giving tongue: now below us is the bent-side steep, & goeth down into a very little dale with a clear stream running amidst; and therein is the very lair of the thing that we are hunting.

292

Therefore now let us slip warily down between the bushes till we get close to the bottom, and then belike we shall see the very creature quite close, and we shall then consider & think what we shall do with him.

BIRDALONE had no voice wherewith to answer her, but she stole quietly along by her side till they came to the bank of the dale & plunged into the thick, et that flourished there, & fell to threading it, making them as small as might be. But ere they had gone but a little way the wordless song of what was below had ceased, & they heard the sweet tinkle of the string-play, & the wood-wife stayed her to hearken, and the smiles went rippling over her face & she beat time with her fingers; but Birdalone, she stared wildly before her, & would have scrambled down the bank straightway at all hazards, for that string-play was a melody of the Castle of the Quest, but Habundia withheld her by the arm. And then suddenly the music died, and there came up a voice of wailing & lamenting, and Birdalone put her hands & held the palms tight against her ears, & was at point to cry out aloud herself, but Habundia drew a hand of her down & whispered into her ear: Child,

child, make thyself strong & forbear, & then perchance joy may come to thee; hold thy peace & come softly along with me!

SHE Birdalone forbore, and strove with her passion, though the sob rent her bosom for a while; and by then the loud lamenting waned and was done, and the sound of sobbing came up from below, as it had been an echo of Birdalone's grief.

WHEN Habundia drew her on again till they saw the level of the dale and its stream piecemeal betwixt the leaves, and they had a glimpse of a man on the hither side of the stream; & again they went lower, till they were well-nigh on a level with the greensward of the dale; and as Birdalone knelt with head bent low, and her hands covering her eyes, the wood-wife put away from before her the thick leaves of a hazel-bush, and whispering said: Child, child! look forth now & see what is before thee, and see if thou knowest him, or if he be strange to thee, and thy mother hath done nought for thee when all is said.

BIRDALONE looked up, pale and wild-eyed, and into the dale, and saw a man sitting on the grass by the stream-side with his head bowed down on to his knees

and his face covered with his hands: he was clad but in two or three deerkins hung about him, with a strip of skin for a girdle, wherein was thrust a short sword, his brown hair hung down long and shaggy over his face. Close by his side lay a little harp, and further off a short spear roughly hefted with an ash-staff. He was beating the earth with his feet and writhing him about over them. And Birdalone looked, and her breath well-nigh failed her for presently he sat more quietly, and lifted up his head, and she saw his face that it was Arthur, her beloved; and now she durst not move lest he should spring up and flee away; and the mingled pain and longing within her was sweet indeed, but well-nigh deadly.

WITH HIS hand sought round to his harp, & he took it in his arms and fondled it as it were, & his fingers went among the strings, and anon the voice of it came forth, & it was nought changed from the last time it spake, & Birdalone hearkened breathlessly, till the melody died again and Arthur looked about him & raised his face as a dog when it fares to howl.

WHEN Birdalone gave a great cry, & leapt forth out of the thicket and

Part VI The
Dewy Field
Scene

stood on the greenward with nought betwixt them two, and she stretched out her arms to her beloved and cried out: O' no, no, no! do it not, I beseech thee, lest I deem that thou art all changed, and that the man and the dear heart beloved of thee has gone out of thee and left thee but a beast in a man's shape!

HERBERT leapt up as she spake, and thrust forward his head & looked fierce at her, and cried out. What! art thou come again? This is the second time I have seen thee, thou image of her that hath tormented me so long; of her that left me in my most need and hid herself away from me. Nahl a man, sayest thou? Did I not strive with it, & hold my manhood so long as I might; and at last it might no longer be, and I became a beast and a man-slayer? But what avails it to talk with thee, since thou art but the image of her that hath wasted my life. Yet perchance of the image I may make an end since I may not lay hand on the very destroyer herself, and, woe some how I loved her! yea, and do still, but not thee, O false image!

HERBERT forthwith he drew the blade from his girdle & sprang forward at Birdalene; and she cower-

ed and cringed, but moved not else. But therewithal the wood-wife came leaping through the bushes, and she nocked an arrow on her bended bow, and threatened him therewith, and cried out: Thou man-beast, I will slay thee if thou hurt my child and my dear; so forbear! Nay, I tell thee more, unless thou make her as glad at the sight of thee as I meant her to be, I will in the long run slay thee; so look to it.

HERBERT laughed & said: What! there is another image of the love that wasted me, is there! Nay, but by the Hallowes, this new-comer is the first one, and the one who chattered at me is the second. Or is it this, that all women now have the semblance of the evil one that has undone me, and there is nought else left?

BIRDALONE he stood staring at Birdalene & moved not a while; and she stood with her hands before her face cringing before him. Then he raised his arm & cast the weapon far into the bushes of the bank-side, and then came forward and stood before Birdalene, and drew down her hands from her face and stared in the eyes of her, holding her by the two arms; and he said: Thou hast forgotten now belike how fair a life we two might have

lived if thou hadst not fled
from me and spoiled me.

AND thou by the looks
of thee, for thou art
sleek and fair, though
this moment thou art pale for
fear of me, thou hast lived a
happy life through all these
years, with many a merry thing
to think of: & dost thou deem
that my life was happy, or that
I thought of any merry thing,
or of anything save my sor-
row? Dost thou doubt it? go
ask the good spears of Green-
ford, or the Riders of the Red
Hold, & the field of the slaugh-
ter! If there was little joy there,
less was there elsewhere.

She left go of her there-
with and stood trem-
bling before her, & she
bowed down and put palm to
palm and held them out to him
as one who prays; & she knew
not what she did.

WHEN he cried out with a
lamentable cry and said:
O woe's me! for I have
frighted her & scared the wit
out of her, so that she knows
not who I am nor what I would,
and I would pray to her & be-
seech her to pity me, and not
depart from me again or mock
me with images of herself.

WHEN he went down on
his knees to her, and he
also joined his hands
to pray to her; but it seemed

as if she was stricken to stone,
so wholly she moved not. But
for him, he sank his forehead
to earth, & then he rolled over
and his limbs stretched out, &
his head turned aside & blood
gushed out from his mouth.
But Birdalone shrieked out &
cast herself on his body, and
cried, I have found him, and he
is dead! he is dead, and I have
slain him, because I was a tim-
orous fool & feared him, & he
was coming to his right mind
and knew me for what I was!

BUT Nabundia came and
stood over them, & drew
up Birdalone, and said:
Nay, nay, be comforted! for
now he is thus, & the strength
is gone out of him for a while,
we may deal with him. Abide, &
I will fetch the blood-staunch-
ing herb and the sleepy herb,
and then we will heal him, and
he will come to his right mind
and be a man again.

WHEREWITH she has-
tened away and was gone
but a little; & meanwhile
Birdalone knelt down by her
love and wiped the blood from
him, and caressed his sword-
hardened hands and moaned
over him. But when the wood-
wife came back she put Birda-
lone aside once more, & knelt
down by the squire and raised
his head, and laid the blood-
stauncher to his mouth & his

Part VI. The
Tale of the
Squire

heart, & muttered words over him, while Birdalone looked over her shoulder with her pale face; then the she-leech fetch- ed water from the stream in a cup which she drew from her wallet, & she washed his face, and he came somewhat to him- self, so that she might give him drink of the water; & yet more he came to himself. So then she took the sleepy herb and bruised it in her hands and put in his mouth & again said words over him, and presently his head fell back and his eyes closed and he slept peacefully.

SHE stood up then and turned to Birdalone and said Now, my child, have we done all that we may do, save that we shall bring him to a place where the dew and the sun shall not torment him and sicken him; for he shall lie thus till the sun comes up to mor- row, or longer; & fear not, for when he awaketh he shall be in his right mind, and shall know thee & love thee. This I swear to thee by the earth and the sun and the woodland.


SHE Birdalone, trem- bling yet: O mother, but may I kiss him and caress him? Yea, surely, said the wood-mother, smiling in her face, but be not too long over it, for lo! the last of the sun, and it were better that he

be under cover ere the twilight falls.

BIRDALONE KNELT down by her love quiet- ly at that word, and fell to kissing him softly, & laid her cheek to his, & called him gentle names such as none can tell again without shame, till the wood-wife laid her hand on her shoulder & said kindly & sweetly: Rise up now, for thou must make it enough for this present; thou shalt have time enough hereafter for more and much more.

SHE Birdalone arose & said: Now shall we bear him to his place? Shall I not take him by the shoulders & thou by the legs? for I am stronger than thou after all these years.

SHE WUGHED the wood- wife: Nay, little one, said she; thou know- est me not utterly as yet. Thou shalt not bear him at all, nor any part of him; I am strong enough for more than that: see thou! And she stooped down and took him up in her arms as if he were a little child, and stepped off lightly with him; but looked back over her shoulder & said to Birdalone But thou mayest walk by me & hold a hand of him as we go, though it will hinder me some- what; but I know thine heart & would pleasure thee, my child.



BIRDALONE ran up to her and thanked her and kissed her, and took Arthur's left hand, while Habundia bore him on down the dale and out of it, & still along the stream till they came to a place where it was narrow on either side thereof, and a sheer rock came down so near to the water that there was but a strip of greensward three yards wide betwixt water and rock; and in the face of the rock was a cave wide enough for a man to enter by stooping somewhat. There in the wood-wife lightly bore Arthur, & Birdalone followed; and they found the cave dry & roomy within; there was a bed therein of dry heather & bracken, and thereon Habundia laid her burden, and said: Now, my child, there is nought to do but abide till he comes to himself again, which may be some time to-morrow & be of good cheer, for he will come to his right self, but he will be weak and humble; but I shall have meat and drink ready for him. Now if thou wilt be ruled by me, thou wilt keep out of the way when he awakens; moreover, be thou not scared if I meet his awakening with another shape than that which thou hast known of me; for sure it is that it will trouble his wits overmuch if again he seeth

the two of us alike. But fear not: for thy sake, my child, I will take noughty shape, though it may well be less beauteous than thine.

I WILL DO what thou wilt, mother, said Birdalone, for I see that thou art helping me all thou mayest; yet I beseech thee let me sit by him till the time of his awakening draweth nigh.

THE wood-wife smiled and nodded yea-ay on her, and they sat down, both of them beside the sleeping man, and the day died into the night as they sat hearkening to the ripple of the brook & the song of the nightingales.

Chapter XXIV. The Wood-mother changeth her form to that of a Woman stricken in years.

WHEN the morrow came, there yet lay Arthur sleeping peacefully, and Birdalone awoke from the slumber which had at last fallen on her, & looked about her and saw not Habundia in the cave; so she arose & bent over Arthur and kissed him, and so went forth and stood in the door and looked about her. And she was still dim-eyed with her just departed slumber & the brightness

Part III. The
Iliad. I. 41.
sense



of the morning sunlight, and she scarce knew whether it were a part of a dream, or a sight that was verily before her, that she seemed to see one coming across the brook toward her, stepping heedfully from stone to stone thereof: a woman stricken in years, but slim and trim and upright, clad in a gown of green cloth, with a tippet of some white fur. When she was come on to the green-sward she spake to Birdalone in a sweet voice, but thin with eld, and gave her the beile of the day; and Birdalone was some-what afraid to see a new-comer, but she greeted her, drawing back a little from her shyly. But the old woman said, What maketh thee here, my daughter? Dost thou not know that this is my land and my house, and that I am said not to be unmighty in these woods?

WHEN she spake, she heard the carline chuckle softly, and at last she said, Why, Birdalone, my dear, dost thou not know me after all these years? Look on me again, look! and thou shalt see that I am not so much changed from what thou sawest me last night. I am still thine image, my dear, only I was the image of what thou wert, and now am I the image of what thou shalt be when two score years and ten of happy life have worn for thee. Tell me, am I now aught like to thy mother in the flesh?

WHEN she spake, she heard the carline chuckle softly, and at last she said, Why, Birdalone, my dear, dost thou not know me after all these years? Look on me again, look! and thou shalt see that I am not so much changed from what thou sawest me last night. I am still thine image, my dear, only I was the image of what thou wert, and now am I the image of what thou shalt be when two score years and ten of happy life have worn for thee. Tell me, am I now aught like to thy mother in the flesh?

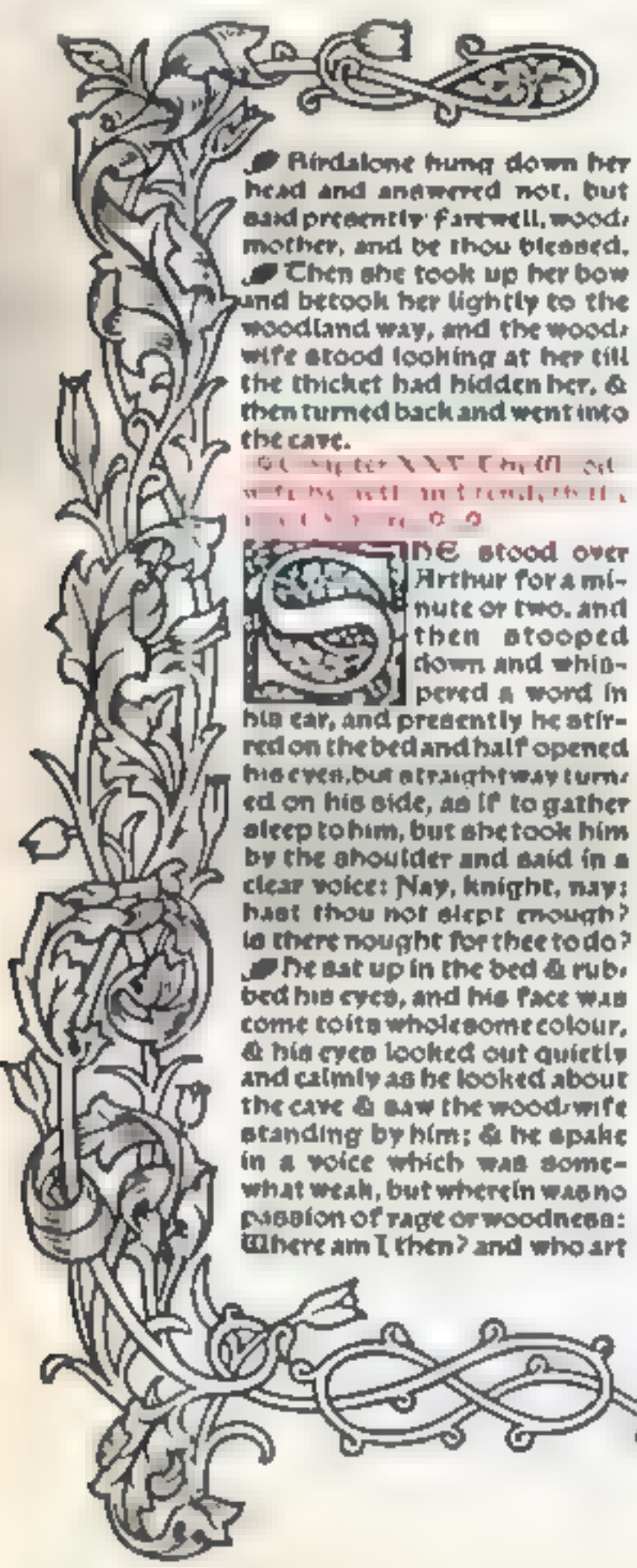
WHEN she spake, she heard the carline chuckle softly, and at last she said, Why, Birdalone, my dear, dost thou not know me after all these years? Look on me again, look! and thou shalt see that I am not so much changed from what thou sawest me last night. I am still thine image, my dear, only I was the image of what thou wert, and now am I the image of what thou shalt be when two score years and ten of happy life have worn for thee. Tell me, am I now aught like to thy mother in the flesh?

WHEN she spake, she heard the carline chuckle softly, and at last she said, Why, Birdalone, my dear, dost thou not know me after all these years? Look on me again, look! and thou shalt see that I am not so much changed from what thou sawest me last night. I am still thine image, my dear, only I was the image of what thou wert, and now am I the image of what thou shalt be when two score years and ten of happy life have worn for thee. Tell me, am I now aught like to thy mother in the flesh?

twain together alone before the young man awaketh. I would have thee get thee home and abide him there; it shall not be long I promise thee; and this also, that he shall come home to thee sound in body & whole in limb.

BIRDALONE'S countenance fell, and she said: Why this second mind, mother? why, I pray thee? Said Nabundia: I fear for thy love lest he be not strong enough to open his eyes upon thy face; but after he hath been a day in the woods, & I have spoken to him diversely & cheered him with the hope of meeting thee, he may well be strong enough to seek thee for a mile a length, & find thine house first & then thee. So now wilt thou obey me? Nay, if thou must needs weep, I will be gone into the thicket till thou hast done, thou wilful! Birdalone smiled through her tears, and said: I pray thee pardon my wilfulness, mother, and I will depart without turning back into the cave. Nay, said Nabundia, there is no need for so much haste as that: I will in now, and do my leechdoms with the sick man. But do thou go across the stream, thou barefoot, & thou wilt find on the other side, by the foot of the quicken-tree yonder, honeycombs & white

bread & a bicker of wild goats' milk. Bathe thee then if thou wilt, and bring those matters over hither; & then shalt thou go in and kiss thy mate's sick face with thy fresh one, and thereafter shall we sit here by the ripple of the water & break our fast: and lastly thou shalt go in and kiss again and then take to the road. But tell me, dearest thou surely that thou canst find it again? Yes, surely, mother, said Birdalone. I am wood-woman enough for that; and now I will do all thy will. And therewith she stepped out lightly on to the greenward, & sought up the stream till she found a smooth grounded pool meet for her bath, and when that was done, she fetched the victual & came back to the woodwife; then they two sat down together, and ate & drank while the water rippled at their feet. But when they were done, Birdalone gat her into the cave again, and kissed the sleeping man fondly, & came forth lightly & stood a moment before the woodwife & said: Tell me this at least, mother, when shall he be there? Tomorrow, quoth the woodwife; & for my part, I would keep thee within doors and abide him there, lest there be trouble; for he may not yet be as strong as the strongest.



● Birdalene hung down her head and answered not, but said presently farewell, wood-mother, and be thou blessed.

● Then she took up her bow and betook her lightly to the woodland way, and the wood-wife stood looking at her till the thicket had hidden her, & then turned back and went into the cave.

● *Chapter XXXI The first of the wood-wife's life in the forest, & the first of the knight's life in the forest.*

SHE stood over Arthur for a minute or two, and then stooped down and whispered a word in his ear, and presently he stirred on the bed and half opened his eyes, but straightway turned on his side, as if to gather sleep to him, but she took him by the shoulder and said in a clear voice: Nay, knight, nay; hast thou not slept enough? Is there nought for thee to do?

● He sat up in the bed & rubbed his eyes, and his face was come to its wholesome colour, & his eyes looked out quietly and calmly as he looked about the cave & saw the wood-wife standing by him; & he spake in a voice which was somewhat weak, but wherein was no passion of rage or woodness: Where am I then? and who art

thou, dame? ● She said: Thou art in a cave of the woodland, & I am for one thing thy leech, and meseemeth thou desirest to eat & to drink. ● He smiled and nodded his head; and she fetched him the milk, and he drank a long draught, & sighed thereafter, as one who is pleased; & she smiled on him, and fetched him the bread and the honey, and he ate & drank again, and then lay down and fell fast asleep. And she suffered his slumber for two hours or so, & then awoke him again; and again he asked where he was and what was she, but she said as before. And said she: The next thing thou hast to do is to arise, as thou wilt mayest, and take this raiment, which is fair and clean, & go wash thee in the brook and come back to me; and then we will talk, and thou shalt tell me of how it was with thee. & peradventure I may tell thee somewhat of how it shall be with thee. ● As she spoke she went to a coffer which stood in a nook of the cave, and drew forth from it a shirt and hose & shoon, and a surcoat & hood of fine black cloth, and a gilded girdle and a fair sword, red-sheathed, & said: These may serve thy turn for the present, so take them & don them, & thou shalt look like a squire at least, if not a knight.

SO he arose as one in a dream & went out; but as he passed by her she saw something gleaming on his breast, & noted that it was Birdalone's fair sapphire ring which hung about his neck; so she smiled, and said under her breath: Crafty is my dear daughter! But that shall save me some words at least. And she abided his return.

NON HE cometh back clad in the fair rament, with the sword by his side, and the wood-wife smote her palms together and cried out: Now indeed thou art fair and well-liking, and a fair lady might well take pleasure in her holding thee.

AT his brow was knit, and he looked sullen and angry, and he said: What is all this play? & where gattest thou this ring which I founde'en now about my neck? And who art thou, & why have I been brought hither?

IS eyes looked fiercely on her as he spake, holding out his palm with the ring lying thereon. But the wood-wife answered: Many questions, fair youth! but I will tell thee: the play is for thine healing and pleasure, whereas both sick hast thou been and sorry. As to the ring, it is thou hast got it & not I. But I will

tell thee this, that I have seen it on the finger of a fair damsel who haunteth the woodland not far hence. As to what I am, that were a long tale to tell if I told it all; but believe this meanwhile, that I am the lady and mistress of hercabouts, & am not without power over my folk & my land. And as to why thou wert brought hither, I brought thee because I had no better house handy for a sick man to lie in.

ARTHUR stood a long while considering the ring that lay on his palm, and at last he put his hand on the wood-wife's shoulder, and looked into her face beseechingly, and said: O mother, if thou be mighty & merciful withal, and have pity on me! Thou callest me a youth, and so I may be in regard to thee; but I tell thee it is five long years and there hath been no other thought in my heart but what was loathsome to me, and it hath worn and wasted my youth, so that it waneth & withereth and is nought. O, if thou be mighty, bring me to her that I may see her at least one time before I die. And therewith he fell down on his knees before her, and kissed the hem of her gown, & wept. But she drew him up & looked on him with the merry coun-

tenance of a kind old woman, and said Nay, nay, I am not so hard to be won to thy helping that thou needest pray so sore and weep. here need we tarry no longer, & if thou wilt come with me we shall go seek the damsel who bore this ring, though how it should come to thee why should I know? Neither do I know if the said ring bearer be the one woman whom thou needest. But I will tell thee at once that she is a dear friend of mine.

WHEN Arthur threw his arms about her, & kissed her cheeks and blessed her, while she laughed on him & said: Nay, fair sir, if thou wilt do so much with the withered branch, what wilt thou with the blossom of the tree? And he was abashed before her, but hope made his heart to dance.

SO the wood-wife took up her bow, slung her quiver at her back, and girt her short sword to her, & then led him forth, and so into the thicket out of the dale and forth into the oaken bent, and lightly she led him thereafter through the woodland.

Chapter XXVI, The Black Squire telleth the Wood-wife of his doings since Birdalome

AS THEY went Habundia said to Arthur: Now shalt thou talk & tell for the shortening of the way, and let us know somewhat of thy story. But first I must tell thee, for thou mayst not know it so well as then thou wast, that yesterday we found thee down in the dale yonder, playing the string-plays sweetly indeed, but otherwise dight like a half beast more than a man, so that we wondered at thee & pitied thee.

ARTHUR knit his brows as if he strove with some memory and might not master it: then he said Thou savest Me, who then was the other? Said Habundia: I had a dear friend with me. Quoth he: And did she pity me also? Yea, said the wood-wife, else scarce had she been a friend to me. O let us on swiftly, said Arthur, so long as the time may be. And they quickened their pace and ate up the way speedily.

PRESENTLY spake the wood-wife again: Now for the tale of thee,

fair air; yet will I shorten it somewhat by telling thee that I know thy name, that thou art Arthur the Black Squire of the Castle of the Quest. He stared at that word, and said: Now knewest thou this? how couldst thou guess it, who hast never seen me erst? A friend told me, said she; too long it were as now to tell thee thereof. Rather do thou tell me how thou didst fare when ye found thy friend gone from the castle that time ye came home from the winning of the Red Hold.

ARTHUR stared astonished, and said: What is it? Dost thou verily know my love? or art thou a sorceress & knowest somewhat of me by spellwork? I am somewhat more than a sorceress, may happen, said the woodwife; but heed it not, since I am thy friend to-day, but tell me what I ask, that I may have all the tale of thee; it will serve for the shortening of the way. Said Arthur: And who but I needeth it as short as may be? so stand we not loitering here, and I will talk as we wend on speedily.

WHEN they sped therefore, and said Arthur: How did I fare? as one stunned, mother, & knew not what had happened; & when I heard

their babble of how she had done wrong here & right there, I was driven half mad by it, so that I hastened back to the Red Hold, and became the captain of Greenford, to hunt down their scattered foemen; for I said to myself that needs must I rage and slay, and that were worse amongst my friends than mine unfriends. What then? that business came to an end: though all the ill men were not slain, but all were driven away from the parts of Greenford, and sooth to say they durst not come anywhere nigh where they heard of me. Then became each day like every other, and the thought of my hope and my despair ate mine heart out, and I was of no avail unto any. Now it so happened amidst my many battles and chases, I had hunted the bands of the Red Hold into the north-west marches of the woodland & I noted that even they, howsoever hard bestead, and the worst of men to boot, would scarce at the first be driven into the thickets thereof, though at last, whether or no they have made covenant with the devils there I know not, they have betaken them to the depths of the wood and have borne off women from the dwellings & got children on them, and are like to breed an evil folk. Chat

then I noted that this Eviloh was a dwelling loathed & deserted, & little like it was that any would meddle with me there. Three years had worn since I was cast away at the Castle of the Quest by her that loved me, who must needs sacrifice both her and me to the busy devil of folly; and I also deemed that if I sought for her I should not find her; and yet more forsooth, that if I found her she would be as hard unto me as when she fled from me. And as for me, I was gotten hard and crabbed, & no man, if his heart would let him, would have aught to say to me. So I gat me away from the Red Hold, as I had from the Castle of the Quest, & I gave out that I would enter into religion, and forbade any man to follow me. Neither did any desire it, for first of all I set me down at the very outskirts of the woodland, and raised me a bower there, rude and ill-shapen. few folk came anigh me, and yet some few, charcoal-burners, and hunters of the edges of the wood, and such-like. These deemed me a holy man, whereas I was but surly. Somewhat also they feared me, whereas in some of their huntings or goings and comings after prey I had put forth all my strength, eked out by the lore of knighthood, which was

strange to them. One man there was of them who was fashioned of the minstrel craft by nature, & who forgathered with me specially, till we became friends, and he was a solace to me, with his tales & his songs of a rougher people than I had been wont to deal with. But when I had been in that place for two years he died of a sickness, and I was left lonely, and my soreness of heart fell upon me till I scarce knew what next I should do. So I fared away yet deeper into the wildwood, taking with me the harp which my friend had given me before he died. It was summer, and I wandered about ever deeper into the wood, until belike I had scarce been able to win out of it if I had tried. At last, when the autumn came, I built myself again some sort of a bower in a clearing of the wood where in was water, and the resort of plenteous venison.

WHAT befell next? My mind is not overclear concerning it all, for I was now becoming more of a beast than a man. But this I know, that some men of the bands whom I had chased happened on me. They knew me not for their old foeman, but of their kind it was to torment and slay any man whom they might lightly overcome. Yet

was not the battle so overnight but that I slew and hurt divers of them ere they got me under and stripped me & bound my hands and tormented me, after the manner that the devils shall do with them when they shall go to their reward. Yet somehow I lived, though they deemed me dead, and I crawled away thence when they were gone; & somehow I was healed of my body, but I was confounded of my wit thereafter. & now can call to mind but little of what befell me as I strayed from place to place, save that I remember I was hapless and heart-sore ever: and also meseemeth that I saw visions at whiles, & those who had been in my life before these things, their images would come before me to mock me as I sat singing whiles & whiles playing the string-play (for my harp I bore ever with me); and whiles I bewailed me, & called for help on them that would not or might not help me. And now I may not even tell the years of my abiding in the desert, how many they be. But I pray thee let us on more swiftly yet.

SAID THE wood-wife: Thou hast told me but little of thy life, Black Squire, but it is enough may-be; and I see that thou mayst

not tell me more because thou hast thy mind set on what may betide thee when this day is over. But thou must know that thou hast come into the wood of Evilshaw, wherein, besides those savage men who quelled thee and their like, there be uncouth things no few, & wights that be not of the race of Adam; wherefore no great marvel is it that thou sawest visions, and images of them that were not by thee. Yea, said he, but one vision had I that confounded and overcame me more than all others, and meseemeth that came to me not long ago, for first I saw the shape of her that my soul desireth ever, and it wept and lamented for me; and then for a little I seemed as if I were coming forth from my confusion of wit; when lo! there issued from the thicket another image of my beloved and blamed me and threatened me. God wot good cause there was of the blame. But tell me, mother, since thou callest thyself wise, what may this portend?

THE wood-wife laughed: Since I am wise said she, I will foretell thee good days. And now we will talk no more of thee or thy love or thy sorrow, but since thou wilt so fiercely devour the way, I will tell thee a tale or two of this

wood and its wights to save
us from overmuch weariness.

SO did she, talking and
telling as they went; &
she went on a pace be-
fore him, and howsoever long
or hardly he might stride he
might not overgo her. And so
fast they went, that they were
within a little way of the Oak
of Tryst a good while before
the sun had set, though they
had set out from the cave three
hours after the hour when Bird-
alone and the woodwife had
left the House under the Wood
on the yesterday. They had
come to a steep rock that rose
up from a water's side, and the
woodwife bade stay, whether
Arthur would or no, and she
made him eat & drink, bringing
the victual and wine from out
of a cleft in the said rock. And
she held him there till thenight
was come & there was a glim-
mer of the rising moon in the
east, and he was ill at ease and
restless; but still she held him
there till the moon rose high
and shone upon them, and the
shadows of the oak-boughs
lay black all around.

Then she bade him arise,
and let him on to the Oak
of Tryst, yea and some-
what beyond it toward the
great water. Then she spake
to him: Black Squire, I am now
come home, and will lead thee

no further; I was deeming that
we should have slept in the
wood a good way from this,
& then would I have brought
thee on thy way to-morrow
morning; but the eagerness of
thine heart hath made thy feet
so speedy, that we be here
somewhat rathe, and yet I am
not ill-pleased therewith. Then
she turned him about & said:
Look down the bent and
tell me what thou seest. He
said: I see the boles of good-
ly trees, and betwixt them the
gleaming of a great water. She
said: Go thitherward then
while the moon is yet at her
brightest, and thou shalt pre-
sently come to wide meads ly-
ing along the water, & a stream
running through them. Enter
then into the meads and look
about thee, and thou shalt see
a little house (there is none
other nigh) standing just a-
cross the said stream; go up
thither boldly and crave guest-
ing from whomsoever thou
shalt find there, and maybe
things shall go after thy mind.
More than this I may not do
for thee. Farewell then, and if
thou wilt thou mayst meet me
again; that is to say, that which
is verily me; but it is like that
this shape which hath been
striding on with thee daylong
thou shalt not see any more.

He looked on her wonder-
ing, for she seemed to
grow goodly & stately
before his eyes. But even as
he stretched forth his hand to
take her, she turned about
suddenly and fared into the
wood out of his sight, wend-
ing full as swiftly as might
have been looked for. Then
he drew his sword and turned
his face from the wood, & went
down toward the water.

Character: Arthur
Chapter: 11
The Day of the Sence

So came Arthur
into the mead-
ows, & went ea-
gerly but warily
over the dewy
grass. And here
& there a cow rose before him
and went bundling down the
mead a little way, and the owls
cried out from behind him and
a fox barked from the thicket's
edge. Then he found himself
on the stream's side, & he stay-
ed & looked from side to side,
and lo! on the other side of the
stream a little house that look-
ed familiar to him as a yeo-
man's dwelling in the builded
lands, and the thatch thereon
shone under the moon and its
windows were yellow with can-
dle-light, & so homely it seem-
ed to him, that he thrust his
sword into the sheath & light-

ly crossed the brook, and came
to the door and laid his hand
upon the latch and lifted it and
shoved the door, and all was
open before him.

His eyes, coming from the
night, dazzled with the
bright light of the can-
dles, but he saw a fair woman
rising up in her place, & he said
May a traveller in the wood-
land be welcome here to night
dealing with all in all honour?

But the woman came to-
ward him holding out
her two hands, & ere he
could cry out that he knew her,
she had thrown herself upon
him, & had cast her arms about
him and was kissing his face
& murmuring O welcome in-
deed welcome welcome & wel-
come! And so sore did his
past grief and his desire move
him, that he was weak before
her, and held down his hands
& let her do. And both those
were breathless with wonder
and joy and longing, and they
stood aloof a little in a while &
looked on each other, she with
heaving bosom and streaming
eyes, & he with arms stretched
forth and lips that strove with
his heart's words and might
not utter them. But once more
she gave herself to him, and
he took her in his arms strong-
ly now, so that she was frail &
weak before him, and he laid

his cheek to her cheek and his lips to her lips, and kissed her eyes and her shoulders & murmured over her. And then again they stood apart, and she took him by the hand and led him to the settle, & set him down by her, and herself by him; and a while they said nought. Then she spake as one who had come to herself & was calm, though her heart was aflame for love: Tell me, love, when thine hand was on the latch didst thou look to find me here in this house? for thine hand it was that waked me; I heard not thy foot before the threshold, for I was weary and slumbering. Alas! that I lost the sound of thy feet! He spake, and his voice sounded false unto him, as if it came from another's mouth: I wot not; the woman that led me nearby seemed to bid me hope. Then he said: Nay, the sooth is that I should have died if I had not found thee here; I have been sick so long with hoping.

WHEN were they silent till she said: I would that I had heard thee crossing the brook. But the wood-wife bade me look for thee no earlier than to-morrow; else had I time enough; & I would have made the house trim with the new green boughs, & lighted our bed with rose blooms;

& I would have done on me my shining gown that the wood-wife gave me. For indeed she was but clad in her scanty smock and nought else.

BUT he laid his head on her bosom and kissed her all about, and said: Nay, my own love, it is well, it is better. And she murmured over him: O friend, my dear, think not that I had will to hide me from thee. All that is here of me is thine, and thine, and thine.

AND she took his hand & they arose together, and she said: O friend, I fled from thee once & left thee lonely of me because I deemed need drove me to it; & I feared the strife of friends, & confusion & tangle. Now if thou wilt avenge thee on me thou mayest for I am in thy power. Yet will I ask thee what need will drive thee to leave me lonely?

SHE SAID: The need of death. But she said: May happen we shall lie together then, as here to-night we shall lie.

CHAPTER XXVIII. Five days in the House of Love.

ON the morrow it was sweet times betwixt those twain, and what was hard & fierce of their love they


seemed to have put behind them. A dear joy it was to Birdalone that day to busy herself about the housekeeping, & to provide whatsoever seemed now, or had seemed to her in her early days, to be dainties of their meadow and woodland husbandry, as cream and junclets and wood-fruit & honey, and fine bread made for that very occasion.

WHEN she was careful as a mother with a child that he should not over-weary himself with the sun of the early summer, but rather to follow the brook up into the wood and lie adown in the flecked shadow and rest him wholly, as if there were nought for him to do but to take in rest all that was done for his service, both by the earth and by the hands and nimble feet of Birdalone. And as she was wilful in other ways of her cherishing, so also in this, that for nought in that daylight would she go anywise disarrayed, nay not so much as to go barefoot, though he prayed her thereof sorely, and told her that fairer and sweeter she was in her smock alone than in any other raiment. for in the morning she went in her woodland green let down to her heels, & when the day wore towards evening, & the wind came cool

from over the Great Water then she did on her wonder-
raiment which the wood-wife had given her, and led Arthur over the meadows here & there & went gleaming by the side of the black-clad man along the water's lip. And they looked forth on to Green Eyot and Rock Eyot, and stood by the shallow bight where she had bathed those times; and they went along to the dismal creek where the Sinking Boat was wont to lie, & where yet lay the scattered staves of it; and then along the meadow-land they went from end to end, resting oft on the flowery grass, till the dew began to fall & the moon cast shadows on the greenward. Then home they fared to the house; and again on the way must Birdalone feign for their disport that the witch was come back again, and was awaiting her to play the tyrant with her; & Arthur fell in with her game, and kissed her and clipped her, and then drew his sword & said: By Allhallows I shall amite off her head if she but lay a finger on thee.

So they played like two happy children till they came to the door of the house, and Birdalone shoved it open, and they two looked in together & saw nought worse therein save the strange sha-

Foot 1 7
1 4
ence



dows that the moon cast from the settle on to the floor. Then Birdalone drew in her love, & went about lighting the candles & quickening a little cooking fire on the hearth, till the yellow light chased the moon away from the bed of their desire.

Chapter XXXIX. Those twain will seek the wisdom of the

THEN next day was their life such as it had been the day before; and as they lay in cool shadow of a great oak, Birdalone fell to telling Arthur all the whole story of her dealings with the wood-wife, and how that she had so loved her and helpen her, that through her love and her help she had escaped the witch & her snares, who would have turned her into a half-devil for the undoing of manfolk. And how that the said wood-wife had never appeared to her but as an image & double of herself, save on the time when she played the leech to him. Then she told him how all had gone when the wood-wife had sought him out for the fulfilment of their love, & of the dreadful day when they had come upon him out of his wit and but little manlike.

210

WHEN she asked, would he, within the next day or two, that they should go see the wood-wife together and thank her for her help, and bring him within the ring of her love and guarding; and he yea said it with a good will.

AFTER this she would have him tell her of how things had gone with him since that evil day when he had come home from the Castle of the Quest and found her gone. So he told her somewhat, and of his dole and misery, and his dealings with the foemen of Greenford; but yet scantily, & as one compelled; and at last he said:

OUR love, since thou art cossetting me with all solace of caresses, I pray thee remember my trouble and grief, how sore they were, and do with me as with a sick man getting well, as I wot surely thou wouldest do; and do thou that which is at this present the softest and merriest to me, and that forsooth is, that thou shouldest talk and tell, & I should hear, in the sweetness of the music, and only here and there put in a word to rest thee and make thy tale the sweeter.

SHE laughed with love on him, & without more ado fell to telling every

thing she might think of, concerning her days in the House of Captivity, both when she was but a bairn, and when she was grown to be a young woman; and long was she about the tale, nor was it all done in one day; and a multitude of things she told him which are not set down in this book.

IN the evening when they were going again to and fro the meads, it was other talk they fell on, to wit, of their fellows of the Quest, both of Sir Hugh & the three lovely ladies, and now was Arthur nought but kind when he spake of Agra, nor spake Birdalone otherwise: but she said: I shall now say a hard word, yet must thou bear it, my loving, since we twain are now become one, and have but one joy together & one sorrow. Deem'st thou that Agra is yet alive? Sooth it is, said Arthur, it may well be that I have slain her. And what may we do by her if ever we fall in with her alive? said Birdalone. I wot not, said Arthur; some would say that we have done penance for our fault, both thou & I; & what other penance may we do, save sundering from each other? And by God above I will not. By thine head and thine hands I will not, said Birdalone.


SO said they; but there-with their eyes told tales of the fair eve and the lovely meadows, & the house, the shrine of the dear white bed no less sweet to them than erst; but then presently Birdalone stayed her love, & took her arms about him, and each felt the sweetness of the other's body, and joy blossomed anew in their hearts. Then fell Arthur to telling of the deeds and the kindness of Baudoin, whom never again they should see on the earth; & they turned back home to the house, and on the way spake Birdalone: This is what I would we should do: whereas I have sought thee and thou me, & we have found each other, whereas ye sought me when I went astray in the Black Valley of the Greywaters, & before, when ye three sought your own loves, now I would that we should seek our fellows and have joy in them, and thole sorrow with them as in days gone by.

SPAKE Arthur: Dear is the rest with thee in this wilderness; yet were it a deed of fame, and would bring about a day of joy, might we find our friends again, & knit up the links of the fellowship once more. But thou the wise and valiant! belike thou hast in thine head some device where-

by this might be set about.

BIRDALONE said, Simple is my device, to wit, that we ask one who is wiser than I. Let us tarry not, but go to-morrow and see the wood-wife & talk with her concerning it. Then she smiled upon him and said: But when thou seest her, wilt thou be aghast if she come before us in my shape of what I was five years ago, or six?

AY, nay, he said, thou art not so terrible as that, not very far do I run from thee now. And therewith they kissed & embraced, and so entered the House of Love.



WHEN the morrow was they arose and went their ways toward the wood, and Birdalone in her hunter's coat, quiver at back and bow in hand. They came to the Oak of Tryst, and Birdalone was at point to call on the wood-wife by the burning of a hair of hers, when she came lightly from out the thicket, clad as Birdalone, and her very image. She stood before them with a glad countenance, & said: Welcome to the

seekers and finders. But Arthur stepped forth and knelt before her, and took her right hand and kissed it, and said: Here I swear allegiance to thee, O Lady of the Woods, to do thy will in all things, and give thee thanks from my heart more than my tongue can say.

BOOTH the wood-wife: I take thine allegiance, fair youngman, & mine help shalt thou have henceforward. Then she smiled and her eyes danced for merriment, and she said: Yet thy thanks meseemeth for this while are more due to the wise carline who brought thee through the woods two days ago, and only left thee when the way was easy and clear to thee.

AY, said Arthur, I know now how great is thy might, & that thou canst take more shapes than this only; and humbly I thank thee that for us thou hast taken the shape that I love the best of all on the earth.

SHID THE wood-wife: Stand up, Black Squire, and consider a little what thou wouldst have me do for thee, while I have speech with mine image yonder. And therewith she came up to Birdalone, & drew her a little apart, and fell to stroking her cheeks and patting her hands and di-

versely carressing her, and she said to her: Now now, my child, have I done for thee what I promised, & art thou wholly happy now? O yea, said Birdalone; if nought else befell us in this life but to dwell together betwixt the woodland & the water, and to see thee oft, full happy should we be.

THE WISE WOODWIFE said Nabundia, art thou not come hither to ask somewhat of me, that ye may be happier? So it is, wise mother, said Birdalone; grudge not against me therefor, for more than one thing drives me there; to I will not grudge, said the woodwife; but now I will ask thymate if he has thought what it is that he will have of me. And she turned to Arthur, who came forth & said: Lady, I have heard thee, and herein would we have thee help us: There were erst six fellows of us, three carles and three queans, to whom was added this sweetling here; but one of them, to wit the Golden Knight, was slain, and for the rest, Yea, I know, said the woodwife; my child here hath told me all; & now ye wot not where they are or if they be yet alive, all or any of them. Now is it not so that ye would seek these friends, if it were but to greet them but once, & that ye would

ask of the wise woodwife help to find them? Is there any more of the tale? Nay, Lady, said Arthur. Said she: Well then, that help shall ye have, were it but for the sake of that little Viridia whereof my child hath told me. Wherefore abide tidings of me for a fourteen days, and seek not to me ere then: As meantime fear not, nor doubt me, for many messengers I have, and ever may I do somewhat if the end of the tale is to be told in these woodlands. As I deem these friends will not be hard to draw hither, for it is most like that they be thinking of you and longing for you, as ye for them. And now I will depart on my business, which is yours, and do ye be happy to-day in the woodland, & tomorrow in the meadows and by the water: & let no trouble weigh down your happy days.

HEREWITH she flitted away from them, when she had kissed them both. But when she was gone they fared away together deep into the wood, and were exceeding merry disporting them, & on their return they gat them venison for their meat, and so came back to the House of Love when the moon was up and shining brightly.

101. *Chapter XXX. Habundia
cometh with tidings of those
dear friends.*

MORE the days
thenceforth
merrily, and
one day it was
delight in the
wide meads,
and another they went a long
way west along the water-side,
and so into another meadow-
plain, smaller than their home-
plain, which Birdalene had ne-
ver erst come into; and three
eyots lay off it green & free-be-
set, whereto they swam out to-
gether. Then they went into the
wood thereby in the heat of the
afternoon, & so wore the day,
that they deemed themselves
belated, and lay there under a
thornbush the night through.

ANOTHER day Birda-
lone took her mate over
onto Green Eyot & Rock
Eyot, and showed him all the
places she was used to haunt.
And they had their fishing-gear
with them, and angled off the
eyots a good part of the day, &
had good catch, & swam back
therewith merrily. And Birda-
lone laughed, & said that it seem-
ed to her as if once again she
were ransoming her shin of the
witch-wife by that noble catch.

DIVERS TIMES also
they fared into the
wood, and thrice they

lay out the night there in some
wood-lawn where was water;
and on one of these times it
happd that Arthur awoke in
the grey dawn, and lay open-
eyed but not moving for a lit-
tle; and therewith he deemed
he saw the gleam of war-gear
in the thicket. So he kept as
still as he might, but gat his
sword out of its sheath with-
out noise, and then leapt up
suddenly, and sprang thither-
ward whereas he had seen that
token, and again saw armour
gleam and heard some man
crashing through the under-
wood, for all was gone in one
moment. So he woke up Birda-
lone, & they bended their bows
both of them, & searched the
thicket thereabouts heedful-
ly, arrow on string, but found
nought fiercer than a great sow
and her farrow. So came the
full day, & they gat them back
to their meadows and their
house; but thereafter were they
warier in going about the wood-
land.

AL L joyance then
wore the days till the fif-
teenth, and in the morn-
ing early they went their ways
to the Oak of Cryst, & had no
need to call Habundia to them,
for presently she came forth
out of the thicket, with her
gown gathered up into her gir-
dle and bow in hand. But she

cast it down & ran up to Birdal-
alone, and kissed her and clip-
ped her, and then she took a
hand of Arthur and a hand of
Birdalone, and held them both
and said, My child, & thou dear
knight, have ye still a longing
to fall in with those friends of
yours, & to run all risk of what-
soever contention and strife
there may be betwixt you there-
after? ¶ Yea, certes, said Ar-
thur; and even so said Birda-
lone. ¶ Well is that then, said
the wood-wife; but now & for
this time, ere I help you, I shall
put a price upon my help, and
this is the price, that ye swear
to me never wholly to sunder
from me; that once in the year
at least, as long as ye be alive
and wayworthy, ye come into
the forest of Evilshaw, and
summon me by the burning of
a hair of mine, that we may
meet and be merry for a while,
& part with the hope of meet-
ing once more at least. And if
ye will not pay the price, go in
peace, and ye shall yet have my
help in all other matters that
may seem good unto you, but
not in this of joining your fel-
lowship together. Now say-
est thou, Birdalone, my child?
Now sayest thou, Black Squire,
whom, as me seemeth, I have de-
livered from a fate worse than
death, and have brought out
of wretchedness into bliss?

SHAKE Airdalone: Had I dared, I would have bidden thee to swear to me even such an oath, to wit, that thou wouldst never wholly sunder thee from me. How then may I not swear this that thou biddest me, and that with all joy and trustiness?

PAKE Arthur: Lady, had I no will to swear this oath for thy sake, yet with a good will would I swear it for my true love's sake who loveth thee. Yet verily of mine own will would I swear it joyfully, were it for nought else save to pleasure thee, who hast done so kindly by me, & hath given me back my manhood and my love, which else I had miserably lost.

SHAKE the woodwife: It is well again; join hands then, and swear as I have bidden you by the love ye bear each other.

EVEN so they did, and then the wood-wife kissed them both and said Now do I deem you earth's every children and mine, & this desire of yours is good, and it shall be done if I may bring it about; yet therein the valiance & wisdom of you both may well be tried. for this have I found out by my messengers and others, that your friends are alive, all of them; and they

100%

have thought of you in their inmost hearts, & have long determined that they must needs go seek you if they are to live lives happy & worthy. Furthermore, their quest hath drawn them hither to Evilohaw (nor say I that I have been nothing therein), and they are even now in the wood. But ye shall know that peril encompasses them; for they fare but a few, and of those few be there two traitors who are minded to deliver them to the men of the Red Company, unto whom three women as fair as yours or friends were a prize indeed. Wherefore the Red folk are dogging them, & will fall upon them when they find the occasion. But I shall see to it that the occasion shall be in time and place where they shall not be unholpen. Now what ye have to do for your parts, is to waylay the waylayers, and keep watch & ward a-nigh the road they must needs take, and to fall on when need is. But this again I shall see to, that your onset fail not.

BUT now ye may say: Since thou art mighty, why shouldst not thou thyself take our friends out of the hands of these accursed, as thou couldst well do, & we to take no part therein? My friends, this might indeed well be; but thou, Birdalone, hast

told me the whole tale, & how that there be wrongs to be forgiven which cannot be made right, and past kindness to be quickened again, & coldness to be kindled into love, & estrangement into familiar friendship; and meseems that the sight of your bodies and your hands made manifest to the eyes of them may do somewhat herein. Yet if otherwise ye think, then so let it be, and go ye back to the House under the Wood, and in three days' time I will bring you your friends all safe and sound.

BUT they both said that they would not for aught that they should have no hand in the deliverance of them; so the wood-wife said: Come with me, and I shall lead you to the place of your ambush.

WHEN all they went on together, and fared a long way west, & toward the place where erst they two had found Arthur; and at last, two hours before sunset, they came to where was a glade or way between the thickets, which was as it were a little beaten by the goings of man-folk. And the wood-wife did them to wit, that the evil folk aforesaid had so used it and beaten it, that it might just look as if folk were wont to pass that way, whereas it was not very far from their

chiefest haunt & stronghold. A little on the north side of this half-blind way, and some ten yards through the thicket, the ground fell away into a little dale, the bottom whereof was plain & well grassed, and watered by a brook.

HITHER the wood-wife brought the twain; and when they all stood together on the brookside, she said to them: Dear friends, this is your woodland house for this time, & I rede you go not forth of it, lest ye happen upon any of those evilmen, for nought have ye to fear from any save them. Here amidst these big stones, which make, see ye, as it were a cavern, have I stowed victual for you, and armour therewithal, because, though both of you are in a manner armed, yet who knoweth where a shaft drawn at a venture may reach.

AND from the said stones she drew forth two very fair armours, helm and hauberk, & leg and arm wards, and they were all of green, and shone but little, but were fashioned as no smith of man-folk could have done the like.

THIS is thine, Sir Arthur, said the wood-wife, & thou wilt wear it like as it were silk; and this thine, my child, and thou art

strong enough to bear such light gear. And I charge you both to do on this gear presently, nor do it off till ye have achieved the adventure. And now this is the last word: here is a horn of oliphant which thou shalt wear about thy neck, Birdalone; and if thou be sore beated, or thy heart faileth thee, blow in it, yet not before the onfall; and then, whether thou blow much or little, thou shalt be well holpen.

NOW be not downcast if nought befall to-night or to-morrow, or even the day after, but if the third day be tidingsless, then at sunset burn a hair of my head, Birdalone, and I will come to you. And now farewell! for I have yet to do in this matter.

WITH that she kissed Birdalone fondly and embraced Arthur, & went her way; and those twain abode in the dale, & slept and watched by turns, and all was tidingsless till the morrow's dawn; neither was there aught to tell of on that day and the night that ended it.

Part VI. The
Draw of the
Horn.

Page XXX I describe
what to me here
is called the women
of the wood

BIRDALONE was growing on the dawn of the next day, & the colours of things could be seen, when Birdalone, who was holding this last watch of the night, stood still and hearkened, deeming that she could hear some noise that was neither the morning wind in the tree-bough nor the going of the wild things anear them in the wood.

SHE did off her helm to hear the better, and stood thus a little; then she turned about & stooped down to Arthur, who was yet sleeping, and put forth a hand to rouse him. But ere ever she touched him, broke forth a sound of big and rough voices and laughter, & amidst it two shrieks as of women.

ARTHUR heard it, and was on his feet in a moment, and helmed, and he caught up his bended bow & cast on the quiver (for Birdalone was already weaponed), and without more words they went forth swiftly up the bank and through the thicket till they were looking on the half-blind way, but under cov-

er, & there was nothing before them as yet.

THERE THEY stayed and hearkened keenly. There were no more shrieks of women, nor heard they any weapon clash, but the talking & laughter of men went on; & at last they heard a huge & grim whoop of many men together; & then thereafter was less sound of talking, but came the jingle as of arms and harness; and Arthur whispered in Birdalone's ear: Stand close! they have gotten to horse, and will be coming our way. Nock an arrow. And even so did he.

THEREWITH they heard clearly the riding of men, and in less than five minutes' space they saw three big weaponed men riding together, clad in red surcoats, and they were so nigh that they heard the words of their speech. One said to the other: How long shall the knight hold out, think ye? Oh, a week maybe, said the other. Meseems it was scathe that we stayed not a while to pine him, said the first man. Nay, said the second, we be over-heavy laden with bed-gear to tarry. And they all laughed thereat, & so went on out of hearing.

BUT then came four on together, whereof one, a gaunt, oldish man,

was saying: It is not so much how long we shall be getting there, but what shall betide when we get there. For this is not like lifting a herd of neat, whereof sharing is easy, but with this naked-skinned, two-legged cattle, which forsooth ye can eat & yet have, there may well be strife over the sharing. And look to it if it hath not begun already: we must needs dismount three of our best men that these white-skinned bitches forsooth may each have a horse to herself, or else would they be fighting as to which should have a damsel of them before him on the saddle: curse the fools!

LAUGHED out they who were about him, & one young man cast a jeer at him the meaning whereof they might not catch, and again they laughed; and that deal passed on. And next came a bigger rout, a half score or so, & they also laughing and jeering; but amidst them, plain to see riding astraddle, their ankles twisted together under the horses' bellies, their hands bound behind them, first Htra, black-clad as erst; then Hurea, in a gown of wheat-colour; then Viridia, green-clad. Htra rode upright, and looking straight before her; Hurea hung her head all she might, & her long

red hair fell about her face but Viridia had swooned, and was held up in the saddle by one of the catiffs on each side of her. They were but little disarrayed, save that some felon had torn the bosom of Viridia's gown, and dragged down the cloth so that her left shoulder was bare.

ARTHUR looked, & drew at the catiff who went a foot beside Htra, & Bird alone at him who went by Viridia, for she wotted whitherward Arthur's shaft would be turned. The loose of the two bows made but one sound: both men fell stark dead, and the others huddled together a moment, and then ran toward the thicket on either hand, and they who ran north, two of them saw not Arthur, because of his green armour, ere they felt the death which lay in his sword. And then he brake out amidst them, and there were three of them on him, yet for no long while, whereas their weapons bit not on the armour of the faery, and his woodland blade sheared leather and ring-mail to the flesh and the bone: mighty were his strokes, and presently all three were wallowing on the earth.

EN therewith the seven who had passed on had turned back & were

come on him a horseback, and hard had it gone with him, despite of his might and his valour & the trustiness of Hundia's mail. But meanwhile Birdalone had run to Viridis, who had fallen a dead weight aside of her horse, and lay half hanging by the bonds of her ankles. Birdalone swiftly cut the cords both of her feet and her hands, & drew her off her horse as best she might, and laid her down on the grass; & then ran to Arthur sword aloft, just as his new battle was at point to begin.

BUT as she ran it came in to her mind in a twinkling that her sword would be but weak, and the horn hung about her neck. Then she stayed her feet, and set the horn to her lips and blew; and the elephant gave forth a long singing note which was strange to hear. But while it was yet at her lips one of the caitiffs was upon her, & he cried out: Hah the witch, the accursed green witch! and fetched her a great stroke from his saddle, and smote her on the helm; and though his sword bit not on that good head/burg, she fell to the ground unwitting.

IT was not the wood-wife's promise unavailing, for even while the voice of the horn was in the air,

the way and thickets were alive with men-at-arms, green-clad as those twain, who straight-way fell on the caitiffs, & with Arthur to help, left not one of them alive. Then went some to Viridis, and raised her up, and so dealt with her that she came to herself again; and the like they did by Birdalone, and she stood, and looked about confusedly, but yet saw this, that they had gotten the victory. Some went withal to Rurea, & cut her bonds and took her off her horse and set her on the ground; and she was all bewildered, and knew not where she was.

BUT Arthur, when he saw Birdalone on her feet, and unhurt by seeming, went to Htra, & cut her bonds and loosed her, and set her on the earth, all without a word. & then stood before her shyly. Came the colour back into her face therewith, & she flushed red, for she knew him despite his outlandish green war/harness, and she reached out her hand to him, & he knelt before her and took her hand & kissed it. But she bent over him till her face was anigh his, and he lifted up his face and kissed her mouth. And she drew aback a little, but yet looked on him earnestly, and said: Thou hast saved my life, not from death

indeed, but from a loathsome
hell; I may well thank thee for
that. And O, if my thanks
might be fruitful to thee! And
her bosom heaved, & the
sobs came, & the tears began
to run down her cheeks. And
he hung his head before her.
But in a while she left weeping,
and turned about her face and
looked round the field of deed;
and she said: Who is yonder
slim green warrior who hath
even now knelt down by Viri-
dis? Is it not a woman? Ar-
thur reddened: Yea, said he; it
is Birdalune. Thy love? she
said. He said swiftly: Yea, &
thy friend, and this time thy
deliverer. So it is, she said.
It is five years since I beheld
her. My heart yearns for her; I
shall rejoice at the meeting of
us.

SHE was silent, and he
also a while; then she
said: But why tarry we
here in idle talk when he is yet
bound, and in torment of body
and soul; he the valiant, & the
kind & the dear brother? Come,
tarry for no question. And
she stepped out swiftly along
the green road going west-
ward, and Arthur beside her;
and as they went by Viridis,
lo! Hurca had wandered unto
them, and now was Birdalune
unhelmed and kissing & com-
forting her. Then cried out

Htra: Keep up thine heart, Vi-
ridis! for now we go to fetch
thee thy man safe and sound.

SO they went but a little
way on the green road ere
they came to Sir Hugh
bound hard and fast to a tree-
bole, and he naked in his shirt,
& hard by lay the bodies of two
stout carles with their throats
cut: for these honest men and
the two felons who had betray-
ed them were all the following
wherewith the Green Knight
had entered Evilahaw. And as
it fell, the traitors had been set
to watch while the others slept;
and sleeping the carliffs found
them, & slew the said men at
arms at once, but bound Hugh
to a tree that he might be the
longer adying: since none look-
ed for any but their own folk
to pass by that way. All this
they heard afterwards of Hugh.

BUT now the said Hugh
heard men going, & he
opened his eyes, & saw
Htra and a man at arms with
her; & he cried out: Nah, what
is this now, sister? a rescue?
Yea, she said. & look thou
on the face of the rescuer; and
there is another hard by, and
she is a woman.

THE RE-KNIGHT was Ar-
thur on him and cutting
his bonds, and when he
was loose they fell into each
other's arms, & Hugh spake:

Now then at last doth life be-
gin for me as I willed it! And
hast thou my sweet she-fellow,
Birdalone, with thee? Yea,
said Arthur. Now good is
that! said Hugh. And yet, if
it might but be that Baudoin
were yet alive for us to seek!
Then he laughed and said:
These be but sorry garments
wherewith to wend along with
dear and fair ladies, brother!
Nay, said Arthur, that may
soon be amended, for yonder,
where sword met sword, lieth
raiment abundantly on the
grass. Fie on it! said Hugh,
laughing; shall I do on me the
raiment of those lousy tra-
itors? Not I, by the rood! Thou
must seek further for my ar-
ray dear lad! So they all
laughed, & were glad to laugh
together. But Atra said: It is
easier even than that, for thine
own fair garments & weapons
shall we find if we seek them.
Booth to say there was none
left to bear them off, save it
were this man, or Birdalone his
mate.

WITH that word she
looked kindly on Ar-
thur, and again they
laughed all three; though for-
sooth they were well-nigh
weeping-ripe; one for joy, and
that was Hugh; one for me-
mory of the days gone by; and
one for the bitterness of love

that should never be reward-
ed; albeit dear even unto her
was the meeting of friends &
the glory of forgiveness and
the end of enmity.

Chapter XXXIII. Viridis tel-

WHEN they came they
back to where
were the three
others, & Viridis
was quite come
to herself & ran
to meet her man, and he took
her in his arms & caressed her
sweetly; and then he turned to
Birdalone, & spared no sign of
friendly love to her; & Arthur,
for his part, did so much for
Hurea & Viridis. No long tale
there was between them for
that while, for they would bueh
them to be gone. But first they
dug a grave for those two poor
men who had been slain by the
felons, and prayed for them.
As for the caitiffs who lay slain
there, one score & two of them,
they left them for the wolves
to devour, & the tearing of the
kites and crows; nor meddled
they with any of their gear or
weapons. But they speedily
found Hugh's raiment, and
his pouch, wherein was money
good store; & they found also
rings and ouches and girdles,
which had been torn from the
damsels in the first rage of
their taking.

IRBE though, when they had gathered together such horses as they needed, & let the rest run wild, Birdalone brought her she-friends down into the dale, & did them to bathe in a pool of the stream, & tended them as if she were their tire-woman, so that they were mightily refreshed; & she made garlands for them of the woodland flowers, as eglantine and honey-suckle; & herself, she bathed her, and did not on her battle-gear again, but clad her body in her woman's array. Then she brought forth victual and wine from Nabundia's store, & set it out on the stream-side; and thereafter she went up the bent to the green way and fetched down Hugh and Arthur, and brought them to the ladies, & bade them note how trim and lovely they were gotten again. & again it could scarce be but that kisses and caresses were toward; and in all content and love they took their breakfast, though bitter-sweet unto Atra had been the holding of her hand by Arthur and the kissing of her cheek, albeit not for worlds had she foregone it.

So there they abode merrily for some three hours, whereas the day was yet young; and they asked & told each other much, so that the

whole tale, both of the seekers from the world & of the seekers from the water-side, came out little by little. Now of the last ye have heard what there is to tell, but for the others Viridis took up the tale, as erst she did with the dealings of the Knights of the Quest in the Isle of Increase Unsought; & it seemed by her tale that Hugh & the ladies, though they were living happily and prosperously in the land of the Green Mountains, wherein Hugh had wealth enow, yet the thought both of Arthur & of Birdalone would not out of their minds. & often it was that they thought of them not as friends think of friends of whom they are content to know that they are yet alive & most like thriving, but as friends think of friends whose absence cuts a shard out of their lives, so that they long to see them day by day. Wherefore it came to this at last, after much talk hereof, that Hugh left his possessions and his children (for he had two women-bairns born of Viridis) in the keeping of trusty folk, and took with him Viridis his wife, & Hurta and Atra, and they set out to seek those twain the world over till they should find them. And first by the rede of Atra they fared to Greenford, and there

tarried a month, and sought tidings of many, and heard a word here & there whereby they deemed that Birdalone had passed therethrough some little time before. So they went thence to the Castle of the Quest, and found it in such plight as ye have heard, and it went sore to their hearts to behold it and to be there. But therewithal they happed upon Leonard the priest, and he was rejoiced beyond measure to see them, and told them all that ye have heard concerning Birdalone's coming thither and departing thence; & he told them therewith about those hauntings and sendings in the hall of the castle, & that they came to an end the very day that Birdalone departed thence in the Sending Boat. Yet for the last three days there had been visions therein; but being questioned he was loth to tell thereof, so they forbore him a while.

WHEN these tidings they were sore moved, & they talked the matter over betwixt themselves (& Leonard also was in their reden), & they must needs deem that either Birdalone was cast away, or that she had come to her old dwelling, the House under the Wood, & belike had fallen into the hands of the witch once more, & thereat were they sore

downcast; & yet somewhat it was, that they had heard sure tidings of her; though meanwhile of Arthur had they heard nought.

WHILE THEY talked this over, Htra, who had been somewhat silent, spake & said: Here are we brought to a stop with the first tidings which we have heard, whereas we know no manner of wending the Great Water. This seemeth evil, but let us not be cast down, or die redelless. Ye have heard of what sayeth Sir Leonard of these hauntings in the hall, and how that they have come back again, wherefore why should we not sleep in the hall this night, those of us at least who have not so much fear as not to note them well, to see if we may draw any avail from them? How say ye? for my part I will try the adventure, whatever may come of it.

NOW they all yeasaid it, though Hura was somewhat timorous, albeit she would not be parted from the others so when night came there they made their beds and lay down; & the end of it was, that a little before midnight Htra waked the others, and did them to wit that by her deeming something was toward; & presently they were all four as

wide awake as ever they were in their lives, and next, without any sound that was strange, there came the image of a woman onto the dais, clad in green like to an huntress of ancient days, her feet bandalled, her skirts gathered up into her girdle, so that her legs were naked, she had a quiver at her back, and a great bow in her hand.

NOW to all of them save Hira this appearance seemed to be the image of Hirdalone, but she told her fellows afterwards, that to her it seemed not to be altogether Hirdalone, but rather some other one most like unto her, as it were her twin-sister.

GOD sent the image kindly and sweetly on them, so that they beheld it without fear, and it seemed to them that it gave forth speech; yet not so much that the sound of words was in the air about and smote their ears, as that the sense of words reached the minds of them. And this was the tale of it. Ye who are seeking the lost, have done well to come hither, and now shall ye do well to wend the straightest way to the dwelling of the wildwood, and that is by way of the western verge of E-vilshaw the forest. Greenford is on the way. Wayleaders ye shall

get, be wise, yet not prudent, and take them, though they be evil & your luck may well avail.

THE RE-MIT the image vanished away as it had come, and Leonard, who with the others took the appearance for an image of Hirdalone, said that it was such as he had seen it the three last days. So they lay not down again, but departed for Greenford without tarrying, & rode the other end of the short night through till they came to Greenford. But Leonard would not with them, and Hugh behight him, if he lived and did well, to come back somehow to the Castle of the Quest, and so redoubt that it should be no longer desolate.

SO to Greenford they came, and spared not to do folk to wit that they would ride a pilgrimage in E-vilshaw, and were fain of wayleaders, & there they dwelt a day or two, and many would let them of that journey which, said they, was rather deadly than perilous only. But on the third day came to Sir Hugh two stout carles well weaponed, who said that they knew well all the ways that led to E-vilshaw, and the ways that went therethrough, and they offered themselves for a wage to Sir Hugh. Now these said

carles were not over fair of fa-
vour, but seemed somewhat of
ribalds, nor would Sir Hugh
have taken them to service in
his house at home; but he call-
ed to mind that it were more
prudence than wisdom to spoil
his journey and lose the occa-
sion of finding his dear friends
for the hasty judgment of a
man's face and demeanour,
wherefore he waged these two
men, and they set out for the
western edges of Evilshaw.

IN Y towns & thorps
they passed through,
and everywhere, when
men knew whither they were
bound, they letted them all they
might in words; but little heed
they paid thereto, whereas they
were all fixed in their rede that
nought was to be done save
the finding of their friends, &
that their life-days were spoil-
ed if they found them not. And
moreover, each one of them,
but especially Atra & Viridis,
had dreams of the night from
time to time; wherein they seem-
ed to see the green-clad wom-
an, were she Birdalone or an-
other, beckoning and bidding
them to enter the Wood of Evil-
shaw.

AS to those two way-
leaders withal, whether
it were that they got
used to their faces, or that their
ways & manners were nought

uncourteous or fierce, they
doubted them less and less
as time wore; all save Viridis,
whose flesh crept when they
drew anigh her, as will betide
one who comes across an evil-
looking creeping thing. As for
Atra, she now began to heed
little the things about her, as
if her heart were wholly set on
the end of the journey.

BUT now at last were they
come so far that they had
no choice but to use the
said wayleaders, for they were
gotten to the edge of Evilshaw.
So they entered it, & those two
led them by half-blind ways &
paths amongst the thickets,
and fumbled never with the
road.

FIVE days they went
thus, and on the fifth
evening they lay down
to sleep in the wood, & it was
the turn of those two hirelings
to keep watch and ward, & they
woke not the next morn save
with the hands of the Red fe-
lons at their throats, so that
Hugh was bound, and his two
trusty men who came with him
from the Green Mountains
were slain before a stroke might
be struck.

THIS was the end of Viri-
dis' tale, save that she
told how that it was she
that had uttered those two
shrills which Arthur & Bird-

carles were not over fair of fa-
vour, but seemed somewhat of
ribalde, nor would Sir Hugh
have taken them to service in
his house at home; but he call-
ed to mind that it were more
prudence than wisdom to spoil
his journey and lose the occa-
sion of finding his dear friends
for the hasty judgment of a
man's face and demeanour,
wherefore he waged these two
men, and they set out for the
western edges of Evilshaw.

IN ANY towns & thorps
they passed through,
and everywhere, when
men knew whither they were
bound, they letted them all they
might in words; but little heed
they paid thereto, whereas they
were all fixed in their rede that
nought was to be done save
the finding of their friends, &
that their life-days were spoil-
ed if they found them not. And
moreover, each one of them,
but especially Atra & Viridis,
had dreams of the night from
time to time wherein they seem-
ed to see the green-clad wom-
an, were she Birdalone or an-
other, beckoning and bidding
them to enter the Wood of Evil-
shaw.

AS to those two way-
leaders withal, wheth-
er it were that they got
used to their faces, or that their
ways & manners were nought

uncourteous or fierce, they
doubted them less and less
as time wore; all save Viridis,
whose flesh crept when they
drew anigh her, as will betide
one who comes across an evil-
looking creeping thing. As for
Atra, she now began to heed
little the things about her, as
if her heart were wholly set on
the end of the journey.

BUT now at last were they
come so far that they had
no choice but to use the
said wayleaders, for they were
gotten to the edge of Evilshaw.
So they entered it, & those two
led them by half-blind ways &
paths amongst the thickets,
and fumbled never with the
road.

FIVE days they went
thus, and on the fifth
evening they lay down
to sleep in the wood, & it was
the turn of those two hirelings
to keep watch and ward, & they
woke not the next morn save
with the hands of the Red fe-
lons at their throats, so that
Hugh was bound, and his two
trustymen who came with him
from the Green Mountains
were slain before a stroke might
be struck.

THIS was the end of Viri-
dis' tale, save that she
told how that it was she
that had uttered those two
stricks which Arthur & Bird-

THE MATTER OF THE WONDROUS ISLE BESEGED
THE SEVENTH PART THE DAYE OF RETURNING

Chapter I. Sir Hugh asketh
Birdaloue where she would
have the Abode of their Fel-
lowship to be.



THE NEXT DAY, THEY
arose and were glad, & it was
to them as if the sun of the
early summer had arisen for
nought save to shine on their
happy day. And they went a-
bout from place to place where
as tidings had befallen Bird-
aloue & she served them one
& all as if she were their hand-
maid, and they loved her and
caressed her, and had been fain
to do all her will did they but
know it.

IN THIS wise wore day af-
ter day till June began
to wane, and then on a
time came Hugh unto Birda-
loue, and spake unto her and
said: All we have been talking
together, and I am bent to ask

thee what is in thy mind as to
abiding here or going elsewhi-
ther. for now that we be come
together again, not for all the
kingdoms of the world would
we sunder again & above all
none of us would leave thee.
O my sister but if thou wilt
come with me to our land un-
der the Green Mountains there
is for thee a pleasant place &
a fair dwelling & honour from
all folk and our love that shall
never leave thee. and I, & Ar-
thur my brother, we shall win
fame together amongst the
kighthood, & thou shalt be
proud & glad both of him and
of me.

SHE said And if I may
not go with thee thith-
er, what other way is
there to escape the sundering?

Said Hugh: This, that thou
choose in the world what land
liketh thee for adwelling place,
and we will go with thee and
leave thee never, & thou shalt
be our lady and queen. Then
he laughed and said: Yet, our
lady, I have left behind me un-
der the Green Mountains cer-
tain things which I love, as two
fair women/children, & a squire
or two whose fathers served
my fathers, & whose children
I would should serve my chil-
dren. And moreover I have left
there certain matters of avail

my wealth & livelihood to wit.
Wilt thou begrudge it if I must
needs go fetch these, & bring
them to the land where thou
dwellest, through whatever
peril we may have to face?

QUEN MERRETTE thou she
said, & my very friend,
but tell me: how sorry
wouldst thou be to leave thine
own land and follow after me
for the sake of one who is nei-
ther thine own true love nor of
thy kindred? Said he: Not
so sorry that I should grudge
against thee thereafter. More-
over if that much of sorrow
came to me, I should deem it
not ill, lest I grow so over-hap-
py that the luck rise up against
me and undo me.

SHE said, smiling on him
kindly: Meseems that I
am over-happy, whereas
I have such dear cherishing of
noble friends. But now I will
tell thee all, & maybe thou wilt
love me the less for the telling.
In these woods here, and lady
& mistress of them, dwelleth
one who is not of the race of
Adam. And she helped & cher-
ished me and gave me wisdom
when I was tormented and ac-
cursed, & she it was who saved
me from the evil witch, & gave
me the good hap to meet your
loves and to fetch you to their
helping; & twice hath she saved
me from mortal peril other-
wise. And she hath found me
my love, thy brother Arthur,

and delivered him from unwitting
and wanhope & she it is who
drew all you hither unto us. &
who delivered you from the fe-
lons who had mastered you.
And I have sworn unto her that
I would never wholly sunder
me from her; and how shall I
break mine oath & grieve her,
even had I the will thereto, as
God wot I have not? And
she wept therewith.

QUEN MERRETTE kissed her
and said: Birdalone, my
dear, why weepest thou?
Didst thou not hear my word,
that thy people should be my
people, and thy land my land,
and that whither thou goest
I will go? Dost thou not trow
me then? Or how deemest thou
I may tear thy friend Viridis
from thee, when she hath just
found thee? But tell me, hast
thou in thy mind any dwelling-
place other than this?

YES, she said. I may not
depart very far from
this forest of E-wishaw
lest I grieve my wisdom-mo-
ther overmuch. But if one go
westward through the wood,
he shall happen at last, when
he cometh forth of it, on a good
town hight Utterhay, which
lieth on the very edge thereof.
There was I born, and there
also I look to find three dear &
trusty friends to whom I owe
return of their much kindness.
It is a noble town in a pleasant
land, and thou and my lord Ar-

thur may well win both honour and worship & lordship there. And wholly I trust in thy word that thou wilt not grudge against me for dragging thee thither.

HEREWITH she gave him her hand, smiling on him, though there was yet trouble in her face. But he took the hand and held it, and laughed merrily and said: Lo now! how good it is for friends to take counsel together! What better may we do than go with thee thither? And how greatly will Viridis rejoice when she heareth of this. Now will I go and tell her and the others.

Other, dear lad, she said, but as to the matter of thy fetching thy children & livelihood hither, that may be not so hard nor so perilous as thou deemest. & thou shalt go about it whenso thou wilt and the sooner the better, and we shall abide thee here as long as need may be. And therewith he went his ways to tell Viridis and the others of this rede which they had come to between them.

Chapter II. Birdalone taketh Counsel with her Wood-mother concerning the matter of

ON that same day went Birdalone to the Oak of Cryst and called her wood-mother to her, and she came glad and smiling, & kissed & embraced Birdalone, and said unto her: Now I see that thou art well content with this last matter I have done for thee, whereas thou art come to crave a new gift of me. Now knowest thou that? said Birdalone, laughing. Said Nabundia: Wouldst thou have come to me so soon otherwise from out of all that happiness? I have come to tell thee of my rede, said Birdalone, & to ask thee if thou art like-minded with me thereon. Said the wood-wife: And what is thy rede, my child? Wood-mother, said Birdalone, we deem that it were good for us all to go down into Utterhay where I was born, and to take up our abode therein.

SAID the wood-wife: This rede I praise, and even so would I have counselled you to do; but I abided to see if it should come from out of thy breast, and now even so it hath done; wherefore I under-

stand thy wisdom & reioice in thee. And now crave thy boon, my child, and thou shalt have it without fail.

EH, said Birdalone, that will I, and the more that it is a simple one & easy for thee to do. Thou knowest that Nugh the Green Knight hath come with my she-friends seeking us all the way from under the Green Mountains, and he hath left there goods that he needs must have and folk whom he loves; and now he would go back thither, and fetch all that away hither, and see to his matters as soon as may be. And I would have thee counsel us what to do, whether to build a barque, as perchance we may get it done, and sail the lake therein to the Castle of the Quest or thereabout, & thence to ride to his land; or else to take thy guidance & safe conduct through the wood, & to bring his folk back the same way.

SAID the wood-wife: As to the way by water, I may help you little therein, and meseemeth that way be many traps and wiles & many perils. Wherefore I bid you try it not, but let the Green Knight come up hither to this tree tomorrow before noon, all horsed and armed and arrayed, & there shall he find three men armed

in green gear, horsed well, and leading two sumpter-beasts with them, and they shall be his until he giveth them back unto me. But if he doubteth any thing betwixt the wood's end & under the Green Mountains, let him wage what folk he will besides, for these my men will have money enough of his with them. But by no means let him send them away till he hath done with the wood altogether, both betwixt here and the western dwelt-land, & here and Utterhay, save thou be with him. But while these be with him, both he & whatsoever money he bringeth shall be sure from all peril while they be in the wood. Now, my child, was not this the boon thou camest up hither to ask of me?

EH verily, said Birdalone; yet also I came up hither to praise thee & thank thee & love thee. And she threw herself into Habundia's arms and kissed and caressed her, and Habundia her in like wise.

SAKE the wood-wife: Thou art the beloved child of my wisdom; & now I see of thee that thou wilt be faithful and true and loving unto me unto the end. And I think I can see that thou and thy man shall do well and hap-

pity in Uterhay; & the Green Knight also & thy other friends. And whatsoever thou wilt of me that I may do for thee or thy friends, ask it freely, and freely shalt thou have it. But this I will bid thee, that the while the Green Knight shall be gone about his matter, thou shalt come hither to me often; & thy friends also thou shalt bring to me, that I may see them and talk to them & love them. And specially shalt thou bid him traunte me; for me seems she is so wise already that I may learn her more wisdom, & put that into her heart which may solace her and make her to cease from fretting her own heart, & from grief & longing overmuch. And I were fain to reward her in that she hath forborne to grudge against thee and to bear thee enmity. for I know, my child, not from mine own heart, but from the wisdom I have learned, how hardly the children of Adam may bear to have that which they love taken away from them by another, even if they themselves might in the long last have wearied of it and cast it away their own selves. Go now, my child, and do thy friend to wit what I will do for him.

WHEREWITH they parted, and Birdalene fared home to the house, and

found the fellowship of them all sitting by the brook-side, & talking sweetly together in all joy and hope of what their life should be in the new land whereto Birdalene would lead them. Straightway then she told them of Hugh & his journey, and how well he should be guarded in the wood both coming & going. And they thought that right good, & they thanked her & praised her, and took her into their talk, and she sat down by them happily.

Chapter III. Of the journeying through the forest of Evilshaw unto the town of Uter-

IN the morrow in due time Birdalene going afoot, led his Hugh, all armed and horsed, to the Oak of Cryat, and there they found the three men-at-arms, well-weaponed and in green weed, abiding them. They did obeisance to Sir Hugh, & he greeted them, and then without more ado he kissed Birdalene and went his ways with his way-leaders, but Birdalene turned back to the house & her friends.

NEXT DAY Birdalene brought her three shepherds unto the Cryating Oak, and showed them to the woodmother, and she was

kind and soft with them; and both Hurea and Viridis were shy with her, & as if they feared her, but Atra was frank & free, and spake boldly. And thereafter when Birdalone went to meet her wood-mother, Atra would go with her if she were asked, and at last would go alone, when she found that Habundia was fain of her coming, so that there were not many days when they met not; & the wood-wife fell to learning her the lore of the earth, as she had done aforetime with Birdalone; and Atra waxed ruddier & merrier of countenance, whereof was Birdalone right glad, and Arthur yet more glad, and the others well content.

So wore the time till Hugh had been gone for twenty and three days & as they walked the meadows anigh the house about undern, they saw a knight riding down the bent toward them, and presently they knew him for Hugh, and turned and hastened to meet him, so that he was straight-way amidst them, and on foot. Dear then were the greetings and carresses betwixt them, & when it was over, & Birdalone had led away his horse & dight it for him, and had gotten him victuals and drink, & they were all sitting on the grass together, he told them how he had

fared. He had done all his matters in the Land under the Green Mountains, & had given over his lands and houses to a man of his lineage, his cousin, a good knight, and had taken from him of gold and goods what he would. Then he had taken his two bairns and their nurse, & an old squire & five servants, whereof one was his foster-brother, and the other men somewhat stricken in years, & had departed with them. Sithence he had come his ways to Greenford, and had held talk therein with the prior of a great and fair house of Black Canons, & had given him no little wealth wherewith to re-do the Castle of the Quest what was needed, and for livelihood of four canons to dwell there, and Leonard to be their prior, that there they might remember Sir Baudoin their dear friend daily in the office, and do good unto his soul. Sithence he had ridden to the Castle of the Quest with the said Prior of St. Rustin of Greenford, & had found Leonard, and had settled all the business how it was to be done. Thereafter he had returned to Greenford, & gathered his folk, and got him gone, under the guidance of Habundia's folk, by castles & thorps and towns the nearest way to the edge of Evilshaw. And

Part VII.
The Days of
Returning

they had come to the forest, and ridden it six days without mishap; and when they had come to the Oak of Tryst once more, the wayleaders said that it were well if all they together tarried not much longer in the forest; wherefore they had brought them to a fair wood-lawn, & there they encamped, & were there as now. And, said Hugh, there are they abiding me, and it is in my mind that this very eve we go, all of us, and meet them there, if ye may truss your goods in that while; but as to victuals, we have plenty, & it needeth not. And then to-morrow shall we wend our way as straight as may be toward the good town of Utterhay.

AL THY ye said it, though in her heart may; for she Birdalone had been fain of abiding a little longer in her own land; but she spake no word thereof. And they all set to work to the trussing up of their goods, & then turned their backs on the Great Water, & came up into the woodland, and so to the camp in the wood-lawn. And there had Viridis a joyful meeting with her babes, and she gladdened the hearts of Sir Hugh's men at arms by her kind greeting; and they rejoiced in meeting Aurea and Atra again, and they won-

dered at Birdalone & her beauty, and their hearts went out to her, both the old men's and the young ones'. But Nabundia's men looked on it all like images of warriors.

THEN they feasted merrily that evening. But when the morrow was come they were speedily on the way toward Utterhay; and the wayleaders guided them so well and wisely, that by noon of the fifth day they were come forth of the wood & on to the bent that looked down upon the town of Utterhay. There turned to Hugh the three wayleaders, and spake: Lord, we have done thee the service which we were bidden; if thou hast no further need of us, give us leave.

SAID Hugh: Leave ye have, & I shall give you a great reward ere ye go.

SAID the chief of them: Nay, lord, no reward may we take, save a token from thee that thou art content with us.

WHAT token shall it be? said Hugh. **Q**UOTH the wayleader: That each of us kiss the Lady Birdalone on the mouth, for she it is that is verily our mistress under our great mistress.

LAUGHED Hugh thereat, but the men laughed not; then spake Hugh: This must be at the lady's own will. **E**VEN so, said they.

WHEN HUGH brought Birdaloue thither & told her what was toward, & she consented to the kiss with a good will, and said to each of the men after they had kissed her: Herewith goeth my love to the mistress and queen of the woods; do ye bear the name unto her. And thereafter those wayleaders fared back into the woods.

WHEN they gather themselves together and go down toward Otterhay, and make a brave show, what with the sumpter-horses, and the goodly array of the four ladies, and the glittering war-gear of the men-at-arms; and Sir Hugh and Sir Arthur displayed their pennons as they went.

WHEN this saw the warders on the wall of Otterhay; & they told the captain of the porte, and he came up on to the wall, and a man with him; and when he saw this bright company coming forth from the wood, he bade men to him, two score of them, all weaponed, and he did on his armour, & rode out at gates with them to meet those new-comers; & this he did, not because he did not see them to be but few, but because they came forth out of Evilshaw, and then doubted if they were trustworthy.

WHEN he met them two bow-shots from the gate, and rode forward till he was close to the wayfarers; and when he beheld the loveliness of the women, & especially of Birdaloue, who wore that day the gleaming-glittering gown which Habundia had given her, he was abashed, & deemed yet more that he had to do with folk of the faery. But he spake courteously, and said, turning to Hugh, who rode the foremost: fair sir, would ye tell unto the man whose business it is to safeguard the good town of Otterhay what folk ye be, and on what errand ye ride, and how it is that ye come forth from Evilshaw safe, in good case, with pennons displayed, as if the said wood were your very own livelihood? for, sooth to say, hitherto we have found this, that all men dread Evilshaw, & none will enter it un-compelled.

HERE TO answered Hugh I might sir Hugh the Green Knight, and am come from under the Green Mountain; and this is Sir Arthur, called the Black Squire, but a knight he is verily, and of great kindred & a warrior most doughty. And he hath been captain of the good town of Greenford west away through the wood yonder a long way.

Part VII
Returning

and hath done the town and the frank thereof mickle good service in scattering & destroying the evil companies of the Red Hold, which hold we took by force of arms from the felons who held it for the torment & plague of the country-side.

When as to our errand, we be minded to dwell in your good town of Utterhay, and take our part with your folk, and we have wealth enow thereto, so as to be beholden to none; and as time goes on we may serve you in divers wise, & not least in this maybe, that with a good will we shall draw sword for your peace & the freedom of them of Utterhay.

When the captain heard these words, he made obeisance to Sir Hugh, and said: fair sir, though we be here a long way from Greenford, yet have we heard some tale of the deeds of you, & surely the porte and all the folk shall be fain of your coming. Yet I pray thee be not wrath: for there is a custom of the good town, that none may enter its gates coming from out of this forest of Enilshaw, save he leave some pledge or caution with me, be it his wealth, or the body of some friend or fellow, or, if nought else, his

very own body. Wherefore if thou, Sir Green Knight, wilt but give us some sure pledge, then will I turn about and ride with you back and through the gate into Utterhay; & doubtless, when the mayor hath seen you and spoken with you, the said pledge shall be rendered to you again.

Sir Hugh might answer, came Birdalone forth & said: Sir captain, if I, who am the lady of the Black Squire here, be hostage good enough, then take me, and if need be, chain me to make surer of me. And she drew near unto him smiling, & held out her hands as if for the manacles.

But when the captain saw her thus, all the blood stirred in his body for joy of her beauty, & he might but just sit his horse for his wonder & longing; but he said: The saints forbid it, lady, that I should do thee any hurt or displeasure, or aught save the most worship I may. But thy hostage I will take, Sir Knight, if thou be content to yield her, whereas in an hour belike she shall be free again. And now fare we all gateward again.

So then they all rode on together, Birdalone by the captain's left hand; & as they passed by the poor

houses without the wall, she looked and saw the one which had been her mother's dwelling, so oft and so closely had she told her all about it.

THUS then they entered Utterhay, and the captain led them straight to the mote-house whereas the mayor and the porte were sitting; and much people followed them through the streets, wondering at them, and praising the loveliness of the women, and the frank and gallant bearing of the men at arms.

SO they lighted down at the mote-house & were brought to the mayor, and when he had spoken them but a little, and had come to himself again from the fear and abashment that he had of them, he showed himself full fain of their coming, and bade them welcome to the good town, and took them into his own house to guesting, until folk might dight a very goodly house which the porte did give unto them.

AT some two hours afterwards, when they were housed in all content, as they sat in the hall of the mayor, which was great and goodly, talking and devising with worthies of Utterhay, there entered two fair & frank-looking young men, who went straight

up to Birdalone, and the first knelt down before her & kissed her hand, and said, O our lady, and art thou verily come to us? O our happiness & the joy of this day!

AT when she saw him and heard him and felt the touch of his hand, she bent down to him & kissed him on the forehead, for she knew him that it was Robert Gerardson.

THEN the other man came up to her as if he also would have knelt to her, but his purpose changed, & he cast his arms about her body and fell to kissing her face all over, weeping the while, & then he drew off & stood trembling before her; and she, all blushing like a red rose & laughing a little, and yet with the tears in her eyes, said, O Giles Gerardson, and thou, Robert, how fain I am to see you twain; but tell me, is your father well? Yea, verily, our dear lady, said Robert, and it will be unto him as a fresh draught of youth when he wotteth that thou art come to dwell amongst us; for so it is, O lady beloved, is it not? said he. Yea, forsooth, or even so I hope, said Birdalone. But here be other friends that ye must needs know, if we come to dwell together here in peace; and then go & fetch

117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000

of the porte it was to strengthen the walls and the gates, and to build a good and fair castle, meet for any earl, joining on to the wall by the face that looked west, that is to say, on to Evilshaw; and that liked the war-dukes well.

SO when spring came it was set about, but it was five years adoin, and before it was all finished the war-dukes entered into it, and dwelt there with their wives & their friends in all honour. And a little thereafter, whether they would or no, the men of Utterhay had to handle weapons & fare afield to meet the foe with the valiant men of the crafts, and what of waged men they might get. And well & valiantly were they led by their dukes, and they came to their above, and gained both wealth & honour thereby; & from that time forward began the increase of Utterhay under those two captains, who were unto them as in old time the consuls had been unto the Roman folk, save that they changed them not year by year as the Romans were wont.

SO wore the days, and all those friends dwelt together in harmony & joy; though the wearing of time wrought changes amongst them. For Robert Gerardson

began in no long while to look on Aurea with eyes of love; & at last he came to Birdalone and craved her leave to woo the said lady, and she granted it with a good will, and was fain thereof, whereas she saw that Aurea sorely lacked a mate; & scarce might she have a better than was Robert; so in process of time they two were wedded and dwelt together happily.

FOR SOOTH Birdalone had been fainer yet might she have seen Giles Gerardson and Atra drawn together. But though they were dear friends & there was much converse betwixt them, this betid not, so far as we have heard.

THE old Gerard dwelt happily amongst them all for fifteen years after they had come to Utterhay, and then fell asleep, a very old man.

AS to the wood of Evilshaw, it was not once a year only that Birdalone & Arthur sought thither and met the wood-mother, but a half-score of times or more, might be, in the year's circle; and ever was she kind & loving with them, and they with her.

BUT of all those fellows it was Atra that had longest dealings with the wood-wife; for whiles would

Part VII.
The Days of
Returning

she leave Utterbay and her friends and fare lonesome up into Evilshaw, & find Habundia & abide with her in all kindness holden for a month or more. And ever a little before these departures betid would she fall moody & few-spoken, but she came back ever from the wood calm and kind and well-liking.

IN MIDST all these comings and goings somewhat wore off the terror of Evilshaw; yet never was it accounted other than a daring deed to enter it alone without

fellowship; & most had liefer that some man of religion were of their company therein, or they would bear about them something holy or blessed to hold the evil things.

NOW when all this hath been said, we have no more to tell about this company of friends, the most of whom had once haunted the lands about the Water of the Wondrous Isles, save that their love never sundered, and that they lived without shame and died without fear. So here is an end.

Here ends *The Water of the Wondrous Isles*, written by William Morris. It was printed at the Kelmscott Press, Upper Mall, Hammeramith, in the County of Middlesex, & finished on the first day of April, 1897.

The borders and ornaments were designed entirely by William Morris, except the initial words *Whilom & Empty*, which were completed from his unfinished designs by R. Catterson-Smith.



Sold by the Trustees of the late William Morris
at the Kelmscott Press.

THE WATER
OF THE
WINDING
ISLES
BY
WILLIAM
MORRIS